

केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन क्षेत्रीय कार्यालय एर्णाकुलम

KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN REGIONAL OFFICE, ERNAKULAM



CLASS X

STUDENT SUPPORT MATERIAL

SOCIAL SCIENCE – [087]

Based on Latest CBSE Exam Pattern for the Session 2022-23



Our PATRONS



Sh. R Senthil Kumar
Deputy Commissioner
KVSRO,Ernakulam



Smt. Deepti Nair
Assistant Commissioner
KVSRO, Ernakulam



Sh. Santhosh Kuma N
Assistant Commissioner
KVSRO,Ernakulam



Sh. Ajayakumar
Assistant Commissioner
KVSRO,Ernakulam



Sh. Harish Kumar Beadwal
Chief Co-ordinator
Vice Principal, K V Thrissur

THE CONTRIBUTORS



Sl.No	Name of the teachers	Post Held	Name of the KV
1	Mr.A Abdul Shumz	TGT SST	KV Kanjikode
2	Ms.C V Santha	TGT SST	KV Kanjikode
3	Ms.Geetha Nair	TGT SST	KV1 Calicut
4	Ms.Reshma K	TGT SST	KV 2 Calicut
5	Mr.Madhusoodanan M	TGT SST	KV Payyanur
6	Mr.Shamsudhin V	TGT SST	KV Payyanur
7	Ms.Annath Roshni	TGT SST	KV AFS Akkulam
8	Mr.Naveen Kumar Sharma	TGT SST	KV Ezhimala
9	Ms.Mahima Rathore	TGT SST	KV Ezhimala
10	Mr.Nishank Mehta	TGT SST	KV Kavaratti
11	Ms.K Jaya	TGT SST	KV Pangode
12	Ms.Premalatha Bhatt	TGT SST	KV Pangode
13	Mr.Upendar Verma	TGT SST	KV Idukki
14	Mr.Ram Sharan	TGT SST	KV Chennerkara
15	Mr.Praseena J	TGT SST	KV Palakkad
16	Ms.Asha Ram V	TGT SST	KV Ernakulam
17	Mr.Kuttiyachan T C	TGT SST	KV Kadavanthara
18	Ms.Beena Rose George	TGT SST	KV Kaduthuruthy
19	Ms.Parvathy S Pillai	TGT SST	KV SAP Peroorkada
20	Ms.Arathy	TGT SST	KV Ottapalam
21	Ms.Swapna T	TGT SST	KVAFS Akkulam
22	Mr.Giriraj Verma	TGT SST	KV Port Trust
23	Ms.Nivedita	TGT SST	No.1 NB, Kochi
24	Mr.Satheesan P K	TGT SST	KV Kannur
25	Ms.SwapnaRajan K R	TGT SST	KV CRPF Pallipuram
26	Ms.Regimol Sebastian	TGT SST	KV No.2 Naval Base
27	Ms.Ushakumari P	TGT SST	KV Thrissur
28	Ms.Treasa M S	TGT SST	KV Thrissur
29	Ms. Jaishree Nair	TGT SST	KV Thrissur
30	Aneeshkumar	COMPUTER INSTRUCTOR	KV Thrissur

आर सेन्दिल कुमार
उपायुक्त

R. Senthil Kumar
Deputy Commissioner



केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन,
क्षेत्रीय कार्यालय, एरणाकुलम

KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN
REGIONAL OFFICE,
ERNAKULAM,
KOCHI – 682 020

Ph. No.0484- 2205111(DC)
Website: www.roernakulam.kvs.gov.in
Email : deernakulamregion a gmail.com

F.31/Acad/KVS(EKM)

Date : 23/09/2022

MESSAGE FROM DEPUTY COMMISSIONER

The Kendriya Vidyalaya Sangathan, Ernakulam Region is immensely pleased to place in the hands of the students the Support Material for the academic year 2022-2023

The importance of adequate practice during examinations can never be overemphasized. The material has been prepared keeping in mind your needs when you are preparing for final exams and wish to revise and practice questions or when you want to test your ability to complete the question paper in the time allotted. It helps the students to face the Board Exams with ease and confidence.

The Students' Support Material has all the important aspects required by you, syllabus, all the units/chapters or concepts in points, mind maps, CCT questions, assertion and reasoning, flow charts and maps for easy reference. The sample paper published by CBSE is also added. This effort would prove to be fruitful only if it is implemented in the right spirit.

A team of dedicated and experienced teachers with expertise in their subjects has prepared this material. I appreciate the sincere efforts put forward by the teaching faculty in bringing out the Support Material in time. I am confident that the material will help you perform well in your exams. I also take this opportunity to convey my best wishes to all the students for success in their endeavor's.

With Best Wishes.

(R Senthil Kumar)
Deputy Commissioner

Content



➤ Syllabus for Board Examination 2022-23

- **COURSE STRUCTURE**
- **COURSECONTENT**
- **PROJECT WORK**
- **LISTOFMAPITEMS**

➤ Chapters

- **HISTORY**
- **GEOGRAPHY**
- **ECONOMICS**
- **POLITICS**

➤ Sample Question Paper & Marking Scheme

Syllabus for Board Examination 2022-23

SOCIAL SCIENCE CLASS IX-X (2022-23) (CODE NO. 087)

Rationale

Social Science is a compulsory subject up to secondary stage of school education. It is an integral component of general education because it helps the learners in understanding the environment in its totality and developing a broader perspective and an empirical, reasonable and humane outlook. This is of crucial importance because it helps them grow into well-informed and responsible citizens with necessary attributes and skills for being able to participate and contribute effectively in the process of development and nation-building.

The Social Science curriculum draws its content mainly from History, Geography, Political Science and Economics. Some elements of Sociology and Commerce are also included. Together they provide a comprehensive view of society over space and time, and in relation to each other. Each subject's distinct methods of enquiry help the learners to understand society from different angles and form a holistic view.

Objectives

The main objectives of this syllabus are to:

- develop an understanding of the processes of change and development-both in terms of time and space, through which human societies have evolved
- make learners realize that the process of change is continuous and any event or phenomenon or issue cannot be viewed in isolation but in a wider context of time and space
- develop an understanding of contemporary India with its historical perspective, of the basic framework of the goals and policies of national development in independent India, and of the process of change with appropriate connections to world development
- deepen knowledge about and understanding of India's freedom struggle and of the values and ideals that it represented, and to develop an appreciation of the contributions made by people of all sections and regions of the country
- help learners understand and cherish the values enshrined in the Indian Constitution and to prepare them for their roles and responsibilities as effective citizens of a democratic society
- deepen the knowledge and understanding of India's environment in its totality, their interactive processes and effects on the future quality of people's lives

- facilitate the learners to understand and appreciate the diversity in the land and people of the country with its underlying unity
- develop an appreciation of the richness and variety of India's heritage-both natural and cultural and the need for its preservation
- promote an understanding of the issues and challenges of contemporary India-environmental, economic and social, as part of the development process
- help pupils acquire knowledge, skills and understanding to face the challenges of contemporary society as individuals and groups and learn the art of living a confident and stress-free life as well as participating effectively in the community
- develop scientific temperament by promoting the spirit of enquiry and following a rational and objective approach in analysing and evaluating data and information as well as views and interpretations
- develop academic and social skills such as critical thinking, communicating effectively both in visual and verbal forms - cooperating with others, taking initiatives and providing leadership in solving others' problems
- develop qualities clustered around the personal, social, moral, national and spiritual values that make a person humane and socially effective.

COURSE STRUCTURE CLASS IX (2022-23)

Theory Paper

Time: 3 Hrs.		Max. Marks: 80	
No.	Units	No. of Periods	Marks
I	India and the Contemporary World – I	60	20
II	Contemporary India – I	55	20
III	Democratic Politics - I	50	20
IV	Economics	50	20
Total		215	80

COURSE CONTENT

Unit 1: India and the Contemporary World – I		60 Periods
Themes	Learning Objectives	
Section 1: Events and Processes: (All the three themes are compulsory)	In each of the themes in this unit students would get familiarized with distinct ideologies, extracts of speeches, political declarations, as well as the politics of caricatures, posters and engravings. Students	

I. The French Revolution:

- French Society During the Late Eighteenth Century
- The Outbreak of the Revolution
- France Abolishes Monarchy and Becomes a Republic
- Did Women have a Revolution?
- The Abolition of Slavery
- The Revolution and Everyday Life

II. Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution:

- The Age of Social Change
- The Russian Revolution
- The February Revolution in Petrograd
- What Changed after October?
- The Global Influence of the Russian Revolution and the USSR

III. Nazism and the Rise of Hitler:

- Birth of the Weimar Republic
- Hitler's Rise to Power
- The Nazi Worldview
- Youth in Nazi Germany
- Ordinary People and the Crimes Against Humanity

Section 2: Livelihoods, Economies and Societies:

IV. Forest Society and Colonialism:

- Why Deforestation?
- The Rise of Commercial Forestry
- Rebellion in the Forest
- Forest Transformations in Java

would learn how to interpret these kinds of historical evidences.

- Familiarize with the names of people involved, the different types of ideas that inspired the revolution, the wider forces that shaped it.
- Know the use of written, oral and visual material to recover the history of revolutions.

- Explore the history of socialism through the study of Russian Revolution.
- Familiarize with the different types of ideas that inspired the revolution.

- Discuss the critical significance of Nazism in shaping the politics of modern world.
- Get familiarized with the speeches and writings of Nazi Leaders.

- Discuss the social and cultural world of forest communities through the study of specific revolts.
- Understand how oral traditions can be used to explore tribal revolts.

<p>V. Pastoralists in the Modern World:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pastoral Nomads and their Movements • Colonial Rule and Pastoral Life • Pastoralism in Africa 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Highlight varying patterns of developments within pastoral societies in different places. • Analyze the impact of colonialism on forest societies, and the implication of scientific forestry. • Show the different processes through which agrarian transformation may occur in the modern world. • Analyze the impact of modern states, marking of boundaries, processes of sedentarization, contraction of pastures, and expansion of markets on pastoralism in the modern world.
--	---

Unit 2: Contemporary India – I	55 Periods
---------------------------------------	-------------------

Themes	Learning Objectives
<p>1. India</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Location • Size • India and the World • India’s Neighbours <p>2. Physical Features of India:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Major Physiographic Divisions – Himalayan Mountains, Northern Plains, Peninsular Plateau, Indian Desert, Coastal Plains, Islands <p>3. Drainage:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Concept • Drainage Systems in India • The Himalayan Rivers - Ganga and Brahmaputra River System 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identify the location of India in the Indian subcontinent. • Understand the major landform features and the underlying geological structure; their association with various rocks and minerals as well as nature of soil types. • Identify the river systems of the country and explain the role of rivers in the human society.

- The Peninsular Rivers- Narmada Basin, Tapti Basin, Godavari Basin, Mahanadi Basin, Krishna Basin, Kaveri Basin
- Lakes
- Role of Rivers in the Economy
- River Pollution

4. Climate:

- Concept
- Climatic Controls
- Factors influencing India's climate – Latitude, Altitude, Pressure and Winds (excluding Jet Streams and Western Cyclonic Disturbances and related figures)
- The Seasons – Cold Weather Season, Hot Weather Season, Advancing Monsoon, Retreating/Post Monsoons
- Distribution of Rainfall
- Monsoon as a unifying bond

5. Natural Vegetation and Wild Life:

- Types of Vegetation – Tropical Evergreen Forests, Tropical Deciduous Forests, Thorn Forests and Shrubs, Montane Forests, Mangrove Forests
- Wild Life

6. Population:

- Population Size and Distribution – India's Population Size and Distribution by Numbers, India's Population Distribution by Density
- Population Growth and Processes of Population Change – Population Growth, Processes of Population Change/Growth

- Identify various factors influencing the climate and explain the climatic variation of our country and its impact on the life of the people.
- Explain the importance and unifying role of monsoons.

- Explain the nature of diverse flora and fauna as well as their distribution.
- Develop concern about the need to protect the biodiversity of our country.

- Analyse the uneven nature of population distribution and show concern about the large size of our population.

Unit 3: Democratic Politics – I**50 Periods**

Themes	Learning Objectives
<p>1. What is Democracy? Why Democracy?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is Democracy? • Features of Democracy • Why Democracy? • Broader Meanings of Democracy <p>2. Constitutional Design:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Democratic Constitution in South Africa • Why do we need a Constitution? • Making of the Indian Constitution • Guiding Values of the Indian Constitution <p>3. Electoral Politics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Why Elections? • What is our System of Elections? • What makes elections in India democratic? <p>4. Working of Institutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How is the major policy decision taken? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop conceptual skills of defining democracy. • Understand how different historical processes and forces have promoted democracy. • Develop a sophisticated defense of democracy against common prejudices. • Develop a historical sense of the choice and nature of democracy in India. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understand the process of Constitution making. • Develop respect for the Constitution and appreciation for Constitutional values. • Recognize Constitution as a dynamic and living document. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understand representative democracy via competitive party politics. • Familiarize with Indian electoral system. • Reason out for the adoption of present Indian Electoral System. • Develop an appreciation of citizen's increased participation in electoral politics. • Recognize the significance of the Election Commission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Get an overview of central governmental structures.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parliament • Political Executive • The Judiciary <p>5. Democratic Rights:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Life without Rights • Rights in a Democracy • Rights in the Indian Constitution • Expanding scope of rights 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identify the role of Parliament and its procedures. • Distinguish between political and permanent executive authorities and functions. • Understand the parliamentary system of executive's accountability to the legislature. • Understand the working of Indian Judiciary. • Recognize the need for rights in one's life. • Understand the availability /access of rights in a democratic system/government. • Identify and be able to comprehend the Fundamental Rights given by the Indian Constitution to its citizens. • Create awareness regarding the process of safeguarding rights.
---	--

Unit 4: Economics	50 Periods
--------------------------	-------------------

Themes	Objectives
<p>1. The Story of Village Palampur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overview • Organization of Production • Farming in Palampur • Non-farm activities in Palampur <p>2. People as Resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overview • Economic Activities by Men and Women • Quality of Population • Unemployment <p>3. Poverty as a Challenge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overview • Two typical cases of Poverty 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familiarize with basic economic concepts through an imaginary story of a village. • Understand the demographic concepts. • Understand how population can be an asset or a liability for the nation.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poverty as seen by Social Scientists • Poverty Estimates • Vulnerable Groups • Interstate Disparities • Global Poverty Scenario • Causes of Poverty • Anti-Poverty measures • The Challenges Ahead <p>4. Food Security in India:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overview • What is Food Security? • Why Food Security? • Who are food insecure? • Food Security in India • What is Buffer Stock? • What is the Public Distribution System? • Current Status of Public Distribution System • Role of Cooperatives in food security 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understand poverty as a challenge. • Identify vulnerable group and interstate disparities. • Appreciate the initiatives of the government to alleviate poverty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understand the concept of food security. • Appreciate and analyse the role of government in ensuring food supply.
--	---

**PROJECT WORK
CLASS IX (2022-23)**

05 Periods	05 Marks
<p>1. Every student has to compulsorily undertake <i>one project on Disaster Management</i></p> <p>2. Objectives: The main objectives of giving project work on Disaster Management to the students are to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. create awareness in them about different disasters, their consequences and management b. prepare them in advance to face such situations c. ensure their participation in disaster mitigation plans d. enable them to create awareness and preparedness among the community. <p>3. The project work should also help in enhancing the Life Skills of the students.</p> <p>4. If possible, various forms of art may be integrated in the project work.</p>	

5. In order to realize the expected objectives completely, it would be required of the Principals / teachers to muster support from various local authorities and organizations like the Disaster Management Authorities, Relief, Rehabilitation and the Disaster Management Departments of the States, Office of the District Magistrate/ Deputy Commissioners, Fire Service, Police, Civil Defense etc. in the area where the schools are located.

6. The ***distribution of marks*** over different aspects relating to Project Work is as follows:

S. No.	Aspects	Marks
a	Content accuracy, originality and analysis	2
b	Presentation and creativity	2
c	Viva Voce	1

7. The project carried out by the students should subsequently be shared among themselves through interactive sessions such as exhibitions, panel discussions, etc.

8. All documents pertaining to assessment under this activity should be meticulously maintained by the schools.

9. A Summary Report should be prepared highlighting:

- objectives realized through individual work and group interactions;
- calendar of activities;
- innovative ideas generated in the process;
- list of questions asked in viva voce.

10. It is to be noted here by all the teachers and students that the projects and models prepared should be made from eco-friendly products without incurring too much expenditure.

11. The Project Report can be handwritten or digital.

12. The Project Work needs to enhance cognitive, affective and psychomotor skills of the learners. It will include self-assessment and peer assessment, and progress of the child in project-based and inquiry-based learning, art integrated activities, experiments, models, quizzes, role plays, group work, portfolios, etc., along with teacher assessment. (NEP-2020)

(The Project work can culminate in the form of Power Point Presentation/Exhibition/Skit/albums/files/song and dance or culture show /story

telling/debate/panel discussion, paper presentation and whichever is suitable to **Visually Impaired Candidates.**)

13. The record of the project work (internal assessment) should be kept for a period of three months for verification, if any.

**QUESTION PAPER DESIGN
CLASS IX (2022-23)**

Time: 3 Hours		Maximum Marks: 80	
Sr. No.	Competencies	Total Marks	% Weightage
1	Remembering and Understanding: Exhibiting memory of previously learned material by recalling facts, terms, basic concepts, and answers; Demonstrating understanding of facts and ideas by organizing, comparing, translating, interpreting, giving descriptions and stating main ideas	28	35%
2	Applying: Solving problems to new situations by applying acquired knowledge, facts, techniques and rules in a different way	15	18.75%
3	Formulating, Analyzing, Evaluating and Creating: Examining and breaking information into parts by identifying motives or causes; Making inferences and finding evidence to support generalizations; Presenting and defending opinions by making judgments about information, validity of ideas, or quality of work based on a set of criteria; Compiling information together in a different way by combining elements in a new pattern or proposing alternative solutions.	32	40%
4	Map Skill	5*	6.25%
		80	100%

Note: Teachers may refer 'Learning Outcomes' published by NCERT for developing Lesson Plans, Assessment Framework and Questions.

* 02 Items from History Map List and 03 from Geography Map List

INTERNAL ASSESSMENT: 20 MARKS

	Marks	Description				
Periodic Assessment	10 Marks	<table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 70%;">Pen Paper Test</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5 marks</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Assessment using multiple strategies For example, Quiz, Debate, Role Play, Viva, Group Discussion, Visual Expression, Interactive Bulletin Boards, Gallery Walks, Exit Cards, Concept Maps, Peer Assessment, Self-Assessment, etc.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5 marks</td> </tr> </table>	Pen Paper Test	5 marks	Assessment using multiple strategies For example, Quiz, Debate, Role Play, Viva, Group Discussion, Visual Expression, Interactive Bulletin Boards, Gallery Walks, Exit Cards, Concept Maps, Peer Assessment, Self-Assessment, etc.	5 marks
		Pen Paper Test	5 marks			
Assessment using multiple strategies For example, Quiz, Debate, Role Play, Viva, Group Discussion, Visual Expression, Interactive Bulletin Boards, Gallery Walks, Exit Cards, Concept Maps, Peer Assessment, Self-Assessment, etc.	5 marks					
Portfolio	5 Marks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Classwork • Work done (Activities / Assignments) • Reflections, Narrations, Journals, etc. • Achievements of the student in the subject throughout the year • Participation of the student in different activities like Heritage India Quiz 				
Subject Enrichment Activity	5 Marks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Project Work 				

LIST OF MAP ITEMS CLASS IX (2022-23)

SUBJECT - HISTORY

Chapter-1: The French Revolution

Outline Political Map of France (For locating and labeling / Identification)

- Bordeaux
- Nantes
- Paris
- Marseilles

Chapter-2: Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution

Outline Political Map of World (For locating and labeling / Identification)

- Major countries of First World War

(Central Powers and Allied Powers)

Central Powers - Germany, Austria-Hungary, Turkey (Ottoman Empire)

Allied Powers - France, England, Russia, U.S.A.

Chapter-3: Nazism and Rise of Hitler

Outline Political Map of World (For locating and labeling / Identification)

- Major countries of Second World War
Axis Powers – Germany, Italy, Japan
Allied Powers – UK, France, Former USSR, USA
- Territories under German expansion (Nazi Power)
Austria, Poland, Czechoslovakia (only Slovakia shown in the map), Denmark, Lithuania, France, Belgium

SUBJECT – GEOGRAPHY (Outline Political Map of India)

Chapter -1: India-Size and Location

- India-States with Capitals, Tropic of Cancer, Standard Meridian (Location and Labelling)

Chapter -2: Physical Features of India

- Mountain Ranges: The Karakoram, The Zasker, The Shivalik, The Aravali, The Vindhya, The Satpura, Western & Eastern Ghats
- Mountain Peaks – K2, Kanchan Junga, Anai Mudi
- Plateau - Deccan Plateau, Chotta Nagpur Plateau, Malwa Plateau
- Coastal Plains - Konkan, Malabar, Coromandal & Northern Circar (Location and Labelling)

Chapter -3: Drainage

- Rivers: (Identification only)
 - *The Himalayan River Systems*-The Indus, The Ganges, and The Satluj
 - *The Peninsular Rivers*-The Narmada, The Tapi, The Kaveri, The Krishna, The Godavari, The Mahanadi
- Lakes: Wular, Pulicat, Sambhar, Chilika

Chapter - 4: Climate

- Areas receiving rainfall less than 20 cm and over 400 cm (Identification only)

Chapter - 5: Natural Vegetation and Wild Life

- Vegetation Type: Tropical Evergreen Forest, Tropical Deciduous Forest, Thorn Forest, Montane Forests and Mangrove- For identification only
- National Parks: Corbett, Kaziranga, Ranthambor, Shivpuri, Kanha, Simlipal & Manas
- Bird Sanctuaries: Bharatpur and Ranganthitto
- Wild Life Sanctuaries: Sariska, Mudumalai, Rajaji, Dachigam (Location and Labelling)

Chapter - 6: Population (location and labelling)

- The state having highest and lowest density of population

PRESCRIBED BOOKS:

1. India and the Contemporary World - I (History) - Published by NCERT
2. Contemporary India - I (Geography) - Published by NCERT
3. Democratic Politics - I Published by NCERT
4. Economics - Published by NCERT
5. Together, Towards a Safer India - Part II, a textbook on Disaster Management for Class IX - Published by CBSE

Note: Please procure latest reprinted edition (2021) of prescribed NCERT textbooks.

**COURSE STRUCTURE
CLASS X (2022-23)**

Theory Paper

Time: 3 Hrs.		Max. Marks: 80	
No.	Units	No. of Periods	Marks
I	India and the Contemporary World – II	60	20
II	Contemporary India – II	55	20
III	Democratic Politics - II	50	20
IV	Understanding Economic Development	50	20
Total		215	80

COURSE CONTENT

Unit 1: India and the Contemporary World – II		60 Periods
Themes		Learning Objectives
Section 1: Events and Processes:		
1. The Rise of Nationalism in Europe:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The French Revolution and the Idea of the Nation • The Making of Nationalism in Europe • The Age of Revolutions: 1830-1848 • The Making of Germany and Italy • Visualizing the Nation • Nationalism and Imperialism 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable the learners to identify and comprehend the forms in which nationalism developed along with the formation of nation states in Europe in the post-1830 period. • Establish the relationship and bring out the difference between European nationalism and anti-colonial nationalisms. • Understand the way the idea of nationalism emerged and led to the formation of nation states in Europe and elsewhere.
2. Nationalism in India:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The First World War, Khilafat and Non-Cooperation • Differing Strands within the Movement • Towards Civil Disobedience • The Sense of Collective Belonging 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recognize the characteristics of Indian nationalism through a case study of Non-Cooperation and Civil Disobedience Movement. • Analyze the nature of the diverse social movements of the time. • Familiarize with the writings and ideals of different political groups and individuals.

Section 2: Livelihoods, Economies and Societies:

3. The Making of a Global World:

- The Pre-modern world
- The Nineteenth Century (1815-1914)
- The Inter war Economy
- Rebuilding a World Economy: The Post-War Era

4. The Age of Industrialization:

- Before the Industrial Revolution
- Hand Labour and Steam Power
- Industrialization in the Colonies
- Factories Come Up
- The Peculiarities of Industrial Growth
- Market for Goods

Section 3: Everyday Life, Culture and Politics:

5. Print Culture and the Modern World:

- The First Printed Books
- Print Comes to Europe
- The Print Revolution and its Impact
- The Reading Mania
- The Nineteenth Century
- India and the World of Print
- Religious Reform and Public Debates
- New Forms of Publication
- Print and Censorship

- Appreciate the ideas promoting Pan Indian belongingness.

- Show that globalization has a long history and point to the shifts within the process.
- Analyze the implication of globalization for local economies.
- Discuss how globalization is experienced differently by different social groups.

- Familiarize with the Pro- to-Industrial phase and Early – factory system.
- Familiarize with the process of industrialization and its impact on labour class.
- Enable them to understand industrialization in the colonies with reference to Textile industries.

- Identify the link between print culture and the circulation of ideas.
- Familiarize with pictures, cartoons, extracts from propaganda literature and newspaper debates on important events and issues in the past.
- Understand that forms of writing have a specific history, and that they reflect historical changes within society and shape the forces of change.

Unit 2: Contemporary India – II**55 Periods**

Themes	Learning Objectives
<p>1. Resources and Development:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Concept• Development of Resources• Resource Planning - Resource Planning in India, Conservation of Resources• Land Resources• Land Utilization• Land Use Pattern in India• Land Degradation and Conservation Measures• Soil as a Resource - Classification of Soils, Soil Erosion and Soil Conservation (excluding Box Information on State of India's Environment) <p>2. Forest and Wildlife</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Conservation of forest and wildlife in India• Types and distribution of forests and wildlife resources• Community and Conservation <p>3. Water Resources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Water Scarcity and The Need for Water Conservation and Management• Multi-Purpose River Projects and Integrated Water Resources Management• Rainwater Harvesting <p>4. Agriculture:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Types of Farming – Primitive Subsistence, Intensive Subsistence, Commercial	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understand the value of resources and the need for their judicious utilization and conservation. • Understand the importance of forests and wild life.• Understand the ability and knowledge of how forest and wildlife conservation and management relate to the economy and environment, both currently and in the future. • Comprehend the importance of water as a resource as well as develop awareness towards its judicious use and conservation. • Explain the importance of agriculture in national economy.

- Cropping Pattern – Major Crops, Food Crops other than Grains, Non Food Crops, Technological and Institutional Reforms
- Food Security (excluding impact of globalization on agriculture)

5. Minerals and Energy Resources

- What is a mineral?
- Mode of occurrence of Minerals - Where are these minerals found?, Ferrous Minerals, Non-Ferrous Minerals, Non-Metallic Minerals, Rock Minerals
- Conservation of Minerals
- Energy Resources - Conventional Sources of Energy, Non-Conventional Sources of Energy
- Conservation of Energy Resources

6. Manufacturing Industries:

- Importance of Manufacturing - Industrial Location (excluding Industry Market Linkage), Agro based Industry (excluding Cotton Textiles, Jute Textiles, Sugar Industry), Mineral based Industries (excluding Iron Steel Industry, Cement Industry), Industrial Pollution and Environmental Degradation, Control of Environmental Degradation

7. Life Lines of National Economy:

- Roadways
- Railways

- Identify various types of farming and discuss the various farming methods; describe the spatial distribution of major crops as well as understand the relationship between rainfall regimes and cropping pattern.
- Explain various government policies for institutional as well as technological reforms since independence.
- Identify different types of minerals and energy resources and places of their availability.
- Feel the need for their judicious utilization.
- Bring out the importance of industries in the national economy as well as understand the regional disparities which resulted due to concentration of industries in some areas.
- Discuss the need for a planned industrial development and debate over the role of government towards sustainable development.
- Explain the importance of transport and communication in the ever-shrinking world.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pipelines • Waterways • Major Seaports • Airways • Communication • International Trade • Tourism as a Trade 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understand the role of trade and tourism in the economic development of a country.
---	--

Unit 3: Democratic Politics – II

50 Periods

Themes	Learning Objectives
<p>1. Power Sharing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Belgium and Sri Lanka • Majoritarianism in Sri Lanka • Accommodation in Belgium • Why power sharing is desirable? • Forms of Power Sharing <p>2. Federalism:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is Federalism? • What make India a Federal Country? • How is Federalism practiced? • Decentralization in India <p>4. Gender, Religion and Caste:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gender and Politics - Public/Private division, Women’s political representation • Religion, Communalism and Politics – Communalism, Secular State (excluding image on page 46, 48, 49 of NCERT Textbook – Democratic Politics –II - reprinted edition 2021) • Caste and Politics - Caste inequalities, Caste in politics, Politics in caste <p>6. Political Parties:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Why do we need Political Parties? – Meaning, Functions, Necessity 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familiarize with the centrality of power sharing in a democracy. • Understand the working of spatial and social power sharing mechanisms. • Analyze federal provisions and institutions. • Explain decentralization in rural and urban areas. • Identify and analyze the challenges posed by communalism to Indian democracy. • Recognize the enabling and disabling effects of caste and ethnicity in politics. • Develop a gender perspective on politics. • Analyze party systems in democracies.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How many parties should we have? • National Parties • State Parties • Challenges to Political Parties • How can Parties be reformed? <p>7. Outcomes of Democracy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How do we assess democracy's outcomes? • Accountable, responsive and legitimate government • Economic growth and development • Reduction of inequality and poverty • Accommodation of social diversity • Dignity and freedom of the citizens 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction to major political parties, challenges faced by them and reforms in the country. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Evaluate the functioning of democracies in comparison to alternative forms of governments. • Understand the causes for continuation of democracy in India. • Distinguish between sources of strengths and weaknesses of Indian democracy.
--	--

Unit 4: Understanding Economic Development	50 Periods
---	-------------------

Themes	Objectives
<p>1. Development:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What Development Promises - Different People, Different Goals • Income and Other Goals • National Development • How to compare different countries or states? • Income and other criteria • Public Facilities • Sustainability of Development <p>2. Sectors of the Indian Economy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sectors of Economic Activities • Comparing the three sectors • Primary, Secondary and Tertiary Sectors in India • Division of sectors as organized and unorganized 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familiarize with concepts of macroeconomics. • Understand the rationale for overall human development in our country, which includes the rise of income, improvements in health and education rather than income. • Understand the importance of quality of life and sustainable development. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identify major employment generating sectors. • Reason out the government investment in different sectors of economy.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sectors in terms of ownership: Public and Private Sectors <p>3. Money and Credit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Money as a medium of exchange • Modern forms of Money • Loan activities of Banks • Two different Credit situations • Terms of Credit • Formal Sector Credit in India • Self Help Groups for the Poor <p>4. Globalization and the Indian Economy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Production across countries • Interlinking production across countries • Foreign Trade and integration of markets • What is Globalization? • Factors that have enabled Globalization • World Trade Organization • Impact of Globalization in India • The Struggle for a fair Globalization <p>5. Consumer Rights: To be used only for Project Work</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understand money as an economic concept. • Understand the role of financial institutions from the point of view of day-to- day life. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Explain the working of the Global Economic phenomenon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gets familiarized with the rights and duties as a consumer; and legal measures available to protect from being exploited in markets.
---	---

**PROJECT WORK
CLASS X (2022-23)**

05 Periods	05 Marks
<p>1. Every student has to compulsorily undertake any one project on the following topics:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Consumer Awareness</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Social Issues</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Sustainable Development</p>	

2. Objective: The overall objective of the project work is to help students gain an insight and pragmatic understanding of the theme and see all the Social Science disciplines from interdisciplinary perspective. It should also help in enhancing the Life Skills of the students.

Students are expected to apply the Social Science concepts that they have learnt over the years in order to prepare the project report.

If required, students may go out for collecting data and use different primary and secondary resources to prepare the project. If possible, various forms of art may be integrated in the project work.

3. The distribution of marks over different aspects relating to Project Work is as follows:

S. No.	Aspects	Marks
a.	Content accuracy, originality and analysis	2
b.	Presentation and creativity	2
c.	Viva Voce	1

4. The projects carried out by the students in different topics should subsequently be shared among themselves through interactive sessions such as exhibitions, panel discussions, etc.

5. All documents pertaining to assessment under this activity should be meticulously maintained by concerned schools.

6. A Summary Report should be prepared highlighting:

- objectives realized through individual work and group interactions;
- calendar of activities;
- innovative ideas generated in the process ;
- list of questions asked in viva voce.

7. It is to be noted here by all the teachers and students that the projects and models prepared should be made from eco-friendly products without incurring too much expenditure.

8. The Project Report can be handwritten/digital.

9. The Project Work needs to enhance cognitive, affective, and psychomotor skills of the learners. It will include self-assessment and peer assessment, and progress of the child in project-based and inquiry-based learning, art integrated activities, experiments, models, quizzes, role plays, group work, portfolios, etc., along with teacher

assessment. (NEP-2020)

(The Project work can culminate in the form of Power Point Presentation/Exhibition/Skit/albums/files/song and dance or culture show /story telling/debate/panel discussion, paper presentation and whichever is suitable to **Visually Impaired Candidates.**)

10. Records pertaining to projects (internal assessment) of the students will be maintained for a period of three months from the date of declaration of result for verification at the discretion of Board. Subjudiced cases, if any or those involving RTI / Grievances may however be retained beyond three months.

QUESTION PAPER DESIGN CLASS X

Time: 3 Hours		Maximum Marks : 80	
Sr. No.	Competencies	Total Marks	% Weightage
1	Remembering and Understanding: Exhibiting memory of previously learned material by recalling facts, terms, basic concepts, and answers; Demonstrating understanding of facts and ideas by organizing, translating, interpreting, giving descriptions and stating main ideas.	28	35%
2	Applying: Solving problems to new situations by applying acquired knowledge, facts, techniques and rules in a different way.	15	18.75%
3	Formulating, Analyzing, Evaluating and Creating: Examining and breaking information into parts by identifying motives or causes; Making inferences and finding evidence to support generalizations; Presenting and defending opinions by making judgments about information, validity of ideas, or quality of work based on a set of criteria; Compiling information together in a different way by combining elements in a new pattern or proposing alternative solutions.	32	40%
4	Map Skill	5	6.25%
		80	100%

Note: 1. Teachers may refer 'Learning Outcomes' published by NCERT for developing lesson plans, assessment framework and questions.

2. 02 Items from History Map List and 03 Items from Geography Map List

INTERNAL ASSESSMENT: 20 MARKS

	Marks	Description
Periodic Assessment	10 Marks	Pen Paper Test
		Assessment using multiple strategies For example, Quiz, Debate, Role Play, Viva, Group Discussion, Visual Expression, Interactive Bulletin Boards, Gallery Walks, Exit Cards, Concept Maps, Peer Assessment, Self-Assessment, etc.
Portfolio	5 Marks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Classwork • Work done (Activities / Assignments) • Reflections, Narrations, Journals, etc. • Achievements of the student in the subject throughout the year • Participation of the student in different activities like Heritage India Quiz
Subject Enrichment Activity	5 Marks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Project Work

LIST OF MAP ITEMS CLASS X (2022-23)

A. HISTORY (Outline Political Map of India)

Chapter - 3 Nationalism in India – (1918 – 1930) for locating and labelling / Identification

1. Indian National Congress Sessions:

- a. Calcutta (Sep. 1920)
- b. Nagpur (Dec. 1920)
- c. Madras (1927)

2. Important Centres of Indian National Movement

- a. Champaran (Bihar) - Movement of Indigo Planters
- b. Kheda (Gujarat) - Peasant Satyagrah
- c. Ahmedabad (Gujarat) - Cotton Mill Workers Satyagraha
- d. Amritsar (Punjab) - Jallianwala Bagh Incident
- e. Chauri Chaura (U.P.) - Calling off the Non-Cooperation Movement

f. Dandi (Gujarat) - Civil Disobedience Movement

B. GEOGRAPHY (Outline Political Map of India)

Chapter 1: Resources and Development (Identification only)

a. Major soil Types

Chapter 3: Water Resources (Locating and Labelling)

Dams:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| a. Salal | e. Sardar Sarovar |
| b. Bhakra Nangal | f. Hirakud |
| c. Tehri | g. Nagarjuna Sagar |
| d. Rana Pratap Sagar | h. Tungabhadra |

Chapter 4: Agriculture (Identification only)

- a. Major areas of Rice and Wheat
b. Largest / Major producer states of Sugarcane, Tea, Coffee, Rubber, Cotton and Jute

Chapter 5: Minerals and Energy Resources

Minerals (Identification only)

a. Iron Ore mines

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| • Mayurbhanj | • Bellary |
| • Durg | • Kudremukh |
| • Bailadila | |

b. Coal Mines

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| • Raniganj | • Talcher |
| • Bokaro | • Neyveli |

c. Oil Fields

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| • Digboi | • Bassien |
| • Naharkatia | • Kalol |
| • Mumbai High | • Ankaleshwar |

Power Plants

(Locating and Labelling only)

a. Thermal

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| • Namrup | • Ramagundam |
| • Singrauli | |

b. Nuclear

- Narora
- Kakrapara
- Tarapur
- Kalpakkam

Chapter 6: Manufacturing Industries (Locating and Labelling Only)

Software Technology Parks:

- a. Noida
- b. Gandhinagar
- c. Mumbai
- d. Pune
- e. Hyderabad
- f. Bengaluru
- g. Chennai
- h. Thiruvananthapuram

Chapter 7: Lifelines of National Economy

Major Ports: (Locating and Labelling)

- a. Kandla
- b. Mumbai
- c. Marmagao
- d. New Mangalore
- e. Kochi
- f. Tuticorin
- g. Chennai
- h. Vishakhapatnam
- i. Paradip
- j. Haldia

International Airports:

- a. Amritsar (Raja Sansi - Sri Guru Ram Dass jee)
- b. Delhi (Indira Gandhi)
- c. Mumbai (Chhatrapati Shivaji)
- d. Chennai (Meenam Bakkam)
- e. Kolkata (Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose)
- f. Hyderabad (Rajiv Gandhi)

Note: Items of Locating and Labelling may also be given for Identification.

PRESCRIBED BOOKS:

1. India and the Contemporary World-II (History) - Published by NCERT
2. Contemporary India II (Geography) - Published by NCERT
3. Democratic Politics II (Political Science) - Published by NCERT
4. Understanding Economic Development - Published by NCERT
5. Together Towards a Safer India - Part III, a textbook on Disaster Management - Published by CBSE

Note: Please procure latest reprinted edition (2021) of prescribed NCERT textbooks.

Social Science

India and the Contemporary World - II

Textbook in History for Class X



CHAPTER 1

THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EUROPE

- The French Revolution and the Idea of Nation
- The Making of Nationalism in Europe
- The Age of Revolution : 1830-1848
- The Making of Germany and Italy
- Visualizing the Nation
- Nationalism and Imperialism
- Summary

KEY WORDS AND TERMS

1. **Nationalism.** A sense of belonging to one nation. Feeling or pride and patriotism towards the country one belongs.
2. **Absolutist.** Unrestricted, despotic and authoritarian often refers to a centralized repressive monarchical government.
3. **Utopian.** An ideal situation, a vision too good to be realised in practice.
4. **Nation-state.** A state having a common and contiguous boundary with inhabitants/people sharing common language, race and religion. Majority of its citizens develop a sense of common identity and share a common history ruled by a strong government.
5. **Plebiscite.** A direct vote by which the people of a region, themselves decide to accept or reject a proposal.
6. **Sovereignty.** Supreme power.
7. **Monarchy.** Form of government headed by a monarch or a hereditary or dynastic ruler.
8. **The Estates General.** Referred to the French parliament- an elected body which was renamed as the National Assembly after the Revolution of 1789.
9. **Civil Code.** A systematic set of laws for the citizens.
10. **Habsburg Empire.** The empire that ruled Austria-Hungary including the Alpine region of Tyrol, Austria, Sudetenland Bohemia. It also included Italian provinces of Lombardy and Venetia.
11. **Liberalism.** Derived from the Latin word 'liber' meaning free. The idea of liberalism stands for freedom of individual and equality of all before law. Politically it refers to representative government.
12. **Suffrage.** The right to vote.
13. **Elle.** Elle was used to measure cloth, prevalent in German states.
14. **Zollverein.** A customs union, formed in 1834 in Prussia to remove barriers of trade.
15. **Conservatism.** A spirit or philosophy which believes in maintaining and preserving traditional values and institutions. It prefers gradual change to quick and drastic change.
16. **Carbonari.** A secret society of Italy-consisting of young revolutionaries.
17. **Young Italy.** A secret society founded by Mazzini at Marseilles for organizing revolutionary activities.
18. **Romanticism.** A cultural movement which aimed at developing a particular form of national sentiment and promote a feeling of collective heritage as the basis of nation.

19. **Das Volk.** A German word meaning common people.
20. **Republic.** A state where the head of the state is elected and does not hold a hereditary position.
21. **Feminist.** People who advocate women's rights on the basis of equality of sexes.
22. **Ideology.** System of ideas reflecting a particular social and political vision.
23. **Allegory.** Symbol representing an abstract idea; an idea identified through a person or a thing.
24. **Balkan region.** A region in Europe with geographical and ethnic variation. The region covers the states of modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia, Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia, Montenegro. The inhabitants of the region are known as the Slavs.
25. **Jacobins.** A French political group who contested election after the French Revolution.
26. **Junkers.** Large landowners of Prussia.

IMPORTANT YEARS

Date	Happenings
1688	British parliament seizes power from the monarchy
1707	Act of Union between Scotland and England
1785 & 1786	Grimm Brothers Jacob Grimm and Wilhelm Grimm were born
1789	The first clear expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution
1797	Napoleon invades Italy; Napoleonic wars begin
1804	Civil Code or Napoleonic Code removed all privileges based on birth & established equality
1807	Italian revolutionary Giuseppe Mazzini was born
1812	Grimm brothers published their first collection of tales
1813	Napoleon lost the battle of Leipzig
1814- 1815	Fall of Napoleon; the Vienna Peace Settlement

- 1815 The defeat of Napoleon by Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria
- 1821 Greek struggle for independence begins
- 1821 Nationalism sparked off amongst the Greeks
- 1824 English poet Lord Byron died of fever
- 1824 Massacre at Chios, Eugene Delacroix
- July
1830 The first upheaval took place in France
- 1831 Giuseppe Mazzini was sent to exile for attempting a revolution in Liguria
- 1831 An armed rebellion took place against Russian rule
- 1832 Treaty of Constantinople recognised Greece as an independent nation
- 1833 The founding of Young Europe in Berne
- 1834 A Customs Union or Zollverein was formed at the initiative of Prussia
- 1845 Weavers in Silesia led a revolt against contractors
- 1848 French artist named Frédéric Sorrieu prepared a series of four prints visualising 'Democratic and social Republics'
- 1848 Revolutions in Europe; artisans, industrial workers and peasants revolt against economic hardships; middle classes demand constitutions and representative governments; Italians, Germans, Magyars, Poles, Czechs, etc. demand nation-states
- 18
May
1848 831 elected representatives marched in a festive procession to take their places in the Frankfurt parliament
- 1859 Tactful diplomatic alliance with France engineered by Cavour, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces
- 1859-
1870 Unification of Italy

1861 Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed king of united Italy

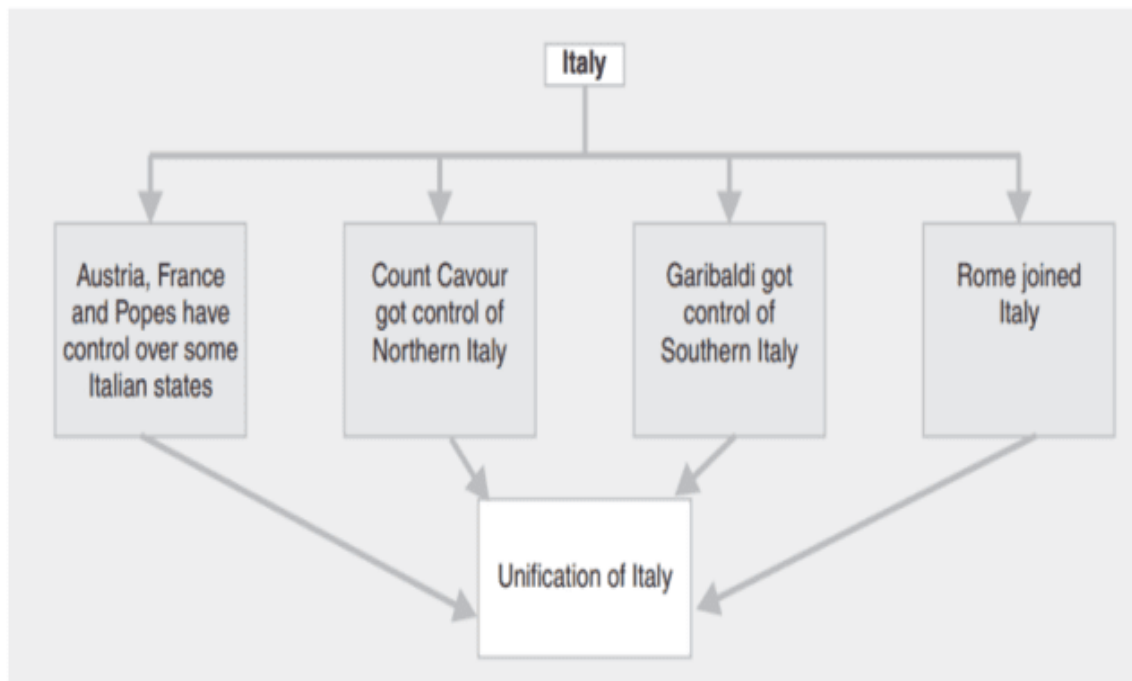
1866-1871 Unification of Germany

1867 Habsburg rulers granted more autonomy to the Hungarians

January 1871 Prussian king, William I, was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles

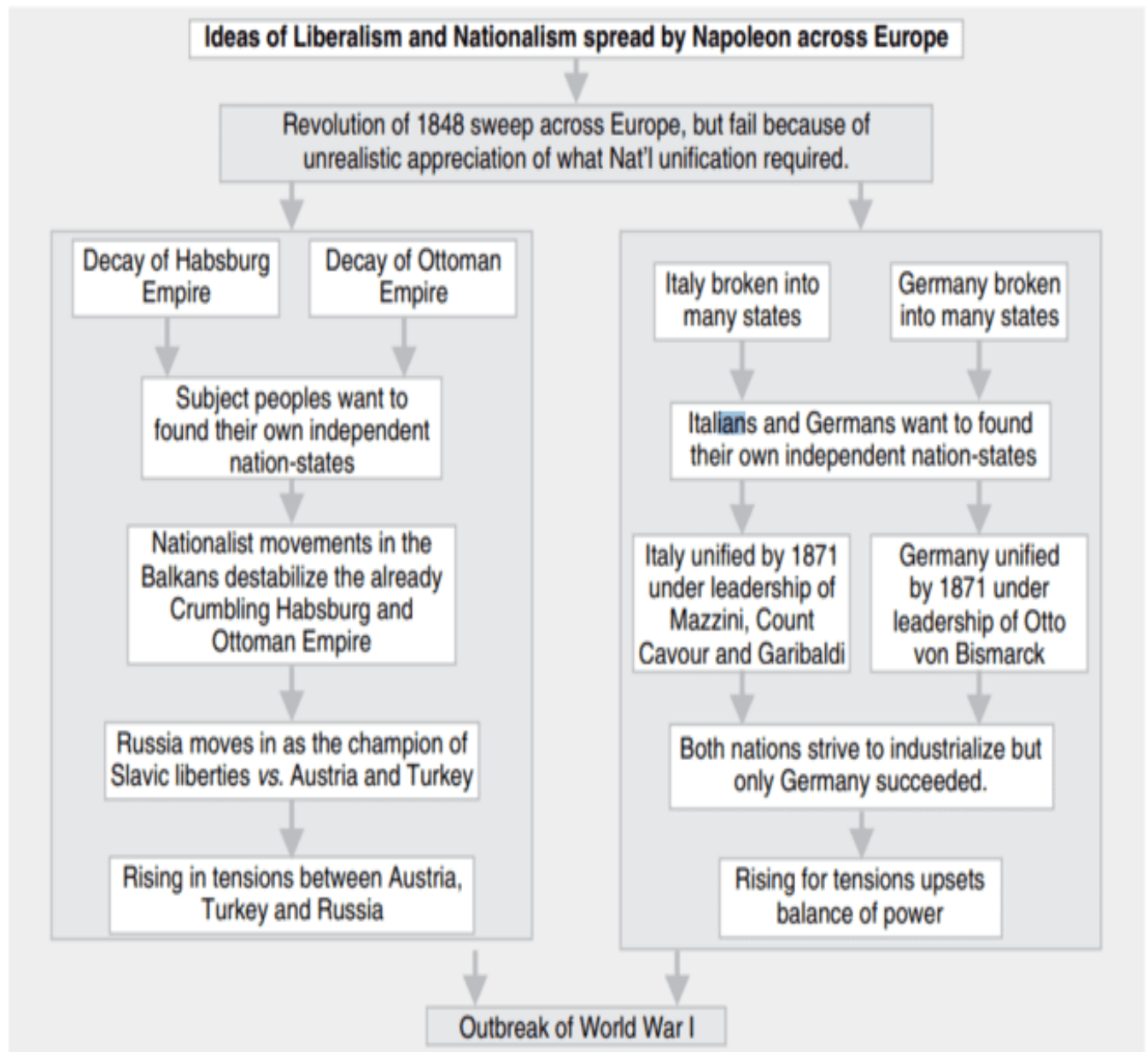
Slav nationalism gathers force in the Habsburg and Ottoman Empires

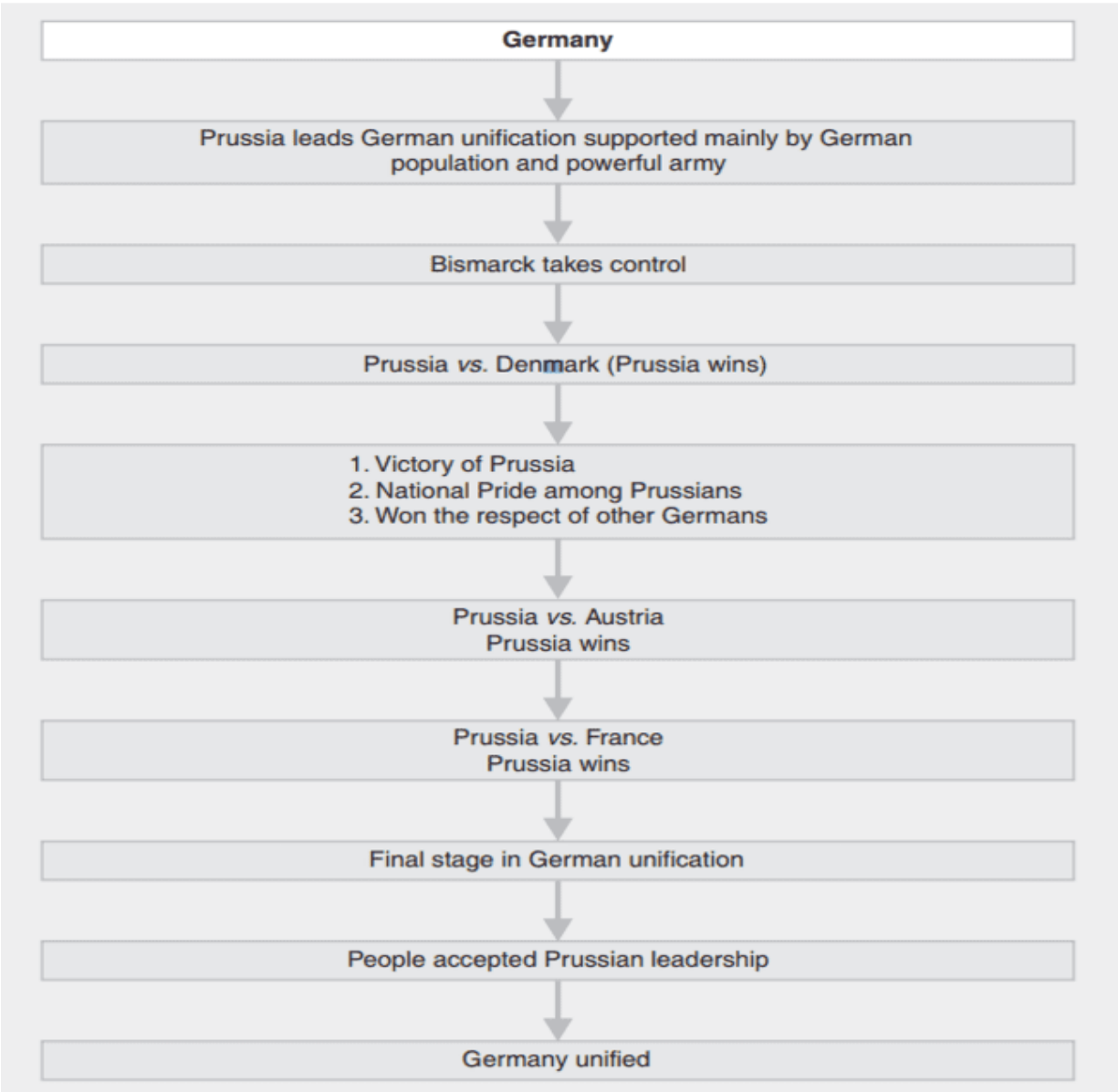
FLOWCHARTS

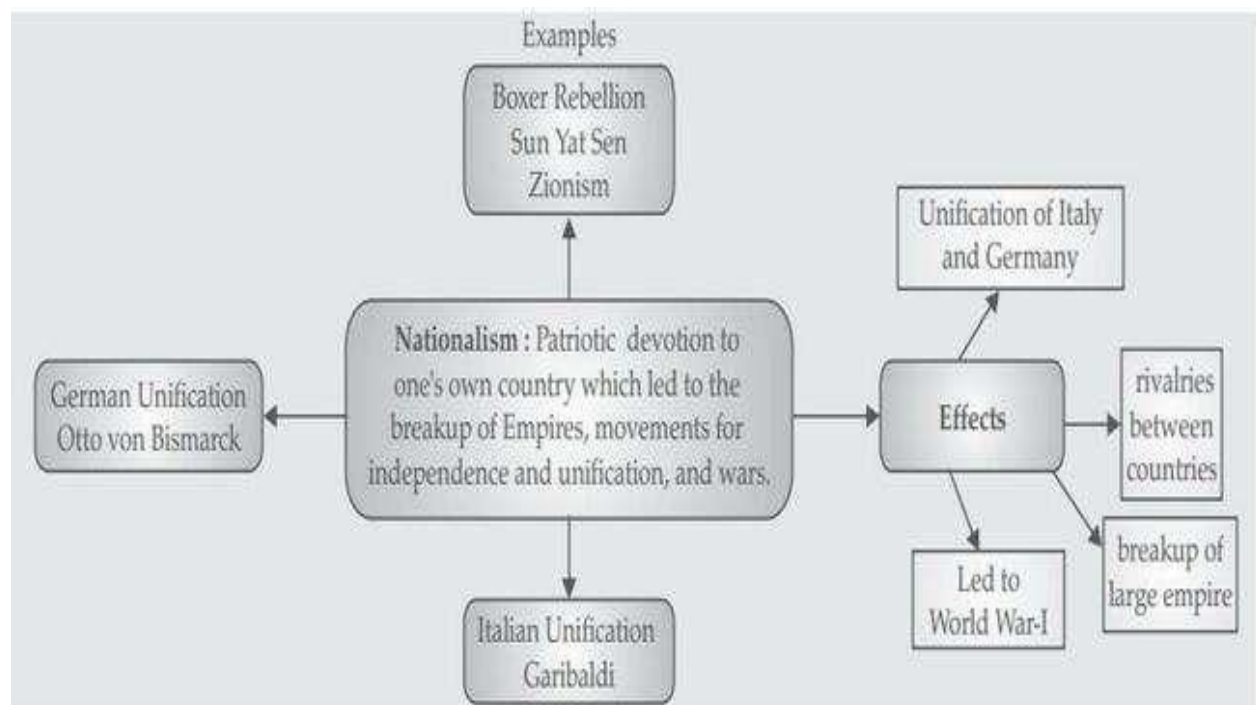
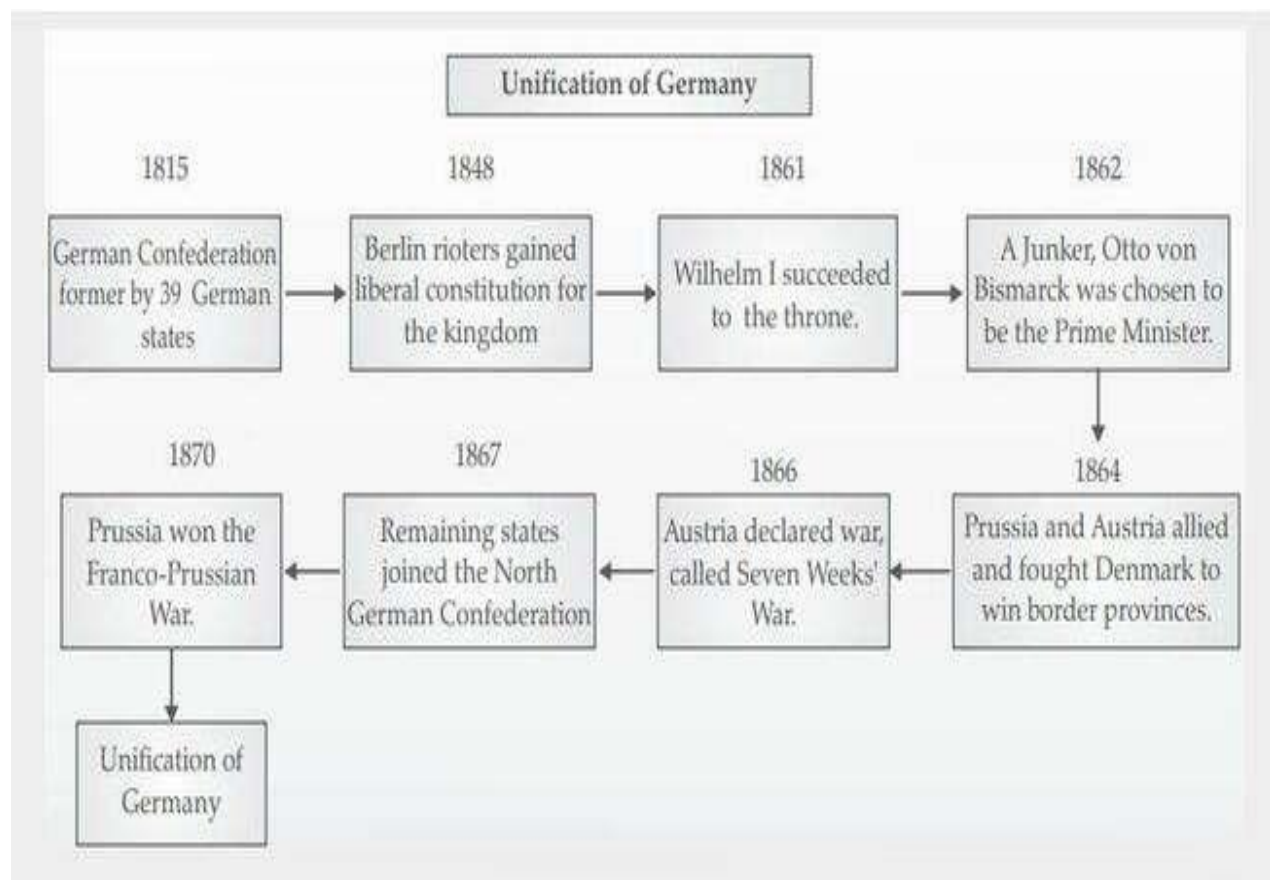


Chapter - 1 : The Rise Of Nationalism In Europe

Flowcharts



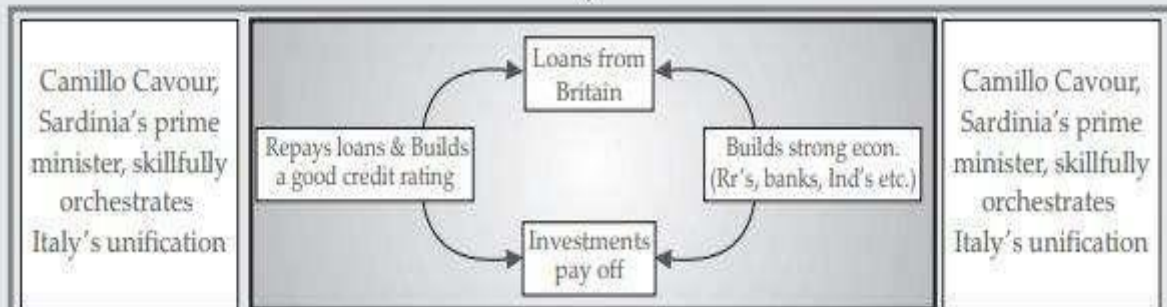




THE UNIFICATION OF ITALY & ITS EFFECTS (1848-1914)

Rev's of 1848 fall when Pope & Duke of Tuscany desert the cause of Italian unification & Indep. (FC. 108)

Kgd. of Sardinia (aka : Piedmont) seen as the natural leader for Italian unification



Sardinia, needing allies vs. Austria, helps France & Britain vs. Russia in Crimean War & Fr. helps Sardinia vs. Aust. in War of 1859, but drops out after two costly victories & Sardinia gets most of N. Italy, while France gets Nice & Savoy for its help

Giuseppe Garibaldi, a fiery rev. leader, furious about Fr. observing the Ital. cause & then getting Nice, his birthplace, plans to take Nice back & Sard. diverts him to S. Italy & Sicily, which he takes from the Bourbons.

Sard. takes Papal States
(exc. Rome) fr. France

Garibaldi turns S. Italy &
Sicily over to Sardinia

Formation of Kgd. of Italy (1861) & Need two
more areas to complete unification

Venice which falls to Italy after Austro Prussian War (1866)	Rome which falls to Italy after Franco-Prussian War (1871)
---	---

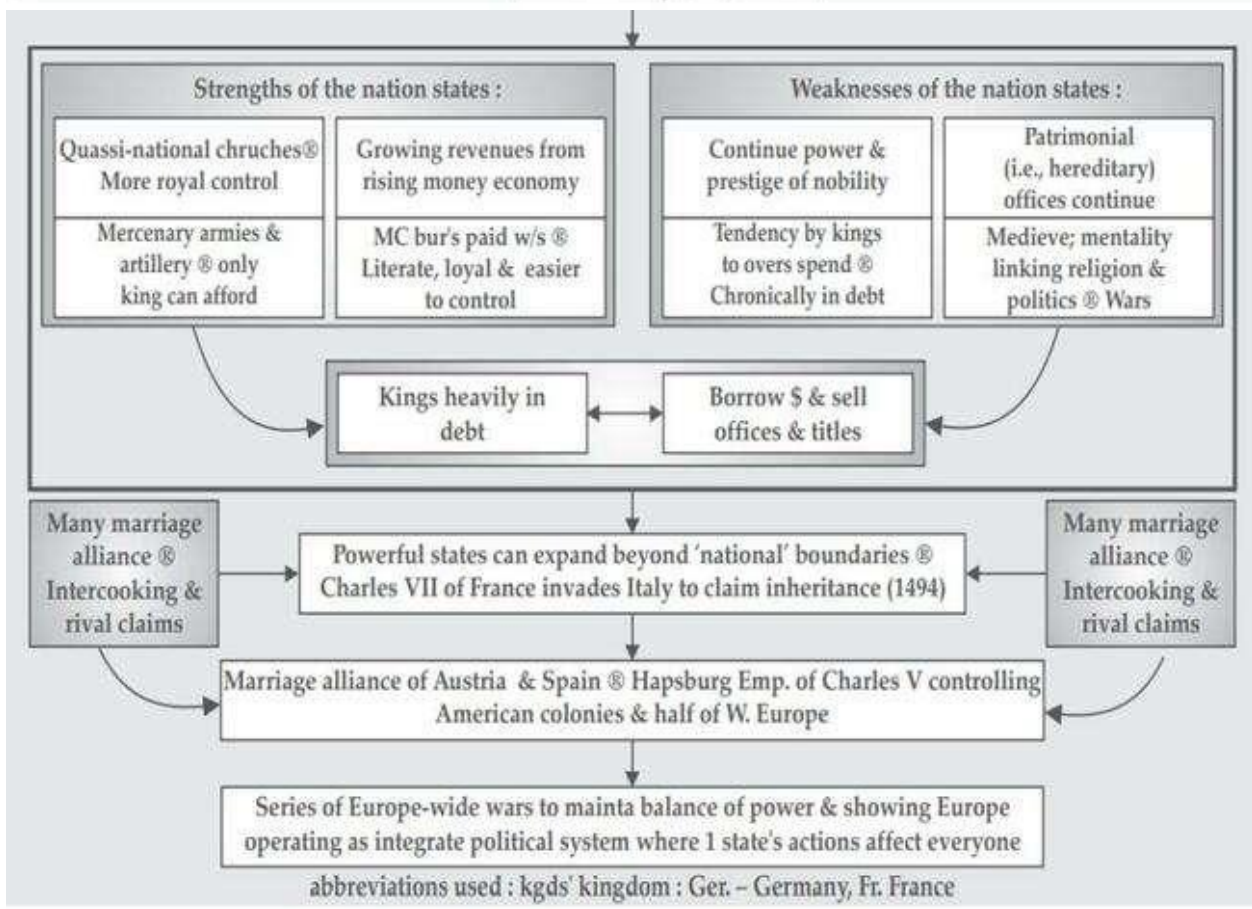
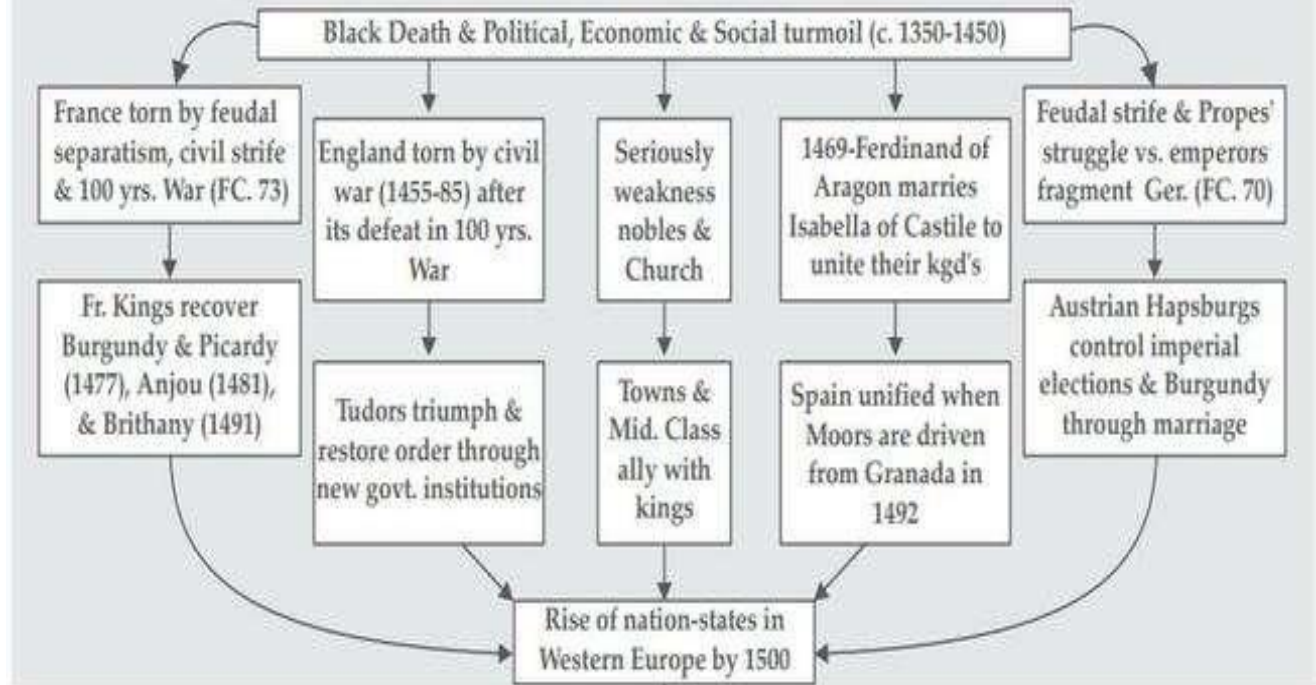
Efforts to build Italy winat'I army, nat'I RR, &
public education largely fall because :

Resistance from local groups (e.g., Mafia)	Uneven distr. of wealth b/w N & S Italy	Different subcultures in N. & S. Italy
---	--	---

Italy's poor performance in World War (FC. 127)

Italy describe & open to takeover by Mussolini & the Fascists (FC. 133)

THE RISE OF THE NATION STATE (1450-1500)



IMPORTANT EVENTS

1789- The French Revolution occurred

1797-Napoleon invades Italy, Napoleonic wars begins

1804-Napoleonic Code or the civil Code was introduced, abolishing privileges based on birth. Upheld equality before law and secured right to property.

1814-1815-Defeat of Napoleon by European powers-Britain, Prussia, Russia and Austria

1815- Conservative regimes were set up.

1821- Greek struggle for independence begins.

1830-The July Revolution sparked an uprising in Brussels

In 1848, Frederic Sorrieu, a French artist, prepared a series of four print visualizing his dream of a world made up of 'democratic and social republic, as he called them.

1. Artists of the time of the French Revolution personified Liberty as a female figure.
2. According to Sorrieu's utopian vision, the peoples of the world are grouped as distinct nations, identified through their flags and national costume.
3. This chapter will deal with many of the issues visualized by Sorrieu.
4. During the nineteenth century, nationalism emerged as a force which brought about sweeping changes in the political and mental world of Europe.
5. The end result of these changes was the emergence of the *nation-state* in the place of the multi-national dynastic empires of Europe.
6. A *modern* state, in which a centralized power exercised sovereign control over a clearly defined territory, had been developing over a long period of time in Europe.
7. But a *nation-state* was one in which the majority of its citizens, and not only its rulers, came to develop a sense of common identity and shared history or descent.
8. This chapter will look at the diverse processes through which nation-states and nationalism came into being in nineteenth-century Europe.

The French Revolution and the idea of the Nation

1. The first clear expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789.
2. The political and constitutional changes that came in the wake of the French Revolution led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens.
3. The ideas of *la patrie* (the fatherland) and *le citoyen* (the citizen) emphasized the notion of a united community enjoying equal rights under a constitution.
4. The Estates General was elected by the body of the active citizens and renamed the National Assembly..Internal customs duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted.
5. The revolutionaries further declared that it was the mission and the destiny of the French nation to liberate the peoples of Europe from despotism.
6. Students and other members of educated middle classes began setting up Jacobin club.
7. Their activities and campaigns prepared the way for the French armies which moved into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and much of Italy in the 1790's.

8. The French armies began to carry the idea of nationalism abroad.
9. Through a return to monarchy Napoleon had, no doubt, destroyed democracy in France, but in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient.
10. The Civil Code of 1804 – usually known as the Napoleonic Code – did away with all privileges based on birth, established equality before the Law and secured the right to property.
11. Napoleon simplified administrative divisions, abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues.
12. Transport and communication systems were improved.
13. Businessmen and small-scale producers of goods, in particular, began to realize that uniform laws, standardized weights and measures, and a common national currency would facilitate the movement and exchange of goods and capital from one region to another.
14. In many places such as Holland and Switzerland, Brussels, Mainz, Milan, Warsaw, the French armies were welcomed as harbingers of Liberty.
15. It became clear that the new administrative arrangements did not go hand in hand with political freedom.
16. Increased taxation, censorship, forced conscription into the French armies required to conquer the rest of the Europe, all seemed to outweigh the advantages of the administrative changes.

The Making of Nationalism in Europe

1. Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, duchies and cantons whose rulers had their autonomous territories.
2. They did not see themselves as sharing a collective identity or a common culture.
3. The Habsburg Empire ruled over Austria Hungary.
4. In Hungary, half of the population spoke Magyar while the other half of the spoke a variety of dialects.
5. Besides these three dominant groups, there also lived within the boundaries of the empire.
6. The only tie binding these diverse groups together was a common allegiance to the emperor.

The Aristocracy and the new middle class

1. Socially and politically, a landed aristocracy was the dominant class on the continent.
2. The members of this class were by a common way of life that cut across regional divisions.
3. Their families were often connected by ties if marriages.
4. This powerful aristocracy was, however, numerically a small group. The growth of towns and the emergence of commercial classes whose existence was based on production for the market.
5. Industrialization began in England in the second half of the eighteenth century, but in France and parts of the German states it occurred only during the nineteenth century.
6. In its wake, new social groups came into being: a working-class population, and middle classes made up of industrialists, businessmen, professional.

7. It was among the educated, liberal middle classes that ideas of national unity following the abolition of aristocratic privileges gained popularity.

What did Liberal Nationalism Stand for?

1. In early-nineteenth-century Europe were closely allied to the ideology of liberalism.
2. The term 'liberalism' derives from the Latin root *liber*, meaning free.
3. Liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law.
4. It emphasized the concept of government by consent.
5. A constitution and representative government through parliament.
6. The right to vote and to get elected was generated exclusively to property-owning men.
7. Men without property and all women were excluded from political rights.
8. Women and non-propertied men and women organised opposition movements demanding equal political rights.
9. The abolition of state-imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital.
10. A merchant travelling in 1833 from Hamburg to Nuremberg to sell his goods would have to pass through 11 customs barriers and pay a customs duty of about 5% at each one of them.
11. Obstacles to economics exchanges and growth by the new commercial classes, who argued for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing the unhindered movement of goods, people and capital.
12. The union abolished tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from over thirty to two.

A New Conservatism after 1815

1. Following the defect of Napoleon in 1815, European governments were driven by a spirit of conservatism.
2. Most conservatives, however, did not propose a return to the society of pre-revolutionary days.
3. That modernization could in fact strengthen traditional institutions like the monarchy.
4. A modern army, an efficient bureaucracy, a dynamic economy, the abolition of feudalism and serfdom could strengthen the autocratic monarchies of Europe.
5. In 1815, representatives of the European powers – Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria – who had collectively defeated Napoleon, met at Vienna to draw up a settlement for Europe.
6. The Bourbon dynasty, which had been deposed during the French Revolution, was restored to power, and France lost the territories it had annexed under Napoleon.
7. German confederation of 39 states that has been set up by Napoleon was left untouched.
8. Autocratic did not tolerate criticism and dissent, and sought to curb activities that questioned the legitimacy of autocratic government.

The Revolutionaries

1. Revolutionary at this time meant a commitment to oppose monarchical forms and to fight for liberty and freedom.
2. Giuseppe Mazzini, born in Genoa in 1807, he became a member of the secret society of the Carbonari.

3. He was sent into exile in 1831 for attempting a revolution in Liguria.
4. Mazzini believed that god had intended nations to be the natural units of mankind.
5. Secret societies were set up in Germany, France, Switzerland and Poland.
6. Metternich described him as 'The most dangerous enemy of our social order'.

The Age of Revolution: 1830 – 1848

1. As conservative regimes tried to consolidate their power, liberalism and nationalism came to be increasingly associated with revolution in many regions of Europe such as the Italian and German states, the provinces of the Ottoman Empire, Ireland and Poland.
2. 'When France sneezes', Metternich once remarked, 'the rest of the Europe catches cold'.
3. An event that mobilized nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe was the Greek war of independence.
4. Greece had been the part of the Ottoman Empire since the fifteenth century.
5. Greeks living in exile and also from many west Europeans who had sympathies for ancient Greek culture.

The Romantic Imagination and national Feeling

1. The development of nationalism did not come about only through wars and territorial expansions.
2. Culture played an important role in creating the idea of the nation: art and poetry, stories and music helped to express and shape nationalist feeling.
3. A cultural movement which sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiments.
4. Romantic artists and poet generally criticised the glorification of reason and science and focused instead on emotions, institution and mystical feelings.
5. Other romantics were through folk song, folk poetry and folk dances that the true spirit of the nation.
6. National feelings were kept alive through music and languages.
7. Karol Kurpinski, celebrated the national struggles through his operas and music, turning folk dances like the polonaise and mazurka into nationalist symbols.
8. Language too played an important role in developing nationalist sentiments.

Hunger, Hardship and Popular Revolt

1. The 1830s were years of great economic hardship in Europe.
2. The first half of the nineteenth century saw an enormous increase in population.
3. In most countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment.
4. Population from rural areas migrated to the cities to live in overcrowded slum.
5. Food shortage and widespread unemployment brought the population of Paris out on the roads.
6. National Assembly proclaimed a republic, granted suffrage to all adult males above 21, and guaranteed the right to work.
7. Earlier, in 1845, weavers in Silesia had lead a revolt against contractors who supplied them raw material and gave them orders for finished textile.

8. On 4 June at 2 p.m. a large crowd of weavers emerged from their homes and marched in pairs up to the mansion of their contractors demanding higher wages.
9. The contractors fled with his family to a neighbouring village which, however, refused to shelter such a person.

1848: The Revolution of the Liberals

1. The poor, unemployment and starving peasants and workers in many European countries in the years 1848, a revolution led by the educated middle classes was under way.
2. Men and women of the liberal middle classes combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification.
3. They drafted a constitution for a German nation to be headed by a monarchy subject to a parliament.
4. Wilhelm IV, King of Prussia, rejected it and joined other monarchs to oppose the elected assembly.
5. While the opposition of the aristocracy and military became stronger, the social basis of parliament eroded.
6. The issue of extending political rights to women was a controversial one within the liberal movement.
7. Women had formed their own political associations, founded newspaper and taken part in political meeting and demonstrations.
8. Monarchs were beginning to realize that the cycles of revolution and repression could be ended by granting concessions to the liberal-nationalist revolutionaries.

The Making of German and Italy

Germany – can the Army be the Architect of a National

1. After 1848, nationalism in Europe moved away from its association with democracy and revolution.
2. This can be observed in the process by which Germany and Italy came to be unified as nation-states.
3. Nationalist feelings were widespread among middle-class Germans.
4. This liberal initiative to nation-building was, however, repressed by the combined forces of the monarchy and the military, supported by the large landowners of Prussia.
5. Prussia took on the leadership of the movement.
6. Three wars overseen years-with Austria, Denmark, and France-ended in Prussian victory and completed the process of unification.
7. The nation-building process in Germany had demonstrated the dominance of Prussian state power.
8. The new state placed a strong emphasis on modernizing the currency, banking, legal and judicial systems in Germany.

Italy Unified

1. Like Germany, Italy too had a long history of political fragmentation.
2. Italians were scattered over several dynastic states as well as the multi-national Habsburg Empire.
3. Italy was divided into seven states.

4. Italian language had not acquired one common form and still had many regional and local variations.
5. Giuseppe Mazzini had sought to put together a coherent programme for a unitary Italian Republic.
6. Young Italy for the dissemination of his goals.
7. The failure of revolutionary uprising both in 1831 and 1848 meant that the mantle now fell on Sardinia-Piedmont under its ruler King Victor Emmanuel II to unify the Italian states through war.
8. Italy offered them the possibility of economic development and political dominance.
9. Italy was neither a revolutionary nor a democrat.
10. Italian population, among whom rates of illiteracy were high, remained blissfully unaware of liberal-nationalist ideology.

The strange case of Britain

1. The model of the nation or the nation-state, some scholars have argued, is Great Britain.
2. It was the result of a long-drawn-out process.
3. There was no British nation prior to the eighteenth century.
4. 'United Kingdom of Great Britain' meant, in effect, that England was able to impose its influence on Scotland.
5. The British parliament was henceforth dominated by its English members.
6. Ireland was forcibly incorporated into the United Kingdom in 1801.
7. British flag, the national anthem, the English language – were actively promoted and the older nations survived only as subordinate partners on this union.

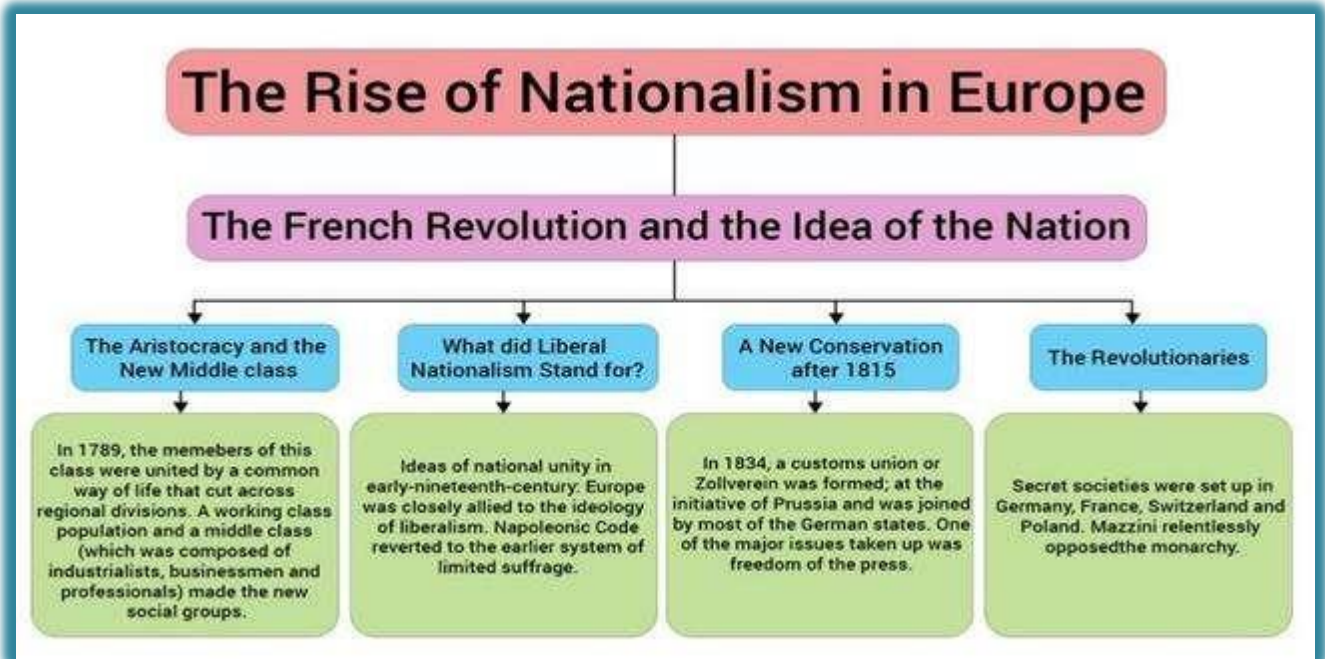
Visualising the Nation

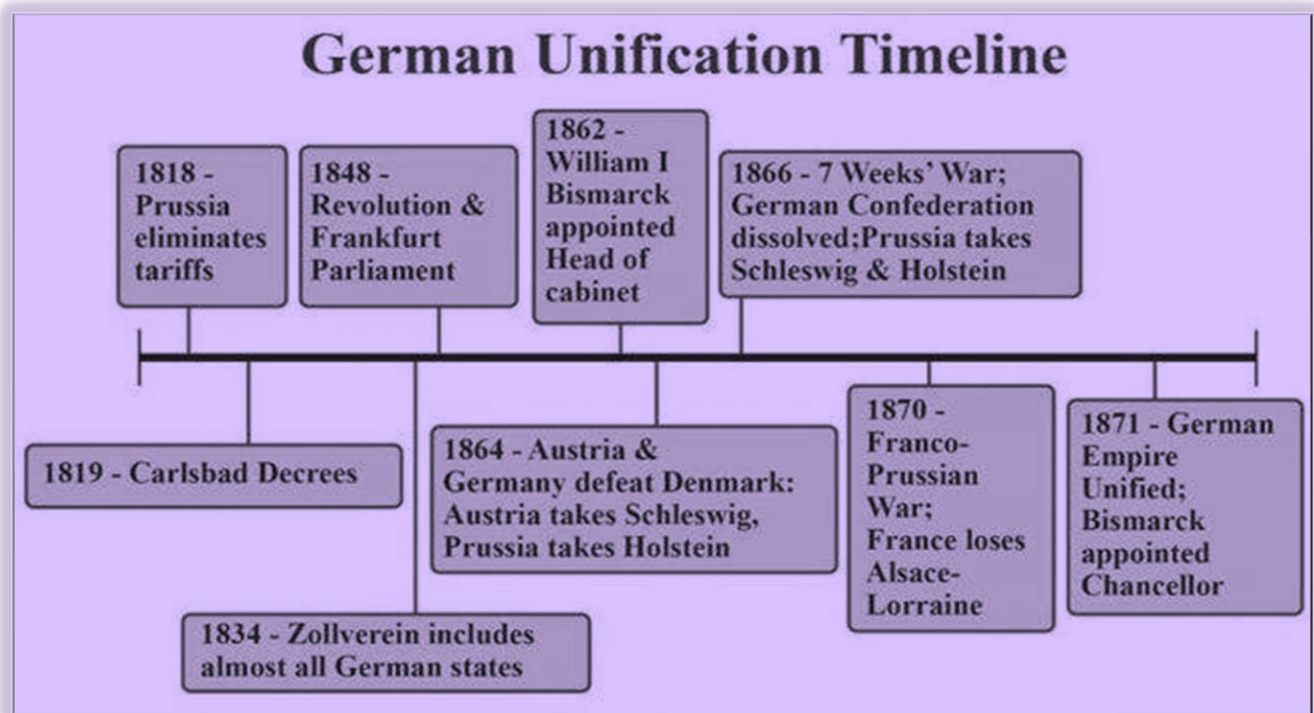
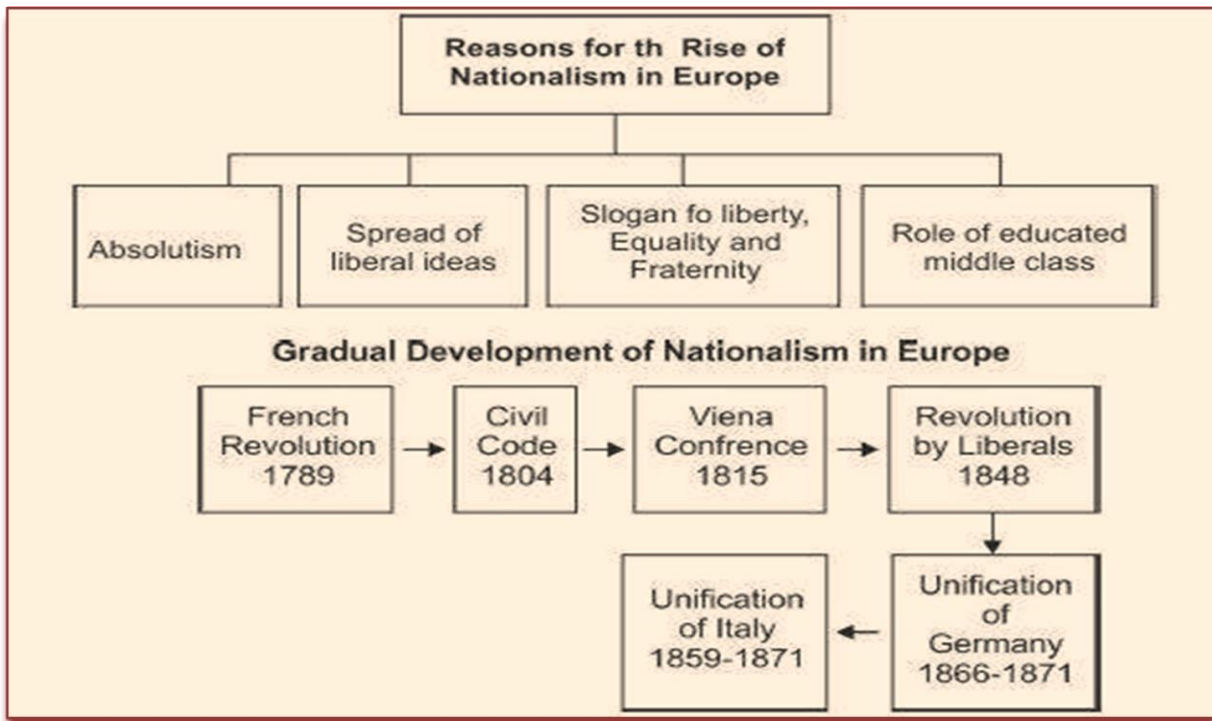
1. While it was easy enough to represent a ruler through a portrait or a statue.
2. In other words they represented a country as if it were a person.
3. Nations were then portrayed as a female figure.
4. The female figures became an allegory of the nation.
5. Christened Marianne, a popular Christian name, which underlined the idea of people's nation.

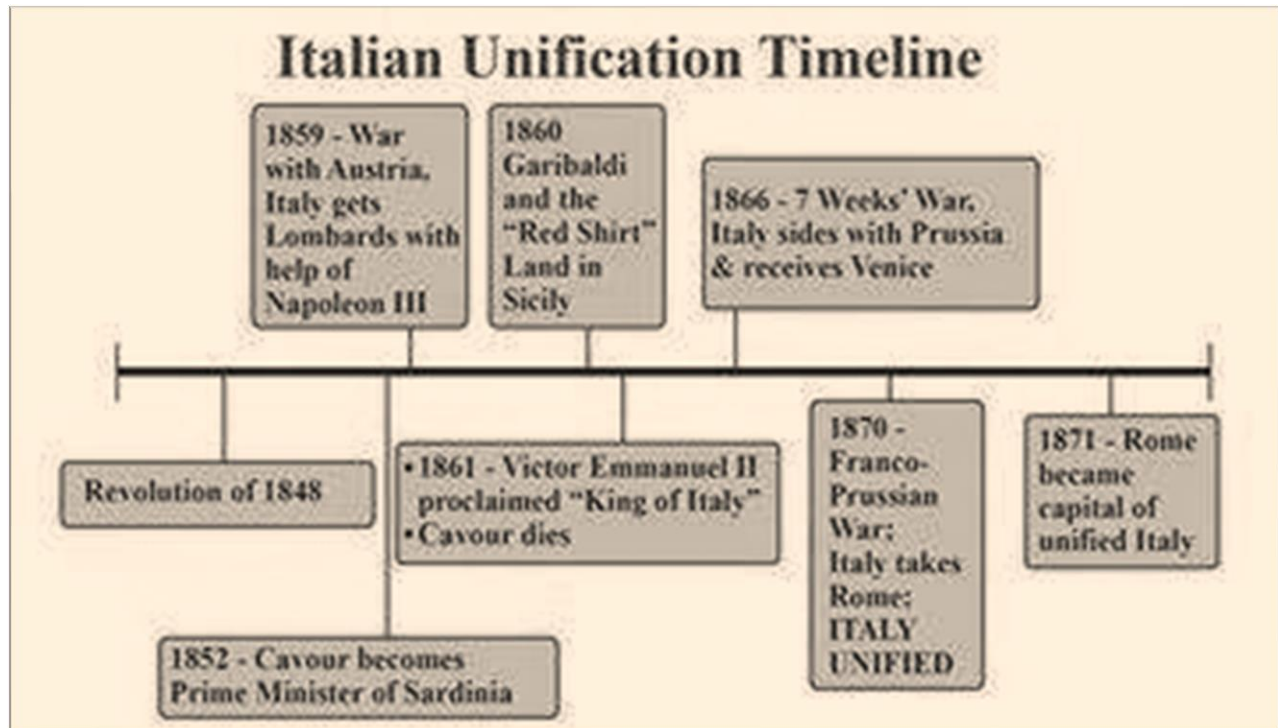
Nationalism and Imperialism

1. By the quarter of the nineteenth century nationalism no longer retained its idealistic liberal-democratic sentiment of the first half of the century, but became a narrow creed with limited ends.
2. The most serious source of nationalist's tension in Europe after 1871 was the area called the Balkans.
3. The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation.
4. One by one its European subjects nationalities broke away from its control and declared independence.
5. The Balkan area became an era of intense conflict.

6. The Balkan states were jealous of each other and each hoped to gain more territory at the expense of each other.
7. But the idea that societies should be organized into 'nation-states' came to be accepted as natural and universal.







MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Identify and mark the incorrect response. The Napoleonic Code
 - did away with all the privileges based on 'birth and established equality.
 - destroyed feudalism in France.
 - Formulated codes for the army.
 - ensured right to property for the privileged class.

- For the middle class of Europe, the most important feature of Liberalism was
 - abolition of conservatism.
 - Right to be liberal and educated.
 - Individual freedom and equality before law
 - Representative government.

- Romanticism refers to
 - cultural movement
 - religious movement
 - political movement
 - literary movement

4. In Prussia, who was referred to as 'Junkers'?

- (a) Military officials
- (b) Large landowners
- (c) Factory owners
- (d) Aristocratic nobles

5. Who among the following was proclaimed the first King of United Italy?

- (a) Nicholas II
- (b) King George II
- (c) Wilhelm IV
- (d) Victor Emmanuel II

6. A large number of people were hostile to the Napoleonic code because

- (a) it was not suitable for all.
- (b) it destroyed the special privileges of the rulers.
- (c) administrative changes did not go hand-in-hand with political freedom.
- (d) none of the above.

7. Who, among the following, hosted the Congress at Vienna in 1815.

- (a) King of the Netherlands
- (b) Giuseppe Mazzini
- (c) Duke Metternich
- (d) Otto von Bismarck

8. Who among the following formed the secret society called 'Young Italy'.

- (a) Otto von Bismarck
- (b) Giuseppe Mazzini
- (c) Metternich
- (d) Johann Gottfried Herder

9. Which one of the following types of government was functioning in France before the revolution of 1789?

- (a) Dictatorship
- (b) Military
- (c) Body of French Citizen
- (d) Monarchy

10. Who among the following was known as 'Colons'?

- (a) French citizens living in Vietnam
- (b) French citizens living in France
- (c) Educated people of Vietnam
- (d) Elites of Vietnam

11. Which one of the following statements is false regarding the Act of Union 1707?

- (a) It was an agreement between England and Scotland.

- (b) It was an agreement between England and Ireland.
- (c) It resulted in the formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain'.
- (d) It gave England control over Scotland.

12. Which one of the following states was ruled by an Italian princely house before the unification of Italy?

- (a) Kingdom of Two Sicilies
- (b) Lombardy
- (c) Venetia
- (d) Sardinia-Piedmont

13. Which one of the following statements is not true about Giuseppe Mazzini?

- (a) He wanted the united Italian Republic.
- (b) He founded an underground society called 'Young Italy'.
- (c) He wanted Italy to be a monarchy.
- (d) He was exiled for attempting a revolution in Liguria.

14. Who said, "when France sneezes the rest of Europe catches cold"?

- (a) Garibaldi
- (b) Mazzini
- (c) Metternich
- (d) Bismarck

15. Which treaty recognised Greece as an independent nation?

- (a) Treaty of Versailles
- (b) Treaty of Vienna
- (c) Treaty of Constantinople
- (d) Treaty of Lausanne

16. Who was responsible *for the Unification of Germany?

- (a) Bismarck
- (b) Cavour
- (c) Mazzini
- (d) Garibaldi

17. Elle, the measuring unit in Germany was used to measure

- (a) cloth
- (b) thread
- (c) land
- (d) height

18. Zollverein started in 1834 in Prussia refers to a

- (a) Trade Union
- (b) Customs Union

- (c) Labour Union
- (d) Farmer's Union

19. The Ottoman Empire was ruled by the emperor of

- (a) Turkey
- (b) Russia
- (c) Britain
- (d) Prussia

20. At which of the following places was the Frankfurt Assembly convened

- (a) at the church of St. Paul.
- (b) at the church of St. Peters.
- (c) at the palace of Prussia.
- (d) at the Hall of Mirrors in the Palace of Versailles.

21. What did the crown of oak leaves symbolise?

- (a) Courage
- (b) Heroism
- (c) Peace
- (d) Tolerance

22. Which of the following best explain Utopian society?

- (a) A society where everybody is equal.
- (b) A democratic society.
- (c) An idealist society that can never be achieved.
- (d) A society with a comprehensive Constitution.

23. The main function of the Prussian Zollverein was to

- (a) impose a custom duty on imported goods.
- (b) abolish the tariff barrier.
- (c) reduce custom duties.
- (d) impose new rules for trade.

24. Which of the following group of powers collectively defeated Napoleon?

- (a) England, France, Italy, Russia.
- (b) England, Austria, Spain, Russia.
- (c) Austria, Prussia, Russia, Britain.
- (d) Britain, Prussia, Russia, Italy.

25. Which of the following countries is considered as the 'cradle of civilization'?

- (a) England
- (b) France
- (c) Greece
- (d) Russia

26. The Treaty of Vienna signed in 1815

- (a) brought the conservative regimes back to power.
- (b) destroyed the conservative powers of Europe.
- (c) introduced democracy in Austria and Prussia.
- (d) set up a new Parliament in Austria.

27. Which of the following is an allegory/attribute for 'liberty'?

- (a) Crown of Oak
- (b) Red Cap
- (c) Olive Branch
- (d) Sword

28. What does a blindfolded woman carrying a pair of weighing scales symbolize?

- (a) Peace
- (b) Equality
- (c) Justice
- (d) Liberty

29 A nation-state is a state where

- (a) people of all groups enjoy equal rights.
- (b) where the nation has its own emblem and flag.
- (c) a state which has a contiguous territory.
- (d) a state where people live in a common territory, develop a sense of identity and share a common history.

30. Why did the Frankfurt Parliament fail to achieve its goal?

- (a) Women were excluded from the membership.
- (b) Did not have the support of the peasants.
- (c) Kaiser William refused to accept the crown and opposed the assembly.
- (d) None of the above

Q31. Who is represented as a post man in the given image?

- a) Giuseppe Mazzini
- b) Nepelean Bonaparte
- c) Otto Von Bismark
- d) Guiseppe Garibaldi



Q.32..Which of the following best describe his image by Julius Hubner?

- a) Defeat of Otto Von Bismark
- b) The fallen Germania
- c) Sleeping Lady
- d) None of the above



Q.33 Which of the following aspects best signifies this images?

- a) Woman's strength
- b) Woman's suffering
- c) Woman is fighting for rights
- d) Burden on women



Q.34 The painting ‘ The Dream of worldwide Democratic and Social Republic’
Was prepared by whom?

- a) Giuseppe Mazzini
- b) Frederic Sorrieu
- c) Hentry Patullo
- d) Duke Metternich



Q35. Which of the following best signifies this image?

- a) War at Zweibrucken, German
- b) People celebrating Christmaa
- c) Planting of tree of Liberty
- d) None of the above



Q 36. Which of the following event is described in the following image?

- a) Signing of Treaty of Vienna
- b) Founding of Young Europe in Berne 1833
- c) Giuseppe Mazzini Unifying Italy
- d) None of the above



SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

I. Read the source given below and answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate option:

Grimms' Fairy Tales is a familiar name in Germany. The brothers Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm were born in the German city of Hanau. While both of them studied law, they soon developed an interest in collecting old folktales. They spent six years travelling from village to village, talking to people and writing down fairy tales, which were handed down through the generations. These were popular both among children and adults.

In 1812, they published their first collection of tales. Subsequently, both the brothers became active in liberal politics, especially the movement for freedom of the press. In the meantime, they also published a 33-volume dictionary of the German language.

The Grimm brothers also saw French domination as a threat to German culture and believed that the folktales they had collected were expressions of a pure and authentic German spirit. They considered their projects of collecting folktales and developing the German language as part of the wider effort to oppose French domination and create a German national identity.

Q1.1. Why did the Grimm brothers give the tales a readable form without changing their folkloric character? Choose the correct option from the following:

- A. The collection enjoyed wide distribution in Germany.
- B. It became a model for the collecting of fantasy tales.
- C. It formed the basis for the science of the language.
- D. People easily accepted their written adventurous tales.

Q1.2. The impact of literary contributions of Grimm brothers was widespread. Identify the best suitable option depicting the same from the following:

- A. Development of cities and towns
- B. Setting up of new political parties
- C. Promotion of ethnic belonging
- D. Emergence of socialist ideology

Q1.3. Fill in the blank from the given options

The work of the Grimm Brothers influenced and inspired people to collect tales. They believed in a spirit of _____ and considered it essential for the reflection of national identity.

- A. Culturalism
- B. Conservatism
- C. Extremism
- D. Liberalism

Q1.4. Why the foreign domination was considered a threat to nation building? Select the best suitable option from the following in reference to the context.

- A. Exploitation of natural resources
- B. Erosion of native values and ethos
- C. Violence and mass killing of people
- D. Spread of new diseases in the country

2 .Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

Following the defeat of Napoleon in 1815, European governments were driven by a spirit of conservatism. Conservatives believed that established, traditional institutions of state and society – like the monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the family – should be preserved. Most conservatives, however, did not propose a return to the society of pre-revolutionary days. Rather, they realised, from the changes initiated by Napoleon, that modernisation could in fact strengthen traditional institutions like the monarchy. It could make state power more effective and stronger. A modern army, an efficient bureaucracy, a dynamic economy, the abolition of feudalism and serfdom could strengthen the autocratic monarchies of Europe. In 1815, representatives of the European powers who had collectively defeated Napoleon, met at Vienna to draw up a settlement for Europe. The Congress was hosted by the Austrian Chancellor Duke Metternich. The delegates drew up the Treaty of Vienna of 1815 with the object of undoing most of the changes that had come about in Europe during the Napoleonic wars. The Bourbon dynasty, which had been deposed during the French Revolution, was restored to power, and France lost the territories it had annexed under Napoleon. A series of states were set up on the boundaries of France to prevent French expansion in future.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option

2.1 Which of the following statements correctly describes about European conservative ideology?

- A. Preservation of beliefs introduced by Napoleon
- B. Preservation of two sects of Christianity
- C. Preservation of socialist ideology in economic sphere
- D. Preservation of traditionalist beliefs in state and society

2.2 Identify the purpose to convene the Vienna of Congress in 1815 from the following options?

- A. To declare competition of German unification
- B. To restore conservative regime in Europe
- C. To declare war against France
- D. To start the process of Italian Unification

2.3. What did conservatives focus on at the Congress of Vienna? Select the appropriate option.

- A. To re-establish peace and stability in Europe
- B. To establish socialism in Europe
- C. To introduce democracy in France
- D. To set up a new Parliament in Austria

2.4 How did the Congress of Vienna ensure peace in Europe? Select the appropriate option

- A. With the restoration of Bourbon Dynasty
- B. Austria was not given the control of Northern Italy
- C. Laying out a balance of power between all the great powers in Europe
- D. By giving power to the German confederation

3. Read the source given below and answer the questions by choosing the most suitable option:

The most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 was the area called the Balkans. The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were broadly known as the Slavs. A large part of the Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman Empire. The spread of the ideas of romantic nationalism in the Balkans together with the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire made this region very explosive. All through the nineteenth century the Ottoman Empire had sought to strengthen itself through modernisation and internal reforms but with very little success. One by one, its European subject nationalities broke away from its control and declared independence. The Balkan peoples based their claims for independence or political rights on nationality and used history to prove that they had once been independent but had subsequently been subjugated by foreign powers. Hence the rebellious nationalities in the Balkans thought of their struggles as attempts to win back their long-lost independence

3.1 Who were the Slavs?

- A. Inhabitants of Balkans
- B. Inhabitants of Bulgaria, Albania and Macedonia
- C. Inhabitants of Slovenia
- D. None of the Above

3.2 What made the region of the Balkans to be described as explosive?

- A. Disintegration of the Ottoman Empire
- B. Spread of the ideas of romantic nationalism
- C. The diversification of identities
- D. Both A and B

3.3 What were the reasons for the Balkans' rebellious nature?

- A. Their struggle for freedom from foreign power
- B. Their notions on once being independent in the past
- C. Big power rivalry amongst themselves
- D. Both A and B

3.4 How had the Ottoman Empire sought to strengthen its power?

- A. Through internal reforms
- B. Through modernization and internal reforms
- C. Through addressing conflicted issues
- D. All of the above

4. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows

Ideas of national unity in early-nineteenth-century Europe were closely allied to the ideology of liberalism. The term liberalism' derives from the Latin root liber, meaning free. For the new middle classes liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. Politically, it emphasised the concept of government by consent. Since the French Revolution, liberalism had stood for the end of autocracy and clerical privileges, a constitution and representative government through parliament. Nineteenth-century liberals also stressed the inviolability of private property

Yet, equality before the law did not necessarily stand for universal suffrage. You will recall that in revolutionary France, which marked the first political experiment in liberal democracy, the right to vote and to get elected was granted exclusively to property-owning men

4.1. Which of the following is not true with respect to 19th century spirit of nationalism in Europe?

- (a) Universal suffrage
 - (b) End of autocracy
 - a) Only (a)
 - b) Only (b)
 - c) Both (a) and (b)
 - d) None of these
- 4.2. Which of the following did not stand for liberalism?

- a) Equality before the law
- b) Government by consent
- c) Freedom for the individual
- d) The citizen should not have right to private property.

4.3. Which of the following feature of liberalism is not true for the French Revolution?

- a) End of autocracy
- b) Representative government
- c) Unified economy
- d) End of Clergy privileges

4.4. Which country is considered as pioneer of liberal democracy?

- a) Italy
- b) France
- c) Germany
- d) England

ASSERTION AND REASON BASES QUESTIONS

DIRECTION: Mark the option which is most suitable:

- (a) If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.**
- (b) If both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.**
- (c) If assertion is true but reason is false.**
- (d) If both assertion and reason are false.**

1: Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Assertion (A): The development of nationalism did not come about only through wars and territorial expansion.

Reason(R): Culture played an important role in creating the idea of nation: art and poetry, stories and music helped to express and shape nationalism.

- a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct Explanation of A.
- b) Both A and R are true and R is not the correct Explanation of A.
- c) A is True but R is False
- d) A is False but R is True

2. Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Assertion (A): The 1830's were the years of great economic hardship in Europe give reason.

Reason(R): National assembly of 1848 proclaimed France as a republic

- a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct Explanation of A
- b) Both A and R are true and R is not the correct Explanation of A.
- c) A is True but R is False.
- d) A is False but R is True.

3. Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Assertion (A): The French revolution was an influential event that marked the age of revolutions in Europe.

Reason (R): The French revolution transferred the sovereignty from the people to the monarch

- a) Both A and R are true, but R is the correct explanation of A
- b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c) A is true but R is false
- d) A is false but R is true

4. Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Assertion. Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, duchies and cantons whose rulers had their autonomous territories.

Reason. They were closely bound to each other in spite of their autonomous rule

- a) Both A and R are true, but R is the correct explanation of A
- b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c) A is true but R is false
- d) A is false but R is true

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

Question 1.

Name the Treaty of 1832 that recognized Greece as an independent nation.

Answer:

Treaty of 1832: Constantinople

Question 2.

Who was proclaimed the King of United Italy in 1861?

Answer:

Victor Emmanuel-II

Question 3

What was the main aim of revolutionaries of Europe during the years following 1815?

Answer:

The main aim of revolutionaries of Europe was to oppose monarchial forms of government.

Question 4.

Name the event that mobilized nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe in 1830-1848?

Answer:

The Greek War of Independence in 1821.

Question5.

What was the major change that occurred in the political and constitutional scenario due to the French Revolution in Europe?

Answer:

It led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens. The revolution proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.

Question 6

What was the main aim of the French revolutionaries?

Answer:

The main aim of the French revolutionaries was to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. They proclaimed that it was the people who would constitute the nation and shape its decisions.

Question 7

What is the meaning of concentration camps?

Answer:

Concentration camps are prisons where people are detained and tortured without due process of law.

Question 8.

Who remarked “when France sneezes the rest of Europe catches cold”.

Answer:

Duke Metternich

Question 9.

Who was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871?

Answer:

Kaiser William I of Prussia was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS [SA – 3 MARKS]

Question 1. Explain any three beliefs of the conservatism that emerged after 1815.

Answer:

Three beliefs of conservatism that emerged after 1815 were:

Established and traditional institutions of state and society like monarchy, the Church, property and family should be preserved.

They believed in the modernization of the traditional institution to strengthen them, rather than returning to the society of pre-revolutionary days.

Also they believed that abolition of feudalism and serfdom and replacing it with a modern army, an efficient bureaucracy and a dynamic economy could strengthen autocratic monarchies of Europe.

Question 2. Explain the contribution of Giuseppe Mazzini in spreading revolutionary ideas in Europe.

Answer:

The year following 1815, was the period of revolutionaries. Most of the revolutionaries were committed to oppose monarchical forms and to fight for liberty and freedom

One such prominent revolutionary was “Giuseppe Mazzini”, an Italian revolutionary. Mazzini also saw the creation of nation-states as a necessary part in the struggle for freedom. He strongly believed in the unification of Italy as a single unified republic which could be the basis of Italian liberty.

Mazzini’s relentless opposition to monarchy and his vision of a democratic republic frightened the Conservatives. His ideas also influenced the revolutionaries of Germany, France, Switzerland and Poland.

Question 3.How did nationalism develop through culture in Europe? Explain.

OR

Describe the role of culture in shaping the feelings of nationalism in Europe from 1830 to the end of 19th century.

Answer:

Culture, music, dance and religion played an important role in the growth of nationalism.

(i) Culture. Role of culture was important in creating the idea of the nation. Art, poetry, music etc. helped in developing and expressing nationalist feelings. Romanticism was a cultural movement that led to the development of nationalist sentiment. Romantic artists and poets criticized the glorification of reason and science and instead focused on emotions and intuition.

(ii) Language. Language too played an important role in developing nationalist sentiments. After Russian occupation, the Polish language was forced out of schools and Russian language was imposed everywhere. In 1831, an armed rebellion against Russian rule took place which was ultimately crushed. Following this, many members of the clergy in Poland began to use language as a weapon of national resistance.

(iii) Music and Dance. Romantics such as the German philosopher Herder claimed that true German culture was to be discovered among the common people —das volk. It was through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances that the true spirit of the nation was popularized.

Question 4.How had the female figures become an allegory of the nation during nineteenth century in Europe? Analyse.

Answer:

Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries portrayed nations as female figures. The female form, that was chosen to personify the nation, did not stand for any particular woman in real life. Rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation in concrete form. That is, the female figure became the allegory of the nation.

In France, she was named Marianne —a popular Christian name and in Germany, Germania. Germania wears a crown of oak leaves as the German oak stands for heroism. The characteristics of Marianne were drawn from those of Liberty and Republic —the red cap, the tricolour and cockade.

Question 5.Describe any three steps taken by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people.

Answer:

The first clear-cut expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789. In 1789, France was under the rule of an absolute monarch.

When the revolutionaries came to power in France, they were determined to create a new sense of unity and nationhood for this, they emphasized the concept of France being the father land (La Patrie) for all French people, who were from now on addressed as citizens (citoyen). They were given the tri-colour flag, the three colours representing liberty, equality and fraternity.

French revolutionaries introduced various other measures such as:

The Estate General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly.

New hymns were composed, oaths taken and martyrs commemorated all in the name of the nation.

A centralized administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizens within its territory.

Question 6 :How had the female figures become an allegory of the nation during nineteenth century in Europe? Analyse.

Answer:

Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries portrayed nations as female figures. The female form, that was chosen to personify the nation, did not stand for any particular woman in real life. Rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation in concrete form. That is, the female figure became the allegory of the nation.

In France, she was named Marianne —a popular Christian name and in Germany, Germania. Germania wears a crown of oak leaves as the German oak stands for heroism. The characteristics of Marianne were drawn from those of Liberty and Republic —the red cap, the tricolour and cockade.

Question 7 :.Describe any three steps taken by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people.

Answer:

- The first clear-cut expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789. In 1789, France was under the rule of an absolute monarch.
- When the revolutionaries came to power in France, they were determined to create a new sense of unity and nationhood For this, they emphasized the concept of France being the father land (La Patrie) for all French people, who were from now on addressed as citizens (citoyen). They were given the tri-colour flag, the three colours representing liberty, equality and fraternity.

French revolutionaries introduced various other measures such as:

1. The Estate General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly.
2. New hymns were composed, oaths taken and martyrs commemorated all in the name of the nation.
3. A centralized administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizens within its territory.
4. Internal customs, duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted.
5. Regional dialects were discouraged and French, as it was spoken and written in Paris, became the common language of the nation.

6. They further declared that it was the mission and the destiny of the French nation to liberate the people of Europe from despotism and help them to become nations.

Question 8 :Describe any three economic hardships faced by Europe in the 1830s.

Answer:

Following are the causes of economic hardships in Europe during 1830s:

1. Europe had come under the grip of large scale unemployment. In most of the countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment. Cities had become overcrowded and slums had emerged as population from the rural areas migrated to the cities.
2. Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine- made goods from England where industrialization was more advanced specially in the field of textile production.
3. In those regions of Europe, where aristocracy still enjoyed power, peasants struggled under the burden of feudal dues and obligations. The rise of food prices and bad harvests added to the hardships of the peasants.

Question 9.Write a note on:

- (a) Guiseppe Mazzini
- (b) Count Camillo de Cavour
- (c) The Greek war of independence
- (d) Frankfurt Parliament

Answer:

(a) Guiseppe Mazzini

Giuseppe Mazzini was an Italian. He was born in Genoa in 1807. He became a member of the secret society of the Carbonari.

As a young man of 24, he was sent into exile in 1831 for attempting a revolution in Liguria. He subsequently founded two more underground societies - Young Italy in Marseilles and Young Europe in Berne.

Mazzini believed that God had intended nations to be the natural units of mankind.

(b) Count Camillo de Cavour

He was the chief minister of Sardinia-Piedmont state. He led the movement to unify the regions of Italy. He was neither a revolutionary nor a democrat.

Like many other wealthy and educated members of the Italian elite, he spoke French much better than he did Italian.

He engineered a careful diplomatic alliance with France with the help of which Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859. This, consequently helped to free the northern part of Italy from the Austrian Habsburgs.

(c) The Greek war of independence

It was an event that mobilised nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe. Greece had been a part of the Ottoman Empire since the 15th century.

The growth of revolutionary nationalism in Europe sparked off a struggle for independence amongst the Greeks which began in 1821.

Nationalists in Greece got support from other Greeks living in exile and also from many Western Europeans who had sympathies for the ancient Greek culture

(d) Frankfurt parliament

All those political associations existing in the German region whose members were middle-class professionals, businessmen and prosperous artisans, formed an all-German National Assembly.

On Its first meeting was held on 18 May 1848 in the Church of St. Paul at Frankfurt where 831 elected representatives marched in a festive procession to take their places. They drafted a constitution for a German nation to be headed by a monarchy subject to a parliament.

When the deputies offered the crown on these terms to Friedrich Wilhelm IV, King of Prussia, he rejected it and joined other monarchs to oppose the elected assembly

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

Question 1. Write a note on Giuseppe Mazzini.

Answers

Giuseppe Mazzini (1807-1872) was an Italian politician, journalist and activist for the unification of Italy and spearheaded the Italian revolutionary movement. His efforts helped bring about the independent and unified Italy in place of several separate states, many dominated by foreign powers.

1. He also helped define the modern European movement for popular democracy in a republican state.
2. Mazzini was a fervent advocate of republicanism and envisioned a united, free and independent Italy.
3. Unlike his contemporary Garibaldi, who was also a republican, Mazzini never compromised his republican ideas and refused to swear an oath of allegiance to the House of Savoy.
4. Mazzini was the spiritual force of the Italian resurrection. He joined the Carbonating, a revolutionary organization and was arrested in 1830. He was sent into exile in 1831 for attempting a revolution in Liguria. He subsequently founded two more underground societies, first – Young Italy in Marseilles and then Young Europe in Berne, whose members were like-minded young men from Poland, France, Italy and the German states.

6. Mazzini believed that God had intended nations to be the natural units of mankind. So Italy could not continue to be a patchwork of small states and kingdoms. It had to be forged into a single unified republic within a wider alliance of nations. This unification alone could be the basis of Italian liberty.

7. Mazzini was in favour of a republic because he thought sovereignty resides essentially in the people and can only completely express itself in that form. Mazzini's relentless opposition to monarchy and his vision of democratic republics frightened the conservatives. Metternich described him as 'the most dangerous enemy of our social order'.

8. 'Young Italy' attempted many insurrections but were unsuccessful. Mazzini failed in his objects because he himself lacked some of the qualities of practical leadership. He underestimated the strength of the opposition. But in spite of these drawbacks he is one of the chief makers of Italy. He was responsible for the growth of patriotism for a country that existed as yet only in the imagination.

Question.2. What did Liberal Nationalism stand for? Explain any four ideas of Liberal Nationalists in the economic sphere.

Answer:

Liberalism or Liberal Nationalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. Four ideas of Liberal Nationalists in the economic sphere are:

1. Liberalism stood for freedom of markets and abolition of state imposed restriction. For example, Napoleon's administration was a confederation of 29 states, each of these possessed its own currencies, weight and measures. Such conditions were viewed as obstacles to economic exchange.
2. Liberal Nationalists argued for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing the unhindered movement of goods, people and capital.
3. In 1834, a customs union or "zollverein" was formed. The union abolished tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from 30 to 2.
4. The creation of a network of railways further stimulated mobility, harnessing economic interest to national unification.

Question 3 "Napoleon had, no doubt, destroyed democracy in France, but in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient." Support the statement.

OR

Explain any five social and administrative reforms introduced by Napoleon in regions under his control.

Answer:

Napoleon had brought revolutionary changes in the administrative field in order to make the whole system rational and efficient. The Civil Code of 1804 is usually known as the Napoleonic Code.

1. The first major change was doing away with all privileges based on birth, establishing equality before law and securing the right to property.
2. Administrative divisions were simplified.
3. Feudal system was abolished and peasants were freed from serfdom and manorial dues (abuse of manorial lords).
4. In towns, guild restrictions were removed.
5. Transport and communication systems were improved.
6. Peasants, artisans, workers and new businessmen enjoyed a new found freedom.
7. Businessmen and small-scale producers of goods in particular began to realize that uniform laws, standardised weights and measures and a common national currency would facilitate the movement and exchange of goods and capital from one region to another.

Question 4. How did culture play an important role in creating the idea of the ‘nation’ in Europe? Explain with examples.

Answer:

Culture, music, dance and religion played an important role in the growth of nationalism.

(1) Role of culture was important in creating the idea of the nation. Art, poetry, music etc. helped in developing and expressing nationalist feelings. Romanticism was a cultural movement that led to the development of nationalist sentiment. Romantic artists and poets criticized the glorification of reason and science and instead focussed on emotions and intuition.

(2) Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries portrayed nations as female figures. The female form, that was chosen to personify the nation, did not stand for any particular woman in real life. Rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation in concrete form. That is, the female figure became the allegory of the nation.

In France, she was named Marianne—a popular Christian name and in Germany, Germania.

(3) Language too played an important role in developing nationalist sentiments. After Russian occupation, the Polish language was forced out of schools and Russian language was imposed everywhere. In 1831, an armed rebellion against Russian rule took place which was ultimately crushed. Following this, many members of the clergy in Poland began to use language as a weapon of national resistance.

(4) Romantics such as the German philosopher Herder claimed that true German culture was to be discovered among the common people – das volk. It was through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances that the true spirit of the nation was popularized.

Question 5 Explain any five economic hardships that Europe faced in the 1830s.

Or

“The decade of 1830 has brought great economic hardship in Europe”. Support the statement with arguments.

Following are the causes of economic hardships in Europe during 1830s:

1. Europe had come under the grip of large scale unemployment. In most of the countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment.
2. Cities had become overcrowded and slums had emerged as population from the rural areas migrated to the cities.
3. Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England where industrialization was more advanced specially in the field of textile production.
4. In those regions of Europe, where aristocracy still enjoyed power, peasants struggled under the burden of feudal dues and obligations.
5. The rise of food prices and bad harvests added to the hardships of the peasants.

Question 6. Describe any five measures which were introduced by the French Revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. (2016 D, 2015 OD, 2012 OD)

Answer:

- The first clear-cut expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789. In 1789, France was under the rule of an absolute monarch.
- When the revolutionaries came to power in France, they were determined to create a new sense of unity and nationhood. For this, they emphasized the concept of France being the father land (La Patrie) for all French people, who were from now on addressed as citizens (citoyen). They were given the tri-colour flag, the three colours representing liberty, equality and fraternity.

French revolutionaries introduced various other measures such as:

1. The Estate General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly.
2. New hymns were composed, oaths taken and martyrs commemorated all in the name of the nation.
3. A centralized administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizens within its territory.
4. Internal customs, duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted.
5. Regional dialects were discouraged and French, as it was spoken and written in Paris, became the common language of the nation.
6. They further declared that it was the mission and the destiny of the French nation to liberate the people of Europe from despotism and help them to become nations.

Question 7. How had revolutionaries spread their ideas in many European States after 1815? Explain with examples.

Answer:

During the years following 1815, the fear of repression drove many liberal nationalists underground.

1. Secret societies sprang up in many European states to train revolutionaries and spread their ideas. Revolutionary ideas were spread by opposing monarchical forms and to fight for liberty and freedom.
2. Most of the revolutionaries also saw the creation of nation-states as a necessary part of this struggle for freedom.
3. Giuseppe Mazzini was an Italian revolutionary born in Geneva in 1807. He was a member of the Secret Society of the Carbonari. He attempted a revolution in 1831 and was sent into exile.
4. He had set up two more underground societies, namely, Young Italy (1832) in Marseilles and then Young Europe in Berne. The members were like-minded young men from Poland, France, Italy and Germany.
5. He opposed monarchy and small states and kingdoms and dreamt of a Democratic Republic. He believed the unification of Italy alone could be the basis of Italian liberty.

Question 8 Describe the process of unification of Germany.

Answer:

Unification of Germany:

In the 18th century, Germany was divided into a number of states. Some of these states ceased to exist during the Napoleonic wars. At the end of the war, there were still 39 independent states in Germany. Prussia was most powerful, dominated by big landlords known as Junkers.

(1) Nationalist feelings were widespread among middle class Germans who had tried to unite the different regions of the German federation into a nation-state governed by an elected Parliament.

(2) In May 1848, a large number of political associations came together to vote for an All German National Assembly. Their representatives met at Frankfurt and the Frankfurt Assembly proposed the unification of Germany as a constitutional monarchy under the King of Prussia as emperor.

(3) The King of Prussia rejected the offer and the liberal initiative of nation building was repressed by combined forces of the monarchy, the military and the 'Junkers'.

(4) Then on, Prussia under its Chief Minister Otto von Bismarck led the movement for unification of Germany. Bismarck carried out this process with the help of the Prussian army and the bureaucracy. He fought three wars over seven years with Denmark, Austria and France. Prussia was victorious in all these wars and the process of unification was completed as a result of Prussia's victory over France.

(5) Consequently, on 18th January 1871, an assembly comprising of princes of German states, representatives of the army, important Prussian ministers and Bismarck gathered in the Palace of Versailles and proclaimed the Prussian King, Kaiser William, the new German Emperor.

Question 9 Explain the process of unification of Italy.

Answer:

(1) Italy too had a long history of political fragmentation. Italians were scattered over dynastic states and the multinationals Hapsburg Empire.

(2) Italy was divided into seven states. Italian language did not have one common form. Giuseppe Mazzini had played an important role in the unification of Italy.

(3) He formed a secret society called 'Young Italy' in Marseilles, to spread his goals.

(4) He believed Italy could not continue to be a patchwork of small states and had to be forged into a single unified republic.

During 1830s, Mazzini sought to put together a coherent programme for a unitary Italian Republic.

As uprisings in 1831 and 1848 had failed, the mantle now fell on Sardinia-Piedmont under its ruler Emmanuel II to unify Italy.

(5) Under Chief Minister Cavour, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859. He was the chief minister, who led the movement to unify Italy.

He formed a tactful diplomatic alliance with France and defeated the Austrian forces. Even Giuseppe Garibaldi

Question-10 Why did nationalist tensions emerge in the Balkans?

Answer:

(1) The most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 was the area called the Balkans.

The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were broadly known as the Slavs.

(2) A large part of the Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman Empire.

(3) The spread of the ideas of romantic nationalism in the Balkans together with the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire made this region very explosive.

(4) All through the nineteenth century the Ottoman Empire had sought to strengthen itself through modernisation and internal reforms but with very little success.

One by one, its European subject nationalities broke away from its control and declared independence.

(5) The Balkan peoples based their claims for independence or political rights on nationality and used history to prove that they had once been independent but had subsequently been subjugated by foreign powers.

Hence the rebellious nationalities in the Balkans thought of their struggles as attempts to win back their long-lost independence.

Question 11. Through a focus on any two countries, explain how nations developed over the nineteenth century.

Answer:

The development of the German and Italian nation-states in the nineteenth century.

- Unification of Germany with the help of Army:
- In 1848, an attempt was made to unite different regions of the German Confederation into a nation-state governed by an elected parliament. However, this liberal initiative was repressed by the combined forces of the monarchy and the military, who were supported by the large landowners of Prussia.
- Thereafter, Prussia took on the leadership of the movement for national unification.
- Three wars over seven years with Austria, Denmark and France ended in Prussian victory and completed the process of unification.
- In January 1871, the Prussian king, William I, was proclaimed as the German emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles.
- Unification of Italy by a princely house:
- In the middle of the 19th century, Italy was divided into seven states. Of these, only Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by an Italian princely house.
- The north was under the Austrian-Habsburg Empire, the centre was ruled by the Pope while the southern regions were dominated by the Bourbon kings of France..
- In the 1830s, Giuseppe Mazzini sought to formulate a coherent programme for a unitary Italian republic and also had established a secret society called Young Italy for the fulfillment of his goals.
- The revolutionary uprisings in 1831 and 1848 largely failed. Thus, the responsibility of uniting Italian states was now on King Victor Emmanuel II of Sardinia-Piedmont.
- The Chief Minister of Italy, Cavour led the movement to unify the regions of Italy. He was able to conclude a diplomatic alliance with France. Also, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859.
- Apart from regular troops, a large number of armed volunteers, under the leadership of Giuseppe Garibaldi, also joined the movement. In 1860, these troops marched into south Italy and the kingdom of Two Sicilies.
- These areas were liberated and later joined with Sardinia. In 1870, Rome was vacated by France and it became a part of Sardinia. Finally, Italy was unified in 1871.

MAP





ANSWERS

MCQ-ANSWERS

Q1	c) Formulated codes for the army	Q19	(a) Turkey
Q2	. (c) Individual freedom and equality before law	Q20.	(d) at the Hall of Mirrors in the Palace of Versailles.
Q3.	(a) cultural movement	Q21.	(b) Heroism
Q4.	(b) Large landowners	Q22.	(c) An idealist society that can never be achieved.
Q5.	(d) Victor Emmanuel II	Q23.	(b) abolish the tariff barrier.
Q6.	(c) administrative changes did not go hand-in-hand with political freedom	Q24.	(c) Austria, Prussia, Russia, Britain.
Q7.	(c) Duke Metternich	Q25.	(c) Greece
Q8.	(b) Giuseppe Mazzini	Q26.	(a) brought the conservative regimes back to power.
Q9.	(d) Monarchy	Q27.	(b) Red Cap
Q10.	(a) French citizens living in Vietnam	28.(c)	(c) Justice
Q11.	(b) It was an agreement between England and Ireland.	Q29.	(d) a state where people live in a common territory, develop a sense of identity and share a common history.
Q12.	(d) Sardinia-Piedmont	Q30.	(c) Kaiser William refused to accept the crown and opposed the assembly.
Q13.	(c) He wanted Italy to be a monarchy	Q31.	(b). Napoleon Bonaparte
Q14.	(c) Metternich	Q32.	(b)The fallen Germania

Q15.	(c) Treaty of Constantinople	Q33.	(b) Woman's suffering
Q16.	(a) Bismarck	Q34	.(b)Frederic Sorrieu
Q17.	(a) cloth	Q35.	(c)Planting of tree of Liberty
Q 18	(b) Customs Union	Q36.	(b)Founding of Young Europe in Berne 1833

SOURCE BASED QUESTION--(ANSWERS)	
I	
1.1	A).The collection enjoyed wide distribution in Germany
1.2	C). Promotion of ethnic belonging
1.3	A). Culturalism
1.4	B). Erosion of native values and ethos
II	
2.1	D.) Preservation of traditionalist beliefs in state and society
2.2	B). To restore conservative regime in Europe.
2.3	A). To re-establish peace and stability in Europe
2.4	C). Laying out a balance of power between all the great powers in Europe
III	
3.1	A) Inhabitants of Balkans
3.2	D) Both A & B
3.3	D) Both A & B
3.4	B) Through modernisation and internal reforms
IV	
4.1	. A) Only (a)
4.2	D) The citizen should not have right to private property

4.3	C) Unified economy
4.4	. B) France
	ASSERTION REASON QUESTIONS – (ANSWERS)
1	a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct Explanation of A.
2	. b) Both A and R are true and R is not the correct Explanation of A.
3	c) A is true but R is false
4	. c) A is true but R is false

CHAPTER 2

NATIONALISM IN INDIA

Important dates related to the lesson Nationalism in India

1885: The first meeting of the Indian National Congress in Bombay.

Party by Motilal Nehru and C. R. Das.

Ø 1905: The Partition of Bengal officially came into existence.

Ø 1906: Formation of the Muslim League.

Ø 1913 - 1918: The war years-prices increased in double.

Ø 1914 - 1918: The First World War.

Ø 1917: Mahatma Gandhi organised Satyagraha Movement in Kheda District (Gujarat).

Ø 1918: Mahatma Gandhi organised Satyagraha Movement in Ahmedabad.

Ø 1919: Rowlatt Act was passed.

Ø 10th April, 1919: The Police in Amritsar fired upon a peaceful procession. Martial Law was imposed

Ø March, 1919: Khilafat Committee founded in Bombay.

Ø 13th April, 1919: Jallianwala Bagh Massacre took place.

Ø September, 1920: Congress Session in Calcutta decided to start a Non-Cooperation Movement - Khilafat as well as for Swaraj.

Ø 1920: Mahatma Gandhi leads the Congress; Non-Cooperation Movement launched.

Ø October 1920: Setup of Oudh Kisan Sabha headed by Pandit. Nehru.

Ø December, 1920: Congress Session at Nagpur—a compromise was worked out and the Non movement was adopted.

Ø 1920: The Peasant Movement in Awadh spread, but the Congress leaders were not happy with them

Ø 1921: Famines and the epidemic.

Ø 1921: A Militant Guerrilla Movement spread in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh. Movement started by Alluri Sitarama Raju.

Ø 1921-1922: The Import of foreign cloth halved. In 1920, Jawaharlal Nehru went around the village in Awadh.

Ø 1922: Chauri Chaura at Gorakhpur

Ø February, 1922: Mahatma Gandhi decided to withdraw Non-Cooperation Movement. Establishment of Swaraj party by Moilal Nehru and C R Das

Ø 1924: Alluri Sitarama Raju was captured and executed.

Ø 1927: The Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) was formed to organise business interest.

Ø 1928: Simon Commission arrived in India.

Ø 1928: Foundation of the Hindustan Socialist Republican Army (HSRA).

Ø October, 1929: A vague offer of 'Dominion Status ' for India offered by Lord Irwin.

Ø December, 1929: Lahore Session of the Congress- Demand for Purna Swaraj.

Ø January 26, 1930: Celebrated as the Independence Day.

Ø January 31, 1930: Gandhiji sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating 11 demands.

Ø April, 1930: Abdul Ghaffar Khan was arrested.

Ø April 6, 1930: The Salt March reached Dandi, Gandhiji violated the Salt Law.

Ø 1930: Civil Disobedience Movement continues, Salt Satyagraha, Gandhi's Dandi March, First Round Table Conference.

Ø 1930: Dr. B.R. Ambedkar established Depressed Classes Association.

Ø March 5, 1931: Gandhi-Irwin Pact was signed.

Ø December, 1931: Gandhiji went for Second Round Table Conference.

Ø 1931: Second Round Table Conference; Gandhi-Irwin Pact; Census of India.

Ø 1932: Suppression of the Congress movement; Third Round Table Conference.

Ø September, 1932: Poona Pact between Gandhiji and Dr. B. R. Ambedkar.

Ø 1934: Civil Disobedience Movement lost its momentum.

Ø 1934: Civil Disobedience Movement came to a stop.

Ø 1935: The Government of India Act received Royal Assent.

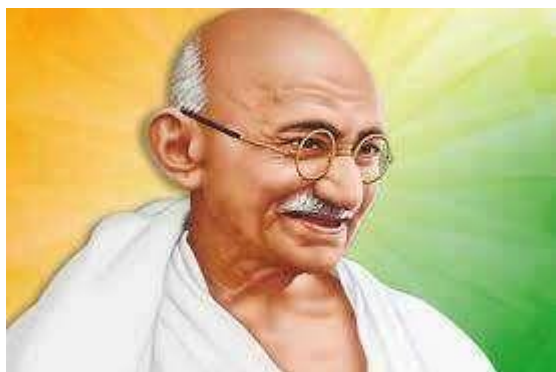
Ø 1937: Election held for Provincial Assemblies

Ø 8th August 1942 –Quit India Movement

THE FIRST WORLD WAR AND ITS IMPACT ON INDIA

- a. Huge increase in defence expenditure, which was financed by war loans and increasing taxes.
- b. Customs duties were raised and income tax was introduced.
- c. Prices increased which lead to extreme hardship for the common people.
- d. Villages were called upon to supply soldiers and the forced recruitment in rural areas caused widespread anger.
- e. In 1918-19 and 1920-21 crops failed in many parts of India resulting in acute shortages of food. This was accompanied by an influenza epidemic.

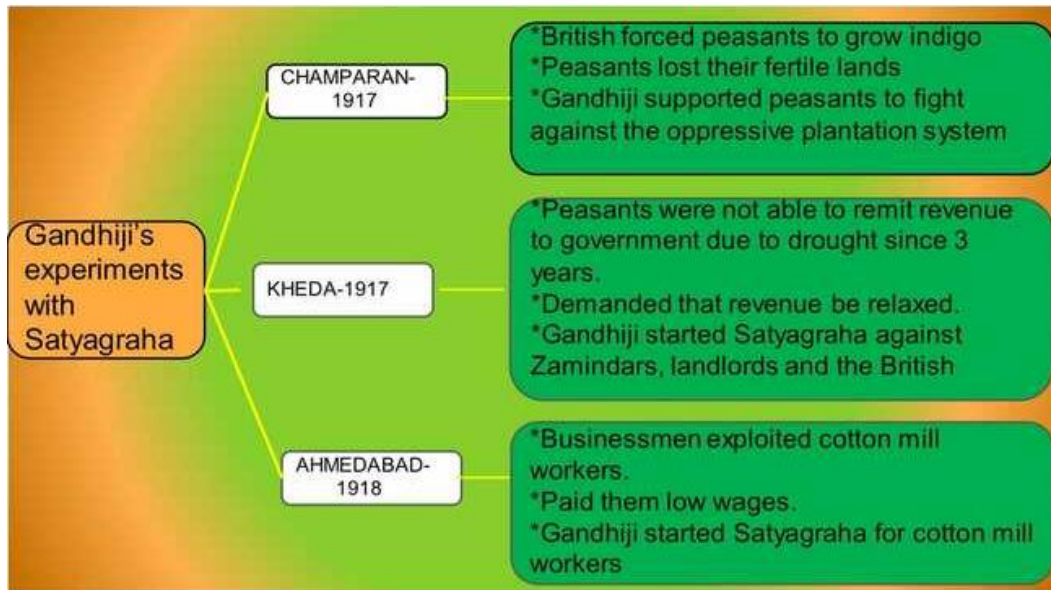
ADVENT OF MAHATMA GANDHI AND HIS IDEA OF SATHYAGRAHA



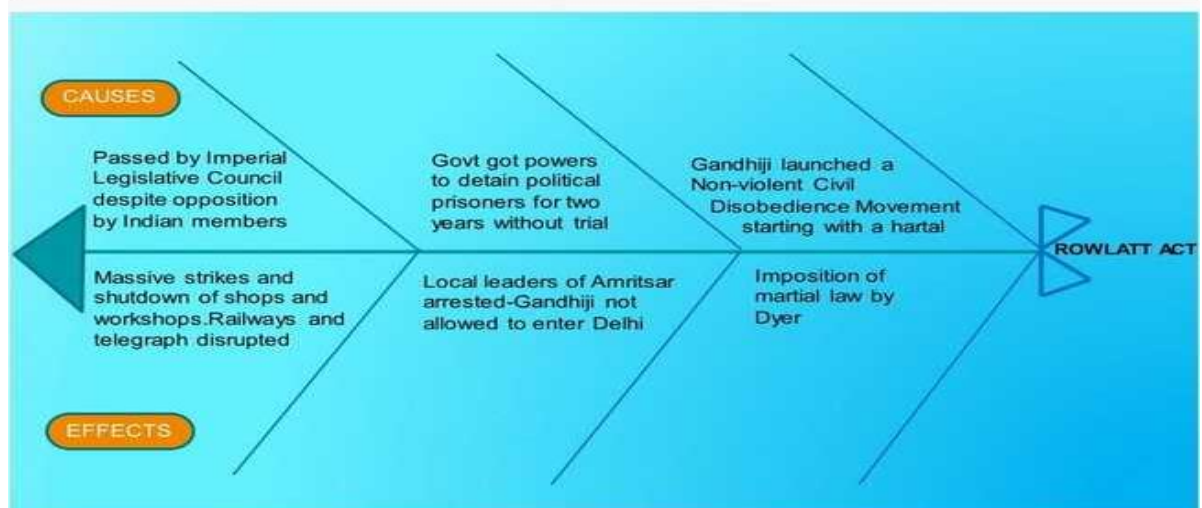
- a. The racist regime was fought with a method of mass agitation called satyagraha.
- b. It emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth.
- c. If the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor.
- d. Without being aggressive, a satyagrahi could win the battle through nonviolence. This could be done by appealing to the conscience of the oppressor.
- e. People had to be persuaded to see the truth, instead of being forced to accept truth through the use of violence. By this struggle, truth was bound to ultimately win. Mahatma Gandhi believed that this dharma of non-violence could unite all Indians.

Initial movements launched by Mahatma Gandhi

- a. In **1916**, Gandhiji travelled to **Champan in Bihar** to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system.
- b. In **1917**, Mahatma Gandhi organised a satyagraha to support the peasants of the **Kheda** district of Gujarat. Affected by crop failure and a plague epidemic, the peasants of Kheda could not pay the revenue, and demanded that revenue collection should be relaxed.
- c. In **1918**, Mahatma Gandhi went to **Ahmedabad** to organise a satyagraha movement amongst cotton mill workers.



THE ROWLATT ACT



ROWLATT ACT (1919)

- a. This Act was passed through the Imperial Legislative Council despite the united opposition of the Indian members.
- b. It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

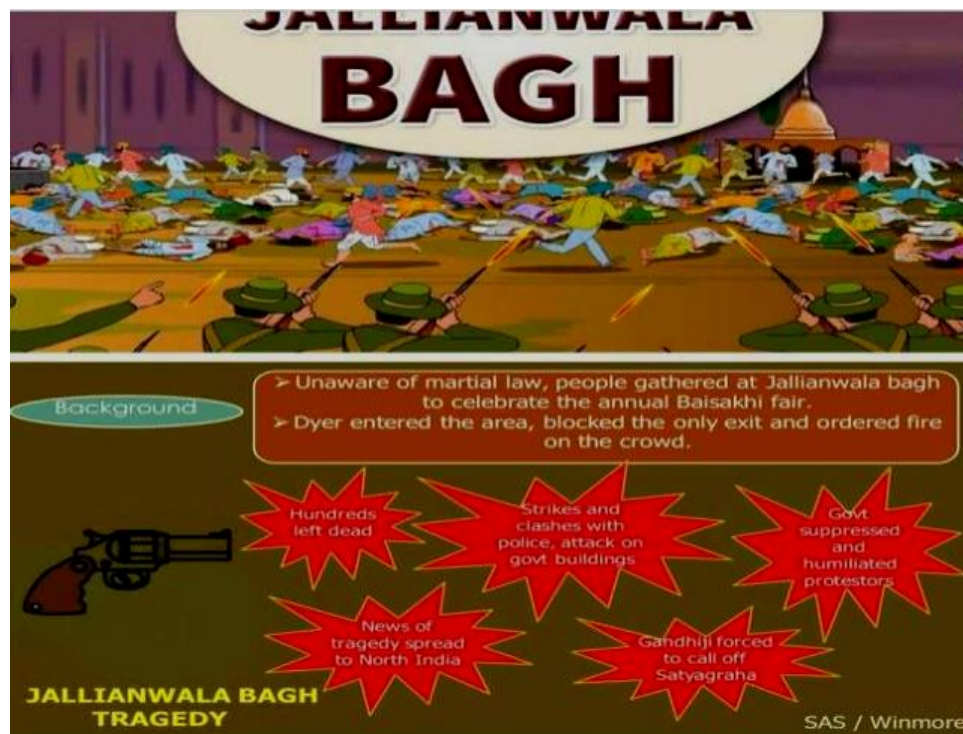
ROWLATT SATYAGRAHA

- a. All India hartal was organized on 6 th April 1919.
- b. Rallies were organized in various cities.
- c. Workers went on strike in railway workshops and shops were closed down.

Government's reaction to Rowlatt Satyagraha

- a. British administration decided to suppress the nationalists.
- b. Local leaders were picked up from Amritsar and Mahatma Gandhi was stopped from entering Delhi. On 10 April, the police in Amritsar fired upon a peaceful procession, provoking widespread attacks on banks, post offices and railway stations.
- c. Martial law was imposed and General Dyer took command.

13th April, 1919 Jallianwala Bagh Massacre



- a. A crowd of villagers had come to Amritsar to attend a fair and gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwalla Bagh.

b. Being from outside the city, they were unaware of **the martial law** that had been imposed. General Dyer entered the area, blocked the exit points and opened fire on the crowd and killed hundreds of people.

c. His aim was to ‘**produce a moral effect**’ and create a feeling of terror in the minds of satyagrahis.

d. Reaction of the people to the massacre -There were strikes, clashes with the police and attacks on government buildings.

Government’s reaction to the attacks

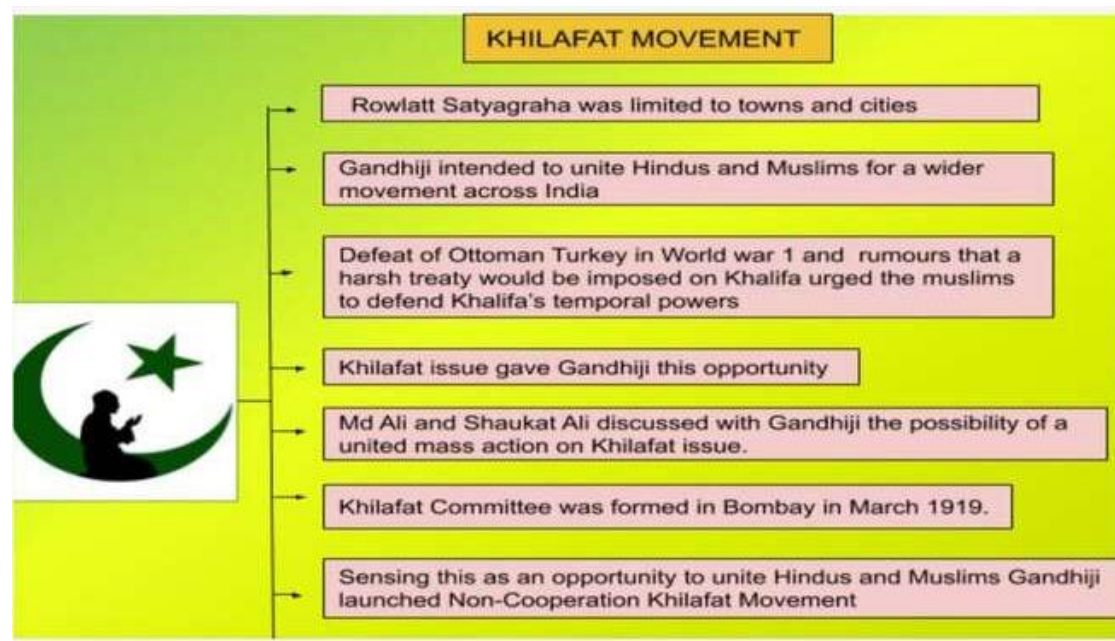
-The government responded with brutal repression, seeking to humiliate and terrorise people.

-Satyagrahis were forced to rub their noses on the ground, crawl on the streets and salute all sahibs.

-People were beaten and villages were bombed.

-Seeing violence spread, Mahatma Gandhi called off the movement.

KHILAFAT MOVEMENT



- Mahatma Gandhi felt the need to launch a more broad-based movement in India by bringing the Hindus and Muslims together.
- The First World War had ended with the defeat of Ottoman Turkey. There were rumours that a harsh peace treaty was going to be imposed on the Ottoman emperor – the spiritual head of the Islamic world (the Khalifa).
- To defend the Khalifa’s temporal powers, a Khilafat Committee was formed in Bombay in March 1919.

- d. Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali discussed with Mahatma Gandhi about the possibility of a united mass action on the issue.
- e. Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity to bring Muslims under the umbrella of a unified national movement. At the Calcutta session of the Congress in September 1920, he convinced other leaders of the need to start a noncooperation movement in support of Khilafat as well as for Swaraj.

NON-COOPERATION MOVEMENT



- a. In the book Hind Swaraj (1909) Mahatma Gandhi declared that British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians. If Indians refused to cooperate, British rule in India would collapse within a year, and Swaraj would come.
- b. It should begin with the surrender of titles that the government awarded.
- c. It should be followed by boycott of civil services, army, police, courts, legislative councils, schools and foreign goods.
- d. Many within the Congress were reluctant to boycott the council elections scheduled for November 1920.
- e. Between September and December, there was an intense fight within the Congress. Finally, at the Congress session at Nagpur in December 1920, a compromise was worked out and the Non-Cooperation program was adopted.

DIFFERING STRANDS WITHIN THE MOVEMENT THE MOVEMENT IN THE TOWNS

NON-COOPERATION MOVEMENT IN TOWNS

PARTICIPATION

- ★ The movement started with middle class participation.
- ★ Students left govt controlled schools and colleges-Headmasters and teachers resigned.
- ★ Lawyers gave up legal practices.
- ★ Boycott of foreign cloth.
- ★ Liquor shops picketed.
- ★ Council elections boycotted.

INITIAL SUCCESSES

- ★ Import of foreign cloth halved between 1921-22.
- ★ Merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods.
- ★ People started wearing khadi.
- ★ Production of Indian textile mills and handlooms went up.

FAILURE

- ★ Khadi was expensive and people could not afford it.
- ★ Absence of alternative Indian institutions.
- ★ Students, teachers, lawyers joined back.

- The movement started with middle-class participation in the cities.
- Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned, and lawyers gave up their legal practices.
- The council elections were boycotted except in Madras, where the Justice Party felt that entering the council was one way of gaining some power.

Effects of Non-Cooperation on the Economic Front

EFFECTS OF NON-COOPERATION ON THE ECONOMIC FRONT

- Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops were picketed and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.
- The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921 and 1922.
- In many places, merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.
- As the boycott movement spread, and people began discarding imported clothes and wearing only Indian ones, production of Indian textile mills and handlooms went up.

But this movement in the cities gradually slowed down due to the following reasons-

- Khadi cloth was more expensive than mass-produced mill cloth and poor people could not afford to buy it.
- The boycott of British institutions posed a problem. For the movement to be successful, alternative Indian institutions had to be set up so that they could be used in place of the British ones. These were slow to come up. So students and teachers began trickling back to government schools and lawyers joined back work in government courts.

REBELLION IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

REBELLION IN THE COUNTRYSIDE	
PEASANTS	TRIBALS
<ul style="list-style-type: none">❖ Led by Baba Ramchandra-a sanyasi who had earlier been to Fiji as an indentured labourer.❖ Movement against landlords and talukdars.❖ Demands: Reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of oppressive landlords.❖ Organised nai-dhobi bandhs to deprive landlords of the services of barbers and washermen.❖ Setting up of Kisan Sabhas with 300 branches in many villages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">❖ A militant guerilla movement was led by Alluri Sitaramaraju in the Gudem Hills of AP.❖ Movement was against colonial forest laws.❖ Colonial govt restricted movement in forest areas and demanded begar for road building.❖ Raju being a follower of Gandhiji persuaded people to wear khadi, give up drinking.❖ But Raju differed with Gandhiji and felt that India could be liberated only by the use of force, not non-violence.❖ Tribals attacked police stations, attempted to kill British officials for swaraj.❖ Raju was captured and executed in 1924.

AWADH

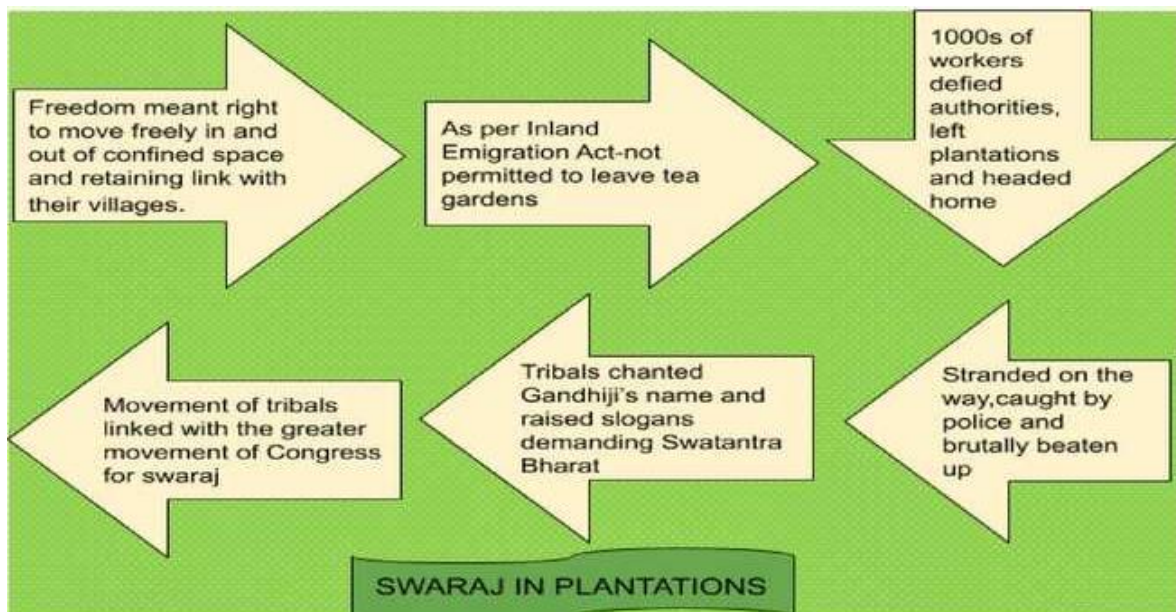
- a. In Awadh, peasants were led by Baba Ramchandra. The movement was against talukdars and landlords who demanded high rents from peasants and a variety of other taxes.
- b. Peasants had to do begar and work at landlords' farms without any payment. As tenants, they had no security of tenure. They were being regularly thrown out so that they could acquire no right over the leased land.
- c. Peasants's demanded the following- -Reduction of revenue, abolition of begar, and social boycott of oppressive landlords.
- d. As a way of protest, nai-dhobi bandhs were organized by panchayats to deprive landlords of the services of even barbers and washer men.
- e. The Oudh Kisan Sabha was set up headed by Jawaharlal Nehru, Baba Ramchandra and a few others.
- f. As the movement spread in 1921, the houses of talukdars and merchants were attacked, bazaars were looted, and grain hoards were taken over.
- g. In many places, local leaders told peasants that Gandhiji had declared that no taxes were to be paid and land was to be redistributed among the poor.

NON COOPERATION MOVEMENT IN TRIBAL AREAS OF ANDHRA PRADESH

- a. In the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh, a militant guerrilla movement spread in the early 1920s. The colonial government had closed large forest areas, preventing people from entering the forests to graze their cattle or to collect fuelwood and fruits.

- b. Not only were their livelihoods were affected, but they also felt that their traditional rights were being denied.
- c. When the government began forcing them to contribute begar for road building, the hill people revolted.
- d. Alluri Sitaram Raju claimed that he had a variety of special powers, he could make correct astrological predictions and heal people, and he could survive even bullet shots.
- e. Captivated by Raju, the rebels proclaimed that he was an incarnation of God.
- f. He persuaded people to wear khadi and give up drinking. But at the same time he asserted that India could be liberated only by the use of force, not non-violence.
- g. The Gudem rebels attacked police stations, attempted to kill British officials and carried on guerrilla warfare for achieving swaraj.
- h. Raju was captured and executed in 1924, and over time became a folk hero.

Swaraj in the Plantations Assam



- a. For plantation workers in Assam, freedom meant the right to move freely in and out of the confined space in which they were enclosed, and it meant retaining a link with the village from which they had come.
- b. Under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859, plantation workers were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission, and in fact they were rarely given such permission.
- c. When they heard of the Non-Cooperation Movement, thousands of workers disobeyed the authorities, left the plantations and headed home. They believed that Gandhi Raj was coming and everyone would be given land in their own villages.

d. They, however, never reached their destination. Stranded on the way by a railway and steamer strike, they were caught by the police and brutally beaten up.

e. They interpreted the term Swaraj in their own ways, imagining it to be a time when all suffering and all troubles would be over.

f. Yet, when the tribals chanted Gandhiji's name and raised slogans demanding 'Swatantra Bharat', they were also emotionally relating to an all-India agitation.

BARDOLI

- a. In 1928, Vallabhbhai Patel led the peasant movement in Bardoli, a taluka in Gujarat.
- b. It was against enhancement of land revenue.
- c. It can be known as Bardoli Satyagraha.
- d. The struggle was widely publicised and generated immense sympathy in many parts of India.

Chauri Chaura Incident And The Withdrawal Of Non-Cooperation Movement

- ❖ In February 1922, Gandhiji decided to launch a no tax movement.
- ❖ The police opened fire at the people who were taking part in a demonstration, without any provocation.
- ❖ The people turned violent and attacked the police station and set fire to it.
- ❖ The incident took place at Chauri Chaura in Uttar Pradesh.

When the news reached Gandhiji, he decided to call off the Non-Cooperation movement as he felt that it was turning violent and that the satyagrahis were not properly trained for mass struggle.

FORMATION OF SWARAJ PARTY

- a. Within the Congress, some leaders wanted to participate in elections to the provincial councils that had been set up by the Government of India Act of 1919.
- b. They felt that it was important to oppose British policies within the councils, argue for reform and also to demonstrate that these councils were not truly democratic.
- c. C. R. Das and Motilal Nehru formed the Swaraj Party within the Congress to argue for a return to council politics. But Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose pressed for more radical mass agitation and for full independence.

EFFECT OF GREAT ECONOMIC DEPRESSION, 1930

- a. Agricultural prices began to fall from 1926 and collapsed after 1930.
- b. As the demand for agricultural goods fell and exports declined, peasants found it difficult to sell their harvests and pay their revenue.

SIMON COMMISSION

- a. The new Tory government in Britain constituted a Statutory Commission under Sir John Simon.
- b. The commission had to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes.

BOYCOTT OF SIMON COMMISSION

- a. The problem was that the commission did not have a single Indian member. They were all British.
- b. When the Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928, it was greeted with the slogan 'Go back Simon'.
- c. All parties, including the Congress and the Muslim League, participated in the demonstrations.
- d. Lala Lajpat Rai was assaulted by the British police during a peaceful demonstration against Simon Commission.
- e. He succumbed to injuries that were inflicted on him during the demonstration.

OFFER FOR A DOMINION STATUS

- a. Lord Irwin, announced in October 1929, a vague offer of 'dominion status' for India and a Round Table Conference to discuss a future constitution for India.
- b. This did not satisfy the Congress leaders. The radicals within the Congress, led by Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose, became more determined.
- c. The liberals and moderates gradually lost their influence.

DEMAND FOR POORNA SWARAJ

- a. On 31st December 1929, under the presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalized the demand of 'Poorna Swaraj' or full independence for India.
- b. It was declared that 26 January 1930 would be celebrated as the Independence Day, when people take a pledge to struggle for complete independence.

Questions related to the chapter

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following was the reason for calling off the Noncooperation Movement by Gandhiji?
 - (a) Pressure from the British Government
 - (b) Second Round Table Conference

(c) Gandhiji's arrest

(d) Chauri-Chaura incident

2. Who set up the 'Oudh Kisan Sabha'?

(a) Alluri Sitaram Raju

(b) Jawahar Lai Nehru and Baba Ramchandra

(c) Jawaharlal Nehru and Shaukat Ali

(d) Mahatma Gandhi

3. The 'Simon Commission' was boycotted because

(a) there was no British Member in the Commission.

(b) it demanded separate electorates for Hindus and Muslims.

(c) there was no Indian Member in the Commission.

(d) it favoured the Muslims over the Hindus.

4. Who formed the 'Swaraj Party' within the Congress?

(a) Jawahar Lai Nehru and Motilal Nehru

(b) Abdul Ghaffar Khan and Mahatma Gandhi

(c) Jawahar Lal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose

(d) C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru

5. Which of the following was Mahatma Gandhi's novel method of fighting against the British?

(a) He used violent method of stone pelting.

(b) He used arson to bum down government offices.

(c) He fought with the principle of 'an eye for an eye'.

(d) He practised open defiance of law, peaceful demonstration, satyagraha and non-violence

6. Which party did not boycott the Council elections held in the year 1921?

(a) Swaraj Party

(b) Justice Party

(c) Muslim League

(d) Congress Party

7. Who was the writer of the book 'Hind Swaraj'?

(a) Rabindranath Tagore

(b) B.R. Ambedkar

(c) Mahatma Gandhi

(d) Jawahar Lai Nehru

8. Baba Ramchandra, a sanyasi, was the leader of which of the following movements?

(a) Khilafat Movement

(b) Militant Guerrilla Movement of Andhra Pradesh

(c) Peasants' Movement of Awadh

(d) Plantation Workers' Movement in Assam

9. A form of demonstration used in the Non-cooperation Movement in which people block the entrance to a shop, factory or office is

(a) Boycott

(b) Begar

(c) Picketing

(d) Bandh

10. Khilafat Committee was formed in 1919 in the city of

(a) Bombay

(b) Calcutta

(c) Lucknow

(d) Amritsar

11. Under the presidency of Jawahar Lal Nehru, the Lahore Congress Session of 1929 formalised the demand of

(a) abolition of Salt Tax

(b) 'Poorna Swaraj' or complete independence

(c) boycott of Simon Commission

(d) separate electorate for 'dalits'

12. Which one of the following Viceroys announced a vague offer of dominion status for India in October 1929?

(a) Lord Mountbatten

(b) Lord Dalhousie

(c) Lord Irwin

(d) None of these

13. Who among the following two leaders led the Khilafat Movement?

(a) Shaukat Ali and Muhammad Ali

(b) Gandhiji and Sardar Patel

(c) Muhammad Ali Jinnah and Abul Kalam Azad

(d) Abul Kalam Azad and Jawaharlal Nehru

14. What kind of movement was launched by the tribal peasants of Gudem Hills in Andhra Pradesh? (a) Satyagraha Movement

(b) Militant Guerrilla Movement

(c) Non-Violent Movement

(d) None of the above

15. When did the Jallianwalla Bagh incident take place?

(a) On 13 April 1919

(b) On 15 August 1919

(c) On 27 October 1919

(d) On 10 March 1919

Match the columns. Find out the correct options

1.

Column A	Column B
i. Non-cooperation movement	(a) December 1929
ii. Lahore session of Congress	(b) September 1932
iii. Poona pact	(c) December 1920
iv. Nagpur session of congress	(d) January 1921.

A) 1(d), 2(a), 3(b), 4(c)

B) 1(c), 2(b), 3(d), 4(a)

C) 1(a), 2(d), 3(c), 4(b)

D) 1(c), 2(d), 3(a), 4(b)

2.

Column A	Column B
i. Peasant Satyagraha	a) Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay
ii. Resolution of Poorna Swaraj	b) Led the Tribal Movement in Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh
iii Alluri Sitaram Raju	c) Kheda
Iv Author of Anand Math	d) 1929 (Lahore)

A, 1(c), 2 (d), 3 (b), 4 (a)

B) 1(c), 2(b), 3(d), 4(a)

C) 1(a), 2(d), 3(c), 4(b)

D) 1(c), 2(d), 3(a), 4(b)

Assertion Reason questions

Directions :

In the following questions,

A statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R).

Mark the correct choice as:

(A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

(B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.

(C) A is true but R is false.

(D) A is false and R is true

1. Assertion (A): Mahatma Gandhi decided to take up the Khilafat issue.

Reason (R): He wanted to bring the Muslims into the fold of nationalist movement

(A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

(B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.

(C) A is true but R is false.

(D) A is false and R is true

2. Assertion (A): Dyer entered the area, blocked the exit points and opened fire on the crowd, killing hundreds.

Reason (R): His object, as he declared later, was to 'produce a moral effect', to create in the minds of satyagrahis a feeling of terror and awe.

- (A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
- (C) A is true but R is false.
- (D) A is false and R is true

3. **Assertion (A):** Gandhiji's idea of 'Satyagraha' emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth.

Reason(R): Gandhiji believed that a Satyagrahi could win the battle by appealing to the conscience of the oppressor.

- (A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
- (C) A is true but R is false.
- (D) A is false and R is true

Picture based questions

1. Which one of the following event was related to this image of Gandhiji?

- a) Non-Cooperation Movement
- b) Kheda Sathyagraha
- c) Dandi March
- d) None of the above



2. Which of the following event is related to the given image?

- a) Non- Cooperation Movement
- b) Jallianwala Bagh incident
- c) Civil Disobedience Movement
- d) Swadeshi Movement



3. Which of the options best signifies the image?

- a) Protest of Indian workers in South Africa

- b) Indians welcoming Mahatma Gandhi at Champaran
- c) Protestors gathered at the Non-Cooperation Movement
- d) Participation of Indians in the Civil Disobedience Movement



1. Read the following passage and answer the following questions

‘It is said of “passive resistance” that it is the weapon of the weak, but the power which is the subject of this article can be used only by the strong. This power is not passive resistance; indeed it calls for intense activity. The movement in South Africa was not passive but active.

... Satyagraha is not physical force. A satyagraha does not inflict pain on the adversary; he does not seek his destruction ... In the use of satyagraha, there is no ill-will whatever.

‘Satyagraha is pure soul-force. Truth is the very substance of the soul. That is why this force is called satyagraha. The soul is informed with knowledge. In it burns the flame of love. ... Non violence is the supreme dharma

‘It is certain that India cannot rival Britain or Europe in force of arms. The British worship the war-god and they can all of them become, as they are becoming, bearers of arms. The hundreds of millions in India can never carry arms. They have made the religion of non-violence their own.

1.1. Whose words are given above?

- (A) Jawaharlal Nehru
- (B) Ambedkar
- (C) C R Das
- (D) Gandhiji

1.2. Satyagraha is a passive resistance of the weak.

- (A) True
- (B) False .

1.3. Satyagraha is based on

- (A) Truth
- (B) Non violence
- (C) Both A and B
- (D) None of the above

1.4. . Satyagraha is based on -----

- A) Violence
- B) Non violence

2. Emboldened with this success, Gandhiji in 1919 decided to launch a nationwide satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act (1919). This Act had been hurriedly passed through the Imperial Legislative Council despite the united opposition of the Indian members. It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities, and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years. Mahatma Gandhi wanted non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws, which would start with a hartal on 6 April.

Rallies were organised in various cities, workers went on strike in railway workshops, and shops closed down. Alarmed by the popular upsurge, and scared that lines of communication such as the railways and telegraph would be disrupted, the British administration decided to clamp down on nationalists. Local leaders were picked up from Amritsar, and Mahatma Gandhi was barred from entering Delhi. On 10 April, the police in Amritsar fired upon a peaceful procession

2.1. On which date Gandhiji called for a nationwide hartal against Rowlatt Act?

- (A) 20th January 1919
- (B) 6th April 1919
- (C) 13th April 1919
- (D) 10th April 1919

2.2. Rowlatt Act aimed to strengthen nationalist movement in India

- (A) Yes
- (B) No

2.3. Rowlatt Act was passed in

- (A) 1919
- (B) 1920
- (C) 1915

(D) 1916

2.4. On 6th April 1919 which of the following events took place in India?

(A) Hartals

(B) Strikes in railway work shop

(C) Both A and B

(D) None of the above

Short answer questions

1. How did the plantation workers understand the idea of 'Swaraj'? Explain.
2. Why did Non-cooperation Movement gradually slowdown in cities? Explain any three reasons.
3. When did Simon Commission come to India? Why was it boycotted?
4. How was Lahore Congress of 1929 important?
5. The effects of non-cooperation on economic front were more dramatic. How?

Long answer questions

1. Why did Gandhiji decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act, 1919? How was it organised Explain
2. Describe the role of the peasants in Awadh in the Non-cooperation Movement.
3. Explain any five major problems posed by the First World War in India
4. Who was Alluri Sitaram Raju? Explain his role in inspiring the rebels with Gandhiji's ideas.
5. Explain five points about Gandhiji's idea of 'satyagraha'.

MAP QUESTIONS

Important Centres of Indian National Movement (Non-cooperation and Civil Disobedience Movements)

1. Champaran (Bihar) Movement of Indigo Planters
2. Kheda (Gujarat) Peasant Satyagraha
3. Ahmedabad(Gujarat) Cotton Mill Worker's Satyagraha
4. Amritsar(Punjab) Jallianwala Bagh Incident
5. Chauri Chaura(UP) Calling of the NCM
6. Baroli(Gujarat) No Tax Campaign

7. Dandi(Gujarat) Civil Disobedience Movement

Answer key - MCQ

1	d	9	C
2	b	10	A
3	c	11	B
4	d	12	C
5	d	13	A
6	b	14	B
7	c	15	A
8	c		

Match the following:

1. A

2. A

Assertion- Reason Questions

1. A

2.A

3.A

Picture based questions

1. c

2. b

3. a

Source based questions

1.1. D

1.2. B

1.3. C

1.4. B

2.1 B

2.2 B

2.3 A

2.4 C

Short answer questions

1.

- For the plantation workers of Assam, “Swaraj” meant freedom to move freely in and out of the confined space in which they all were enclosed.
- To be able to keep the link with their native village intact.
- Under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859, plantation workers were not allowed to leave their tea gardens without permission, which they were rarely given.
- They believed that Gandhi Raj is going to come and they will get a piece of land in their own village. When they heard of the Noncooperation Movement, thousands of workers defied authorities, left the plantations and headed home.

2.

- The Non-cooperation Movement gradually slowed down in cities for a variety of reasons:
- Khadi cloth was more expensive than mill cloth and poor people could not afford to buy it.
- As a result they could not boycott mill cloth for too long.
- Alternative Indian institutions were not there which could be used in place of the British ones. These were slow to come up.
- So students and teachers began trickling back to government schools and lawyers joined back work in government courts.

3.

The Tory government of Britain formed a commission under the leadership of Sir John Simon to enquire into the working of constitutional arrangements in India and to suggest reforms. It was appointed in 1927 and this commission reached India in 1928. It was boycotted because

- It did not have any single Indian member
- It did not talk about Swaraj

4.

- It formalized the demand for ‘Purna Swaraj’ or full independence to India
- It declared 26 Jan.1930 would be celebrated as Independence Day.
- It decided to launch Civil Disobedience Movement.

5.

- Import of British goods to India was reduced to half ` Foreign goods were boycotted
- Liquor shops were picketed
- The value of import on cloths came down
- Merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods
- Production of Indian textiles went up.

Long answer questions

1.

- The Rowlatt Act was passed despite the united opposition of the Indian members of Imperial Legislative Council.
- The Act gave the government enormous powers to suppress political agitations.
- It had allowed the detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.
- There was no provision for appeal.
- The passing of this Act aroused large scale indignation.
- Gandhiji, who had formed a Satyagraha Sabha earlier, called for a countrywide protest against the proposed Rowlatt Act.
- Throughout the country, 6 April 1919 was observed as a National Humiliation Day.
- Gandhiji wanted a non-violent Civil Disobedience Movement against such unjust laws.
- Hartals and rallies were organized in various cities.
- Workers went on strike in railway workshops.
- shops were closed down. The movement was non-violent but proved to be effective.

2.

Role of the peasants in Awadh in the Non-cooperation Movement:

- In Awadh, the peasants' movement was led by Baba Ramchandra—a Sanyasi who had earlier worked in Fiji as indentured labourer.
- The movement was against taluqdars and landlords who demanded high rents from the peasants.
- Peasants had to do 'begar and work at landlords' farms without any payment.
- As tenants, they had no security of tenure and could be evicted without any notice.
- The peasants' movement demanded reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of these landlords.
- In many places Nai-Dhobi bandhs were organized to deprive landlords of the services of even washer men and barbers.
- In 1920, Jawahar Lai Nehru began talking to the villagers and formed 'Oudh Kisan Sabha'. Within a month 300 branches had been setup in the villages.
- As the movement spread in 1921, and it became a part of the Non Cooperation movement. They adopted violent methods. The houses of taluqdars and merchants were attacked, bazaars were looted and grain hoards were taken over

3.

The outbreak of the First World War had created a new economic and political situation in India:

- The increased defence expenditure was financed by war loans and by raising tax rates, custom duties, etc.
- There was tremendous price rise during the war years.
- Between 1913 and 1918, the prices had almost doubled.
- People, particularly common people, were facing extreme hardships.
- Forced recruitment in the army caused widespread anger in the villages. T
- he failure of crops in many parts of India had created food shortages, leading to the added misery of the people.
- In addition to this, there was the outbreak of the great influenza epidemic. Millions of people perished due to influenza and starvation.

- The nationalist movement grew stronger during the war years.
- A large number of Muslims were drawn into the anti-British struggle during the war.
- The defence of the 'Caliphate' (Khilafat) became an important question for Muslims.
- Peasant movements during war period also had helped the nationalist movement to grow stronger.

4.

- Alluri Sitaram Raju was the tribal leader of the peasants in Andhra Pradesh.
- He claimed that he had a variety of special powers.
- He inspired the rebels with Gandhiji's ideas in the following ways:
- Raju inspired them by talking about the greatness of Mahatma Gandhi.
- He said that he was inspired by the Non-cooperation Movement.
- He persuaded people to wear khadi and to give up drinking.
- He asserted that India could be liberated only with the use of force.
- He organised the tribals into a militant guerrilla movement.

5.

Five points about Gandhiji's idea of 'satyagraha':

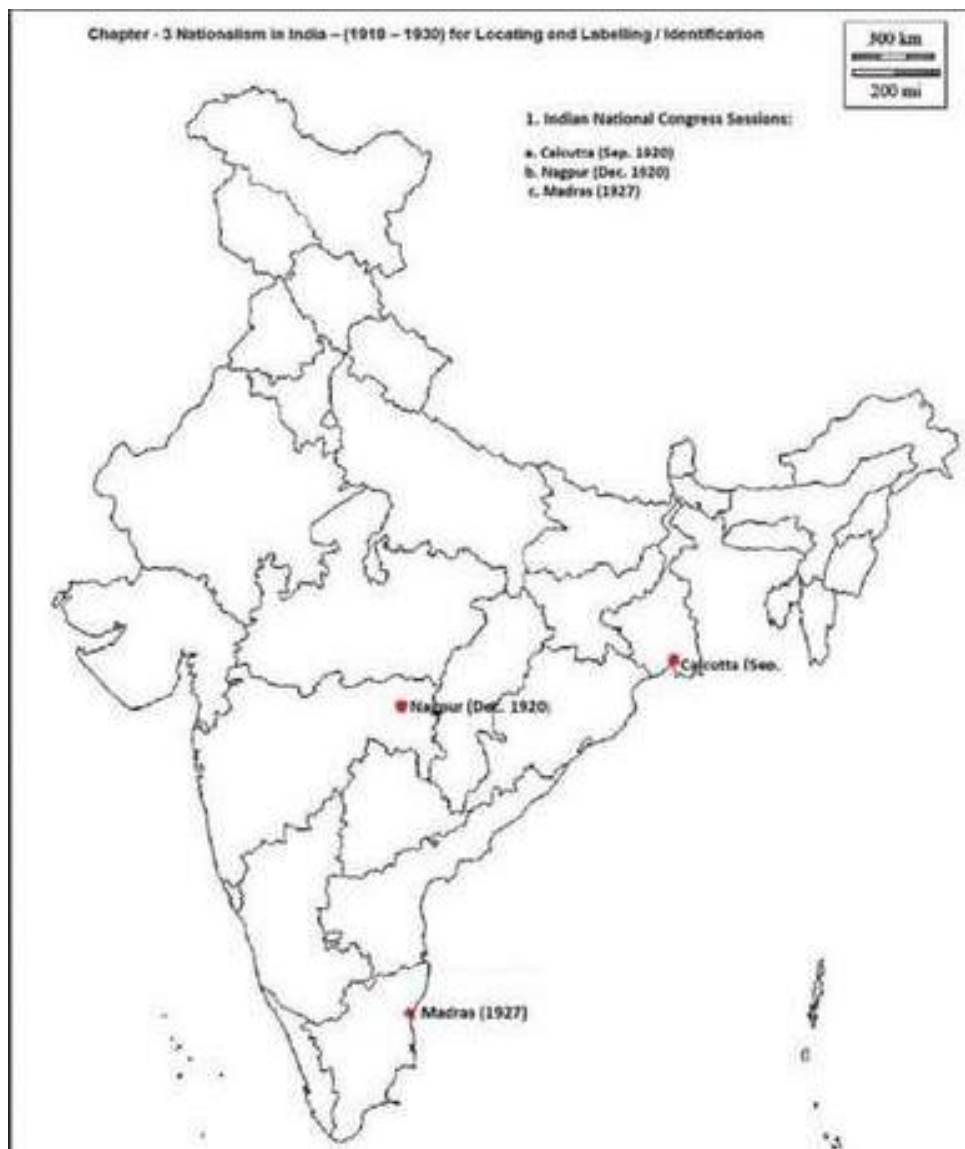
According to Gandhiji, satyagraha is not physical force.

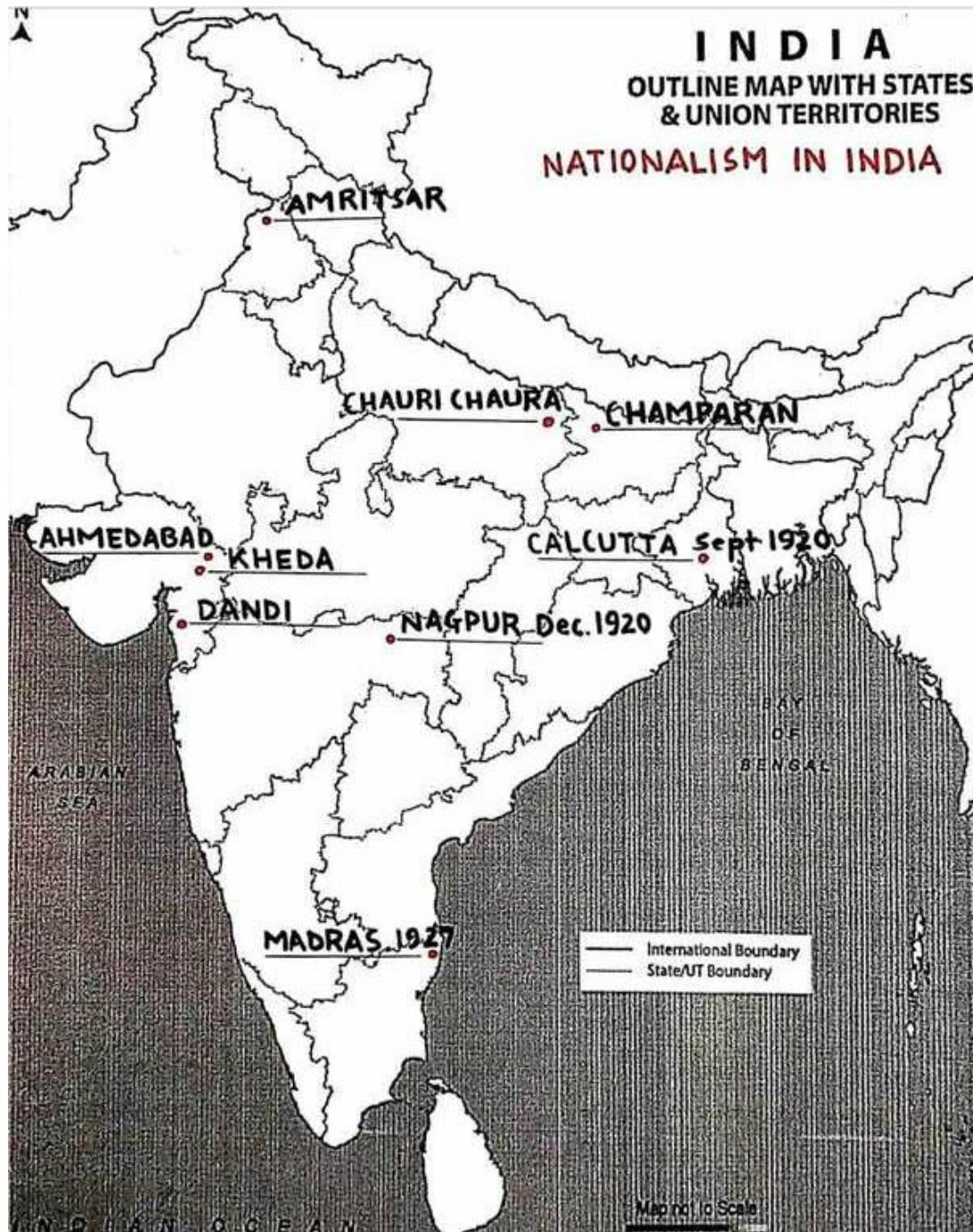
In the use of satyagraha there should not be any scope for ill-will.

Satyagraha is about soul-force and truth is the very substance of soul

- According to Gandhiji, satyagraha is not the weapon of the weak, instead it can only be used by the strongest of the strong as it totally depends upon mental strength but not on physical strength.
- It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor.
- Without seeking vengeance or being aggressive, a satyagrahi could win the battle through nonviolence.
- Non-violence is the supreme dharma which could unite all Indians.
- By this struggle, truth was bound to ultimately triumph
- Satyagraha is based on two pillars namely truth and non-violence

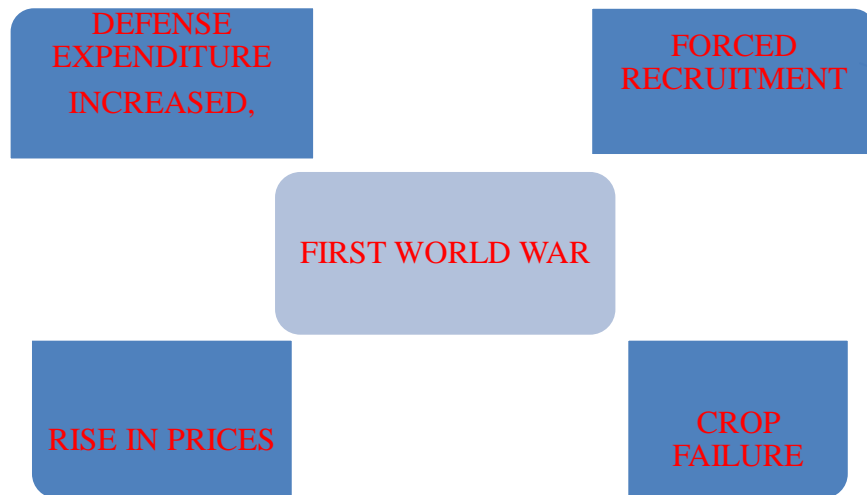
Map questions





MIND MAP- NATIONALISM IN INDIA

IMPACT OF FIRST WORLD WAR ON INDIA

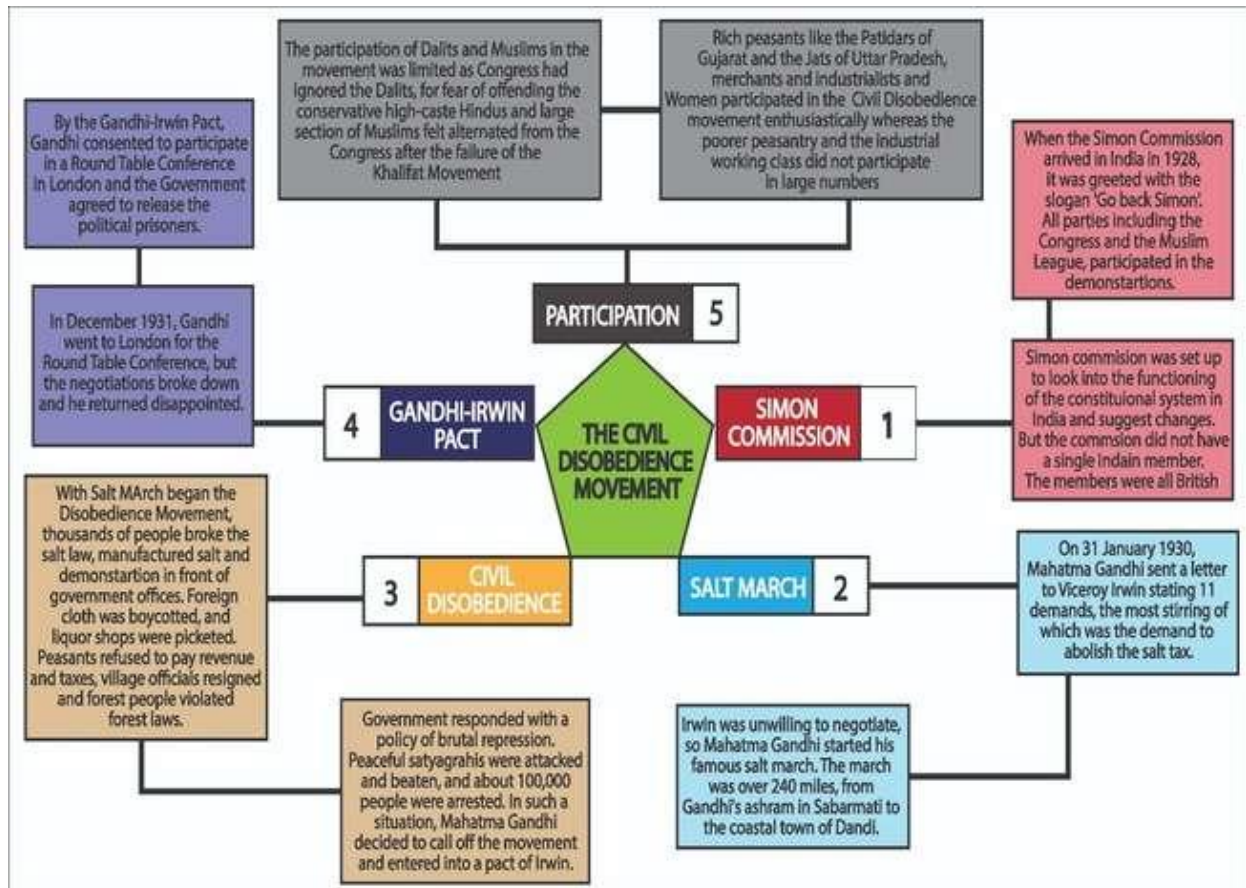


NON - COOPERATION MOVEMENT (1921-1922)

DEMANDS BY DIFFERENT GROUPS

IN THE TOWNS	IN THE COUNTRYSIDE	IN THE PLANTATIONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none">•SURRENDERED THE TITLES•BOYCOTTED COUNCIL ELECTIONS•BOYCOTTED GOVERNMENT SERVICES AND FOREIGN GOODS•(MIDDLE CLASS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">•REDUCTION OF REVENUE• ABOLITION OF BEGAR•SOCIAL BOYCOTT OF OPPRESSIVE LAND LORDS•ENTRY TO RESERVED FOREST BY TRIBALS•(FARMERS AND TRIBALS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">•PERMISSION FOR WORKERS TO RETURN TO VILLAGES•DISTRIBUTION OF LAND FOR PLANTATION WORKERS IN THEIR OWN VILLAGES•(PLANTATION WORKERS)

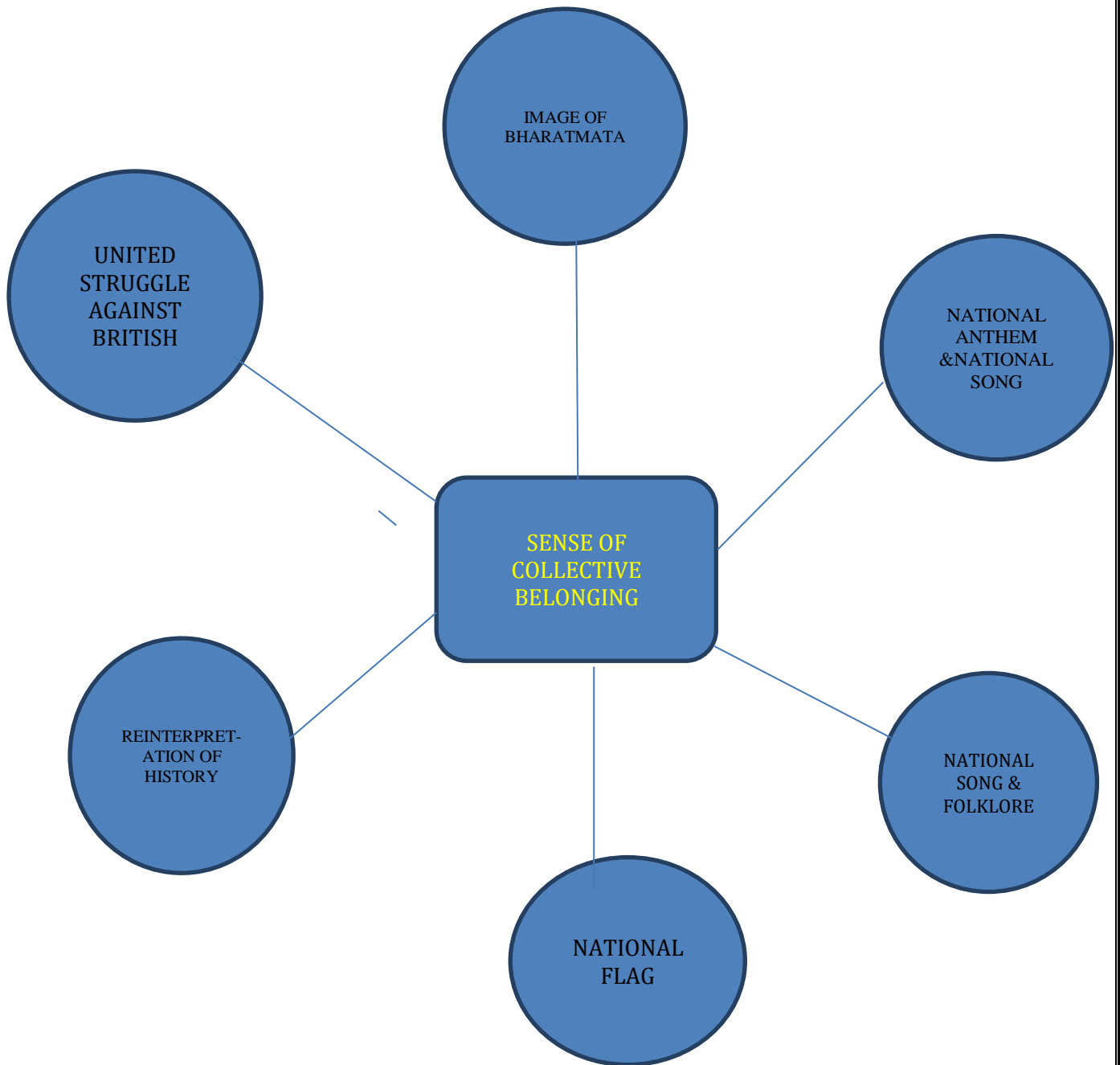
CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT



Satyagraha Movements



THE SENSE OF COLLECTIVE BELONGING



NATIONALISM IN INDIA

```
graph LR; A[NATIONALISM IN INDIA] --- B[FIRST WORLD WAR (1914-1918)]; A --- C["SATYAGRAHA MOVEMENTS (Champanan 1917, Kheda 1918, Ahmedabad 1918)"]; A --- D["Rowlatt Act 1919  
Jallianwallah Bagh Massacre 1919"]; A --- E["Non-Cooperation and Khilafat (1921)  
Chauri Chaura (1922)"]; A --- F["Simon Commission (1928)  
Lahore Congress (1929)"]; A --- G["Civil Disobedience Movement (1930)  
Gandhi -Irwin Pact (1931)"]; A --- H["Poona Pact (1932)  
Civil Disobedience Re- launched (1932)"];
```

FIRST WORLD WAR (1914-1918)

SATYAGRAHA MOVEMENTS (Champanan 1917, Kheda 1918, Ahmedabad 1918)

**Rowlatt Act 1919
Jallianwallah Bagh Massacre 1919**

**Non-Cooperation and Khilafat (1921)
Chauri Chaura (1922)**

**Simon Commission (1928)
Lahore Congress (1929)**

**Civil Disobedience Movement (1930)
Gandhi -Irwin Pact (1931)**

**Poona Pact (1932)
Civil Disobedience Re- launched (1932)**

NATIONALISM IN INDIA

(The Salt March and the Civil Disobedience Movement – The Sense of Collective Belonging)

KEY WORDS AND CONCEPTS

- Dandi march and the beginning of civil Disobedience movement
- Salt was something consumed by the rich and the poor alike, and it was one of the most essential items of food- salt considered a more effective weapon for protest against Britishers.
- Government 's repressive policy - Gandhi Irwin Pact and failure of round table conference-launching of movement.
- Who participated in the movement?
- The rich peasant communities, business class and women took active part in the movement.
- Limits of the movement-less participation by untouchables – Ambedkar for separate electorate and Poona pact of 1932, luke warm response by some Muslim Political Organization
- Provisions of Poona pact of 1932 – Signed between Dr. Ambedkar & Gandhiji- It gave depressed classes reserved seats in central provincial councils but they were to be voted by the general electorate.
- The sense of collective belonging- This sense of collective belonging came partly through the experience of united struggle's role of folklore and songs- the image of Bharath Mata- Nationalism through icons or symbols of representation of History. The first image was created by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay & painted by Abanindranath Tagore.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

Pick out the correct answer

1. Gandhiji ceremonially violated the salt law on
 - a) April 6
 - b) April 16
 - c) March 6
 - d) May 6
2. Gandhi-Irwin Pact was signed on _____.
 - a) 5 April 1932
 - b) 5 March 1931
 - c) 5 May 1931
 - d) 5 June 1932
3. Whose arrest led the angry crowds for demonstration in the streets of Peshawar?
 - a) C R Das
 - b) Abdul Ghaffar Khan
 - c) Muhammed Ali Jinnah
 - d) Muhammed Iqbal
4. Who founded the 'Depressed Classes Association' in 1930?
 - (a) Alluri Sitaram Raju
 - (b) C.R. Das
 - (c) M.R. Jayakar
 - (d) Dr B.R. Ambedkar
- 5) Which industrialist attacked colonial control over Indian economy and supported the Civil Disobedience Movement?
 - (a) Dinshaw Petit
 - (b) Purshottamdas Thakurdas
 - (c) Dwarkanath Tagore
 - (d) Seth Hukumchand



6.. Which of the following event was related to this image of “Gandhiji”?

- a) Non -Cooperation Movement
- b) Dandi March
- c) Kheda Satyagraha
- d) None of the above



7. How is Bharat Mata portrayed in the above picture?

- a) Ascetic
- b) Divine
- c) Spiritual
- d) All of the above

FILL IN THE BLANKS

8. The collection of Tamil folk tales *The Folklore of Southern India* was published by _____.

9. The spinning wheel in the centre of Swaraj Flag represented _____.

10. The novel *Anand math* written by _____.

11 **Assertion (A):** Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.

Reason (R): Students and Teachers began trickling back to Government Schools and Lawyers joined back work in Government Courts

(A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

(B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.

(C) A is true but R is false.

(D) A is false and R is true.

12. **Assertion (A):** Folklores gave a picture of traditional culture; it helps in discovering a national identity and restoring a sense of pride in one's past.

Reason (R): Nationalism spreads when people discover some unity that binds them together

(A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

(B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.

(C) A is true but R is false.

(D) A is false and R is true.

13. **Assertion (A):** Mahatma Gandhi decided to launch Civil Disobedience Movement by violating Salt Law.

Reason (R): An image or figure helps people to identify with the nation.

A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

(B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.

(C) A is true but R is false.

(D) A is false and R is true.

SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

1. The identity of the nation, as you know is most often symbolised in a figure or image. This helps create an image with which people can identify the nation.

It was in the twentieth century, with the growth of nationalism, that the identity of India came to be visually associated with the image of Bharat Mata. The image was first created by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay. In the 1870s he wrote 'Vande

Mataram' as a hymn to the motherland. Later it was included in his novel Ananda math and widely sung during the Swadeshi movement in Bengal. Moved by the Swadeshi movement, Abanindranath Tagore painted his famous image of Bharat Mata. In this painting Bharat Mata is portrayed as an ascetic figure; she is calm, composed, divine and spiritual. In subsequent years, the image of Bharat Mata acquired many different forms, as it circulated in popular prints, and was painted by different artists. Devotion to this mother figure came to be seen as evidence of one's nationalism.

1.. a. The image of Bharat Mata was first portrayed by

- A) Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay
- B) Abindranath Tagore
- C) Rabindranath Tagore
- D) Jawaharlal Nehru

1b. Anandamath was written by

- A) Natesa Sastri
- B) Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay
- C) Rabindranath Tagore
- D) Jawaharlal Nehru

1c. Devotion to this mother figure came to be seen as evidence of one's nationalism

- A) Yes
- B) No

2. Not all social groups were moved by the abstract concept of swaraj. One such group was the nation's 'untouchables', who from around the 1930s had begun to call themselves Dalit or oppressed. For long the Congress had ignored the dalits, for fear of offending the sanatanis, the conservative high-caste Hindus. But Mahatma Gandhi believed that swaraj would not come for a hundred years if untouchability was not eliminated. He called the 'untouchables' harijan, or the children of God, organised satyagraha to secure them entry into temples, and access to public wells, tanks, roads and schools. He himself cleaned toilets to dignify the work of the bhangi (the sweepers), and persuaded upper castes to

change their heart and give up 'the sin of untouchability'. But many dalit leaders were keen on a different political solution to the problems of the community.

2a. _____ called untouchables as harijans.

A) Jawaharlal Nehru

B) Gandhiji

C) B R Ambedkar

D) None of the above

2b. Who are 'Sanatanis'?

2c. Why did the Dalit leaders keep themselves away from Civil Disobedience Movement?

3. The poorer peasantry were not just interested in the lowering of the revenue demand. Many of them were small tenants cultivating land they had rented from landlords. As the Depression continued and cash incomes dwindled, the small tenants found it difficult to pay their rent. They wanted the unpaid rent to the landlord to be remitted. They joined a variety of radical movements, often led by Socialists and Communists. Apprehensive of raising issues that might upset the rich peasants and landlords, the Congress was unwilling to support 'no rent' campaigns in most places. So, the relationship between the poor peasants and the Congress remained uncertain

3a Why did the relationship between the poor peasants and the Congress remain uncertain?

3b What was the small tenants' demand?

3c. The poor peasants joined a variety of _____ often led by Socialists and Communists.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1. "The Congress was reluctant to include the demands of industrial workers in its programme of struggle." Analyse the reasons.

2. Why did Gandhiji decide to call off the civil disobedience movement?

3. Explain the reasons for the lukewarm response of some Muslim organizations to the Civil Disobedience Movement.

4. Describe the main features of 'Poona Pact'.

5. What was the importance of Lahore Congress Session of 1929?

6. Explain the important features of Gandhi – Irwin Pact.

7. Why did Mahatma Gandhi relaunch the Civil Disobedience Movement in 1932? Explain.

8. Explain the importance of Dandi March.

9. Compare the tricolour flag designed during the Swadeshi Movement and the Swaraj flag designed by Gandhiji.

10. Why did the political leaders differ over the question of separate electorate?

LONG ANSWER

1. Discuss the Salt March to make clear why it was an effective symbol of resistance against colonialism
2. How did different social groups participate in Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain with examples.
3. Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation.” Justify the statement.
4. Dalit participation was limited in the Civil Disobedience Movement”. Examine the statement

MAP QUESTIONS

1. Important Centres of Indian National Movement (Non-cooperation and Civil Disobedience Movements)

- (i) Champaran (Bihar) Movement of Indigo Planters
- (ii) Kheda (Gujarat) Peasant Satyagraha
- (iii) Ahmedabad (Gujarat) Cotton Mill Worker’s Satyagraha
- (iv) Amritsar (Punjab) Jallianwala Bagh Incident
- (v) Chauri Chaura (UP) Calling of the NCM
- (vi) Dandi (Gujarat) Civil Disobedience Movement

2. IMPORTANT CONGRESS SESSIONS

For location and labelling /Identification on Outline Political Map of India

Indian National Congress Sessions:

Calcutta (Sep. 1920),

Nagpur (Dec.1920),

Madras (1927)

CHAPTER 3

THE MAKING OF A GLOBAL WORLD

MCQ QUESTIONS

1. Name the main destinations of Indian indentured labours

- A. Europe B. China C. Japan D. West Indies

Ans: D

2. Name the famous Indian descent who lived in West Indies and received Nobel Prize for literature

- A. Tagore B. Kalidas C. V. S. Naipaul D. Sudha Murthy

Ans: C

3. Why did National Leaders oppose indentured labour migration from India?

- A. It was very cruel B. Health condition was poor
C. Low wages D. All the above

Ans: D

4. Name the crop mainly export from India to China by Britain to meet their Import of tea and other products from China.

- A. Opium B. Jute C. Indigo D. Cotton

Ans: A

5. How Britain managed their “home charges”?

- A. Trade with China B. Surplus trade with India
B. Trade with Africa C. None of the above

Ans; B

6. Ottoman Turkey was part of _____ blocs during first world war

- A. Central powers B. Ttipple alliance C. NATO D. Allies

Ans: A

7. Russia was part of _____ blocs during first world war

- A. Central powers B. Allies C. Axis powers D. None of the above

Ans: B

8. Who used “assembly line of production”?

- A. TATA B. Henry Ford C. Bajaj D. All the above

Ans: B

9. What was the main reason for great depression?

- A. First world war B. Industrial growth
C. Over production D. None of the above

Ans: C

10. _____ Step was taken by US capitalists to recover their economy after First world war.

- A. Car production B. Decreasing production

C. Mass production D. None of the above

Ans: C

11. Britain was part of which military bloc during second world war

A. Axis powers B. Allies C. Central powers D. None of the above

Ans: B

12. _____ are referred as Brettenwoods institutions.

A. IMF and World Bank B. UNESCO C. WHO D. UNO

Ans: A

13. The Brettenwoods institutions benefitted to _____ Powers of the world.

A. US and western powers B. African countries

C. Asian countries D. China and USSR

Ans: A

14. International trade is mainly controlled by _____

A. USA B. Japan C. Britain D. MNC's

Ans: D

15. _____ economic process started after the decline of Brettenwoods Institutions.

A. Emergence of MNC's B. Globalisation process

C. Flow of the capital C. None of the above

Ans: B

Short answer questions

1. Name the three major factors influenced international economy

a) Flow of trade: Largely increased trade among different nations

b) Flow of labour: Migration of labour from one country to another

c) Flow of capital: Investment of capital by large MNC's in different countries of the world.

2. How did Europe emerge as the important trade centre of the world?

India and China were the important trade centre of the world till 18thC.

In 18thc China began to restrict its overseas trade policy and gradually retreated to isolation.

America emerged as important exporter of various goods to European markets and occupied good position in Europe.

3. Why did thousands of people flee from Europe to America?

1. Until the 19thC , poverty and hunger was common in Europe

2. Cities were crowded and deadly diseases were wide spread

3. Religious conflicts were common and dissenters were persecuted
4. Which factors were responsible for the economic depression of 1929?
 1. Agricultural overproduction led to falling of agricultural economy
 2. Agricultural income declined
 3. US overseas lenders panicked due to collapse of their economy and could not repay the money
5. State how America's trade enhanced after its discovery
 1. Before its discovery America had been cut off from regular contact with the rest of the world for millions of years.
 2. 16thC onwards America utilized its vast land, minerals and other resources scientifically.
 3. Many expeditions set off in search of El Dorado the fable city of gold
6. Why did people start migrating to the other continents from Europe?
 1. The demand for labour in America and Australia led to more migration
 2. Nearly 50 million people were migrated to US and Australia from Europe During 19thC.
 3. Millions of people migrated to different parts of the world for better future
7. What complex changes took place in the global agricultural economy by 1890?
 1. By 1890, a global agricultural economy had taken shape accompanied by complex changes in labour movement patterns, capital flows, and technology.
 2. Food no longer came from a nearby village or town, but from thousands of miles away.
 3. New types of agriculture production started by clearing vast forest cover.
8. Why were Europeans attracted to Africa?
 1. Europeans attracted to Africa due to its vast land and mineral resources
 2. They wanted more raw materials to support their industry in Europe by exporting resources from Africa.
 3. Availability of cheap labour force
9. What were the main destinations of Indian indentured labourers?
 1. Caribbean islands mainly Trinidad, Guyana, Surinam, Mauritius and Fiji
 2. Tamil migrants went to Ceylon and Malaya
 3. Indentured workers were also recruited for tea plantations in Assam.
10. What was the role of Indian bankers in managing their funds?
 1. Bankers like Shikripuri Shroffs and Nattukottai Chettiars were amongst the many groups of bankers and traders who financed export agriculture in central and south-east Asia.
 2. They used their own funds and borrowed loan from European Banks.
 3. They had sophisticated system to transfer money over large distances and even developed indigenous forms of corporate organisation.
11. What two crucial influences shaped post war reconstruction?
 1. US's emergence as the dominant political, economical and military power

In the western world.

2. Development of USSR as super power after second world war.

12. What were 'Corn laws'?

Corn laws empowered British govt. to restrict the import of corn from other country. It was later abolished due to the demands of industrialists and urban communities.

13. Why did Bretton woods institutions shift its attention towards developing countries?

1. IMF and World Bank were designed to meet the financial needs of the Industrial countries.

2. They were not able to cope with the challenge of poverty and lack of development in the former colonies.

3. As Europe and Japan depended less on IMF and World Bank after 1950s They turned towards developing country.

14. Explain the strategy followed to retain labour in Africa?

1. Heavy taxes were imposed which could pay only if people are earning

2. Inheritance laws were changed so that peasants were displaced from the land.

3. Mine workers also confined in compounds and not allowed to move freely.

Long answer questions

1. Why did British govt. scrapped "Corn laws" What were its effects?

1. Demand for food grains increased in Britain due to population growth

2. Demand for agricultural products increased, pushing up food grain prices

3. Govt. restricted import of corns under the pressure of landed groups

4. Unhappy with high food prices, industrialists and urban communities forced the abolition of Corn laws.

5. Food grains imported to Britain cheaply after the withdrawal of Corn laws and controlled price rise.

2. Indentured labour has been described as new system of slavery. Explain

1. Indentured labours had no freedom of work and they were not permitted to go to their native places by European plantation owners.

2. They were forced to work for low wages

3. They had to work long distances in the mining areas and plantations

4. They had to work long hours without proper facilities.

5. Their health condition was very miserable.

6. They were recruited by agents by giving false informations.

3. Explain the role played by Indian entrepreneurs abroad

1. Indian entrepreneurs like Shikaripuri Shroffs and NattuKottai Chettiar
Worked as bankers and traders who financed export of agricultural products to Central and south-east Asian countries by using their funds.
2. They had their own system to transfer money over large distances and developed their own system of corporate organisation.
3. Hyderabadindi traders made contact beyond European colonies
4. They had established emporia at busy ports world wide selling local and imported artifacts to tourists.

4. The important feature of the US economy in the 1920s was mass production.

Explain.

1. Henry Ford started mass car production in US
 2. He adopted the technique of assembly line of production that helped him to produce faster and cheaper way.
 3. Production increased fast in factories due to repeat a single task mechanically.
 4. Wages of the workers increased to speedup the production activities.
 5. Doubling of daily wages was considered the 'Best cost-cutting decision' he had ever made.
5. Assess the impact of Economic Depression of 1929 on US economy.
 1. More than 4000 banks closed and 110,000 companies collapsed.
 2. People lost their employment and bank savings.
 3. Farmers could not sell their production, households were ruined and business collapsed.
 4. Many households could not repay what they had borrowed and were forced to give up their homes, cars and other durable items.
 5. Ultimately US economy was shattered and faced deep crisis.

6. Briefly outline the achievements of Bretton Woods institutions in the initial stage of its existence.

1. These institutions inaugurated unprecedented developments in the field of trade and income for the western powers and Japan.
2. Developing countries also made good contribution in the initial stage of existence.
3. Developing countries imported technologies and capital from developed countries that helped to boost their capital
4. Bretton Woods institutions, IMF and World Bank, mainly concentrated for the economic developments of western industrial countries.
5. Developed countries maximum utilized these institutions in the initial stage

and established strong economic base.

7. Explain the attitude of Bretton Woods institutions towards developing countries.
 1. In the initial stage Bretton Woods institutions concentrated for the economic development of the industrial countries of western world.
 2. When Europe and Japan rebuilt their economy , they paid little attention on IMF and World Bank.
 3. Thereafter, These institutions turned towards developing countries and controlled their economy.
 4. The vital role of development in the developing countries assigned to MNCs of Europe and USA.
 5. These MNCs exploited maximum for their economic benefit.

CCT QUESTIONS

I. First world war was the first industrial war. It saw the use of machine guns, tanks, aircrafts, chemical weapons etc. on massive scale. These were all increasingly products of modern large scale industry. To fight the war , millions of soldiers had to be recruited from around the world and moved to the frontlines on large ships and trains. The scale of death and destruction; 9 million dead and 20 million injured –was unthinkable before the industrial age, without the use of industrial arms.

1. Why First World war was known as the industrial war?

Ans: It is for the first time different types of industrial weapons used in the war front.

2. What types of weapons used in the war?

Ans: Battle tanks, aircrafts, chemical weapons etc.

3. How did first world war affect European imperialist countries?

Ans: 1. Their economy faced serious set backs

2. They lost huge number of army men and civilian

3. Map of Europe changed.

II. The great depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid 1930's. During this period most parts of the world experienced catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. The exact timing and impact of the depression varied across countries. But in general , agricultural region and communities were the worst affected. This was because the fall in agricultural prices was greater and more prolonged than that in the prices of industrial goods.

1. What was the main reason for great depression of 1929?

Ans: Over production and fall of markets after the first world war.

2. Name the country where Great depression started?

Ans: USA

3. How did depression affect world economy?
 1. Thousands of banks and companies closed
 2. Unemployment spread widely
 3. Industries and markets collapsed.
 4. People lost their purchasing power.

1 MCQ QUESTIONS

1. Who was Sir Henry Morton Stanley?

- (a) Journalist
- (b) Author
- (c) Scientist
- (d) Industrialist

Ans: (a) Journalist

2. Where was Chutney music popular?

- (a) Fiji
- (b) Guyana
- (c) Trinidad
- (d) Both (b) and (c)

Ans: (d) Both (b) and (c)

3. Which disease spread like wild fire in Africa in the 1890's?

- (a) Rinderpest
- (b) Small pox
- (c) Pneumonia
- (d) None of these

Ans. (a) Rinderpest

4. Which was the fabled city of gold?

- (a) Peru
- (b) Mexico
- (c) El Dorado
- (d) Spain

Ans. (c) El Dorado

5. Which disease proved a deadly killer for America's original inhabitants?

- (a) Small pox
- (b) Chicken pox
- (c) Swine pox
- (d) None of the above

Ans. (a) Small pox

6. Who was John Winthrop?

- (a) New Hampshire
- (b) Pennsylvania
- (c) South Carolina
- (d) First Governor of the Massachusetts Bay colony

Ans. (d) First Governor of the Massachusetts Bay colony

7. Which food travelled West from China to be called spaghetti?

- (a) Soya
- (b) Ground Nut
- (c) Potato
- (d) noodles

Ans: (d) noodles

8. Which one of the following routes are a good example of vibrant pre - modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world?

- (a) The Garden route
- (b) The Silk route
- (c) The Great Ocean Road
- (d) None of the above

Ans. (b) The Silk route

9. What were the two common problems that prevailed in Europe until the 19th century.

- (a) Unemployment
- (b) Poverty
- (c) hunger
- (d) Both (b) & (c)

Ans. (d) Both (b) & (c)

10. Mention the two Asian countries that were counted among the world richest countries until the 18th century.

- (a) China & India
- (b) Mongolia & UAE
- (c) India & Japan
- (d) China & Japan

Ans.(a) China & India

11. What did 'indentured labour' mean ?

- (a) Cheap Labour
- (b) Free Labour
- (c) Bonded Labour
- (d) None of these

Ans: (c) Bonded Labour

12. One who refuses to accept established beliefs and practices known as:

- (a) Fanatic
- (b) Conventionalist
- (c) Liberal
- (d) Dissenter

Ans.(d) Dissenter

13. Name the main destinations of Indian indentured labours

- A. Europe
- B. China
- C. Japan
- D. West Indies

Ans: D) West Indies

14. Name the famous Indian descent who lived in West Indies and received Nobel Prize for literature

- A. Tagore
- B. Kalidas
- C. V. S. Naipaul
- D. Sudha Murthy

Ans: C) C V S Naipaul

15. Why did National Leaders oppose indentured labour migration from India?

- A. It was very cruel
- B. Health condition was poor
- C. Low wages
- D. All the above

Ans: D) All the above

16. Name the crop mainly export from India to China by Britain to meet their Import of tea and other products from China.

- A. Opium
- B. Jute
- C. Indigo
- D. Cotton

Ans: A) Opium

17. How Britain managed their "home charges"?

- A. Trade with China
- B. Surplus trade with India
- B. Trade with Africa
- C. None of the above

Ans: B) Trade with Africa

18. Ottoman Turkey was part of _____ blocs during first world war

- A. Central powers
- B. Tripple alliance
- C. NATO
- D. Allies

Ans: A) Central Powers

19. Russia was part of _____ blocs during first world war
A. Central powers B. Allies C. Axis powers D. None of the above

Ans: B) Allies

20. Who used “assembly line of production”?
A. TATA B. Henry Ford C. Bajaj D. All the above

Ans: B) Henry Ford

21. What was the main reason for great depression?
A. First world war B. Industrial growth
C. Over production D. None of the above

Ans: C) Over production

22. _____ Step was taken by US capitalists to recover their economy after First world war.

- A. Car production B. Decreasing production
C. Mass production D. None of the above

Ans: C) Mass production

23. Britain was part of which military bloc during second world war
A. Axis powers B. Allies C. Central powers D. None of the above

Ans: B

24. _____ are referred as Bretten Woods institutions.

- A. IMF and World Bank B. UNESCO C. WHO D. UNO

Ans: A) IMF & World bank

25. The Bretten Woods institutions benefitted to _____ Powers of the world.

- A. US and western powers B. African countries
C. Asian countries D. China and USSR

Ans: A) US and western countries

26. International trade is mainly controlled by _____

- A. USA B. Japan C. Britain D. MNC's

Ans: D) MNC's

27. _____ economic process started after the decline of Bretten Woods

Institutions.

A. Emergence of MNC's

B. Globalisation process

C. Flow of the capital

C. None of the above

Ans: B) Globalisation process

II. Short answer questions:

1. "Food offers many examples of long-distance cultural exchange." Support your answer with three examples.

Ans. (i) Traders and travellers introduced new crops to the lands they travelled.

(ii) It is believed that noodles travelled west from China to become spaghetti. (iii) Arab traders took pasta to fifth-century Sicily, an island now in Italy.

(iii) Many of our common foods such as potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes were not known to our ancestors until about five centuries ago. Christopher Columbus - America

2. The Spanish conquest and colonization of America was decisively underway by the mid-sixteenth century. 'Explain with examples.

What was the most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors of America? How did it pave the way for their conquest?

Ans.i) In fact, the most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors was not a conventional military weapon at all. It was the germs such as those of smallpox that they carried on their person.

ii) Because of their long isolation, America's original inhabitants had no immunity against these diseases that came from Europe. Small pox, in particular proved a deadly killer.

iii) Once introduced, it spread deep into the continent, ahead even of any Europeans reaching there. It killed and decimated whole communities, paving the way for conquest.

3. How did Rinderpest become instrumental in subjugating the Africans?

Ans. Rinderpest killed 90 per cent of the cattle.

The loss of cattle destroyed African livelihoods.

Planters, mine owners and colonial governments now successfully monopolised what scarce cattle resources remained, to strengthen their power and to force Africans into the labour market. Control over the scarce resource of cattle enabled European colonisers to conquer and subdue Africa.

4. Explain the three types of 'flows' within international economic exchanges.

Ans. Economists identify three types of movement or 'flows' within international economic exchanges.

- i) The first is the flow of trade which in the nineteenth century referred largely to trade in goods (e.g., cloth or wheat).
- ii) The second is the flow of labour – the migration of people in search of employment.
- iii) The third is the movement of capital for short-term or long-term investments over long distances.

5. What were the Corn laws? Why were they imposed?

Ans.i) Population growth from the late eighteenth century had increased the demand for food grains in Britain.

- ii) The laws allowing the government to restrict the import of corn were commonly known as 'Corn Laws'.
- iii) This was done under the pressure of landed groups.

6. How did Europe emerge as the important trade centre of the world?

India and China were the important trade centre of the world till 18thC.

In 18thc China began to restrict its overseas trade policy and gradually retreated to isolation.

America emerged as important exporter of various goods to European markets and occupied good position in Europe.

7. Why did thousands of people flee from Europe to America?

1. Until the 19th C, poverty and hunger was common in Europe
2. Cities were crowded and deadly diseases were wide spread
3. Religious conflicts were common and dissenters were persecuted

8. Which factors were responsible for the economic depression of 1929?

1. Agricultural overproduction led to falling of agricultural economy
2. Agricultural income declined
3. US overseas lenders panicked due to collapse of their economy and could not repay the money

9. State how America's trade enhanced after its discovery

1. Before its discovery America had been cut off from regular contact with the rest of the world for millions of years.
2. 16th C onwards America utilized its vast land, minerals and other resources scientifically.
3. Many expeditions set off in search of El Dorado the fable city of gold

10. Why did people start migrating to the other continents from Europe?
 1. The demand for labour in America and Australia led to more migration
 2. Nearly 50million people were migrated to US and Australia from Europe
During 19thC.
 3. Millions of people migrated to different parts of the world for better future

11. What complex changes took place in the global agricultural economy by 1890?
 1. By 1890 , a global agricultural economy had taken shape accompanied by complex changes in labour movement patterns, capital flows, and technology.
 2. Food no longer came from a nearby village or town, but from thousands of miles away.
 3. New types of agriculture production started by clearing vast forest cover.

12. Why were Europeans attracted to Africa?
 1. Europeans attracted to Africa due to its vast land and mineral resources
 2. They wanted more raw materials to support their industry in Europe by exporting resources from Africa.
 3. Availability of cheap labour force

13. What were the main destinations of Indian indentured labourers?
 1. Carribean islands mainly Trinidad, Guyana, Surinam, Mauritius and Fiji
 2. Tamil migrants went to Ceylon and Malaya
 3. Indentured workers were also recruited for tea plantations in Assam.

14. What was the role of Indian bankers in managing their funds?
 1. Bankers like Shikripuri Shroffs and Nattukottai Chettiars were amongst the many groups of bankers and traders who financed export agriculture in central and south- east Asia.
 2. They used their own funds and borrowed loan from European Banks.
 3. They had sophisticated system to transfer money over large distances and even developed indigenous forms of corporate organisation.

15. What two crucial influences shaped post war reconstruction?
 1. US's emergence as the dominant political , economical and military power
In the western world.
 2. Development of USSR as super power after second world war.

16. Why did Bretton woods institutions shift its attention towards developing countries?
 1. IMF and World Bank were designed to meet the financial needs of the
Industrial countries.

2. They were not able to cope with the challenge of poverty and lack of development in the former colonies.

3. As Europe and Japan depended less on IMF and World Bank after 1950s
They turned towards developing country.

17. Explain the strategy followed to retain labour in Africa?

1. Heavy taxes were imposed which could pay only if people are earning
2. Inheritance laws were changed so that peasants were displaced from the land.
3. Mine workers also confined in compounds and not allowed to move freely.

III. Long answer questions

1. Explain any five characteristics of silk route.

Ans. i) The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world. The name 'silk routes' points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route.

ii) Historians have identified several silk routes, over land and by sea, knitting together vast regions of Asia, and linking Asia with Europe and northern Africa.

iii) They are known to have existed since before the Christian Era and thrived almost till the fifteenth century.

iv) Chinese pottery, textiles and spices from India travelled to Europe. In return, precious metals - gold and silver flowed from Europe to Asia.

v) Silk routes were also used to spread religions. Buddhism emerged from eastern India and spread in several directions through intersecting points on the silk routes.

2. Describe any five effects of the abolition of 'Corn Laws' in Britain.

Ans. The industrialists and urban dwellers in Britain forced the government the abolition of the Corn Laws.

a) After the Corn Laws were scrapped, food could be imported into Britain more cheaply than it could be produced within the country.

ii) British agriculture was unable to compete with imports.

iii) Vast areas of land were now left uncultivated, and thousands of men and women were thrown out of work.

iv) They flocked to the cities or migrated overseas.

v) As food prices fell, consumption in Britain rose.

3. How did technology help to solve hardship of food availability through the world in the 19th century world?

- Ans. i) Faster railways, lighter wagons and larger ships helped move food more cheaply and quickly from faraway farms to final markets.
- ii) Earlier animals were shipped live from America to Europe and then slaughtered when they arrived there. Meat was hence an expensive luxury beyond the reach of the European poor.
- iii) Then came a new technology, refrigerated ships, which enabled the transport of perishable foods over long distances.
- iv) Now animals were slaughtered for food at the starting point and then transported to Europe as frozen meat.
- v) The poor in Europe could now consume a more varied diet. Better living conditions promoted social peace within the country and support for imperialism abroad.

4. Indentured labour has been described as new system of slavery. Explain

1. Indentured labours had no freedom of work and they were not permitted to go to their native places by European plantation owners.
2. They were forced to work for low wages
3. They had to work long distances in the mining areas and plantations
4. They had to work long hours without proper facilities.
5. Their health condition was very miserable.
6. They were recruited by agents by giving false informations.

5. Explain the role played by Indian entrepreneurs abroad

1. Indian entrepreneurs like Shikaripuri Shroffs and NattuKottai Chettiar Worked as bankers and traders who financed export of agricultural products to Central and south-east Asian countries by using their funds.
2. They had their own system to transfer money over large distances and developed their own system of corporate organisation.
3. Hyderabadindi sindi traders made contact beyond European colonies
4. They had established emporia at busy ports world wide selling local and imported artifacts to tourists.

6. The important feature of the US economy in the 1920s was mass production.

Explain.

1. Henry Ford started mass car production in US
2. He adopted the technique of assembly line of production that helped him to produce faster and cheaper way.
3. Production increased fast in factories due to repeat a single task mechanically.
4. Wages of the workers increased to speed up the production activities.
5. Doubling of daily wages was considered the 'Best cost-cutting decision' he had ever made.

7. Assess the impact of Economic Depression of 1929 on US economy.
 1. More than 4000 banks closed and 110,000 companies collapsed.
 2. People lost their employment and bank savings.
 3. Farmers could not sell their production , households were ruined and business collapsed.
 4. Many households could not repay what they had borrowed and were forced to give up their homes ,cars and other durable items.
 5. Ultimately US economy was shattered and faced deep crisis.

8. Briefly outline the achievements of Bretton Woods institutions in the initial stage of its existence.
 1. These institutions inaugurated unprecedented developments in the field of trade and income for the western powers and Japan.
 2. Developing countries also made good contribution in the initial stage of existence.
 3. Developing countries imported technologies and capital from developed countries that helped to boost their capital
 4. Bretton Woods institutions , IMF and World Bank , mainly concentrated for the economic developments of western industrial countries.
 5. Developed countries maximum utilized these institutions in the initial stage and established strong economic base.

9. Explain the attitude of Bretton Woods institutions towards developing countries.
 1. In the initial stage Bretton Woods institutions concentrated for the economic development of the industrial countries of western world.
 2. When Europe and Japan rebuilt their economy , they paid little attention on IMF and World Bank.
 3. Thereafter, These institutions turned towards developing countries and controlled their economy.
 4. The vital role of development in the developing countries assigned to MNCs of Europe and USA.
 5. These MNCs exploited maximum for their economic benefit.

IV. CCT QUESTIONS

I. First world war was the first industrial war. It saw the use of machine guns, tanks, aircrafts, chemical weapons etc. on massive scale. These were all increasingly products of modern large scale industry. To fight the war , millions of soldiers had to be recruited from around the world and moved to the frontlines on large ships and trains. The scale of death and destruction; 9 million dead and 20 million injured –was unthinkable before the industrial age, without the use of industrial arms.

1. Why First World war was known as the industrial war?

Ans: It is for the first time different types of industrial weapons used in the war front.

2. What types of weapons used in the war?

Ans: Battle tanks, aircrafts, chemical weapons etc.

3. How did first world war affect European imperialist countries?

Ans: 1. Their economy faced serious set backs

2. They lost huge number of army men and civilliance

3. Map of Europe changed.

II. The great depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid 1930's. During this period most parts of the world experienced catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. The exact timing and impact of the depression varied across countries. But in general , agricultural region and communities were the worst affected. This was because the fall in agricultural prices was greater and more prolong than that in the prices of industrial goods.

1. What was the main reason for great depression of 1929?

Ans: Over production and fall of markets after the first world war.

2. Name the country where Great depression started?

Ans: USA

3. How did depression affect world economy?

1. Thousands of banks and companies closed

2. Unemployment spread widely

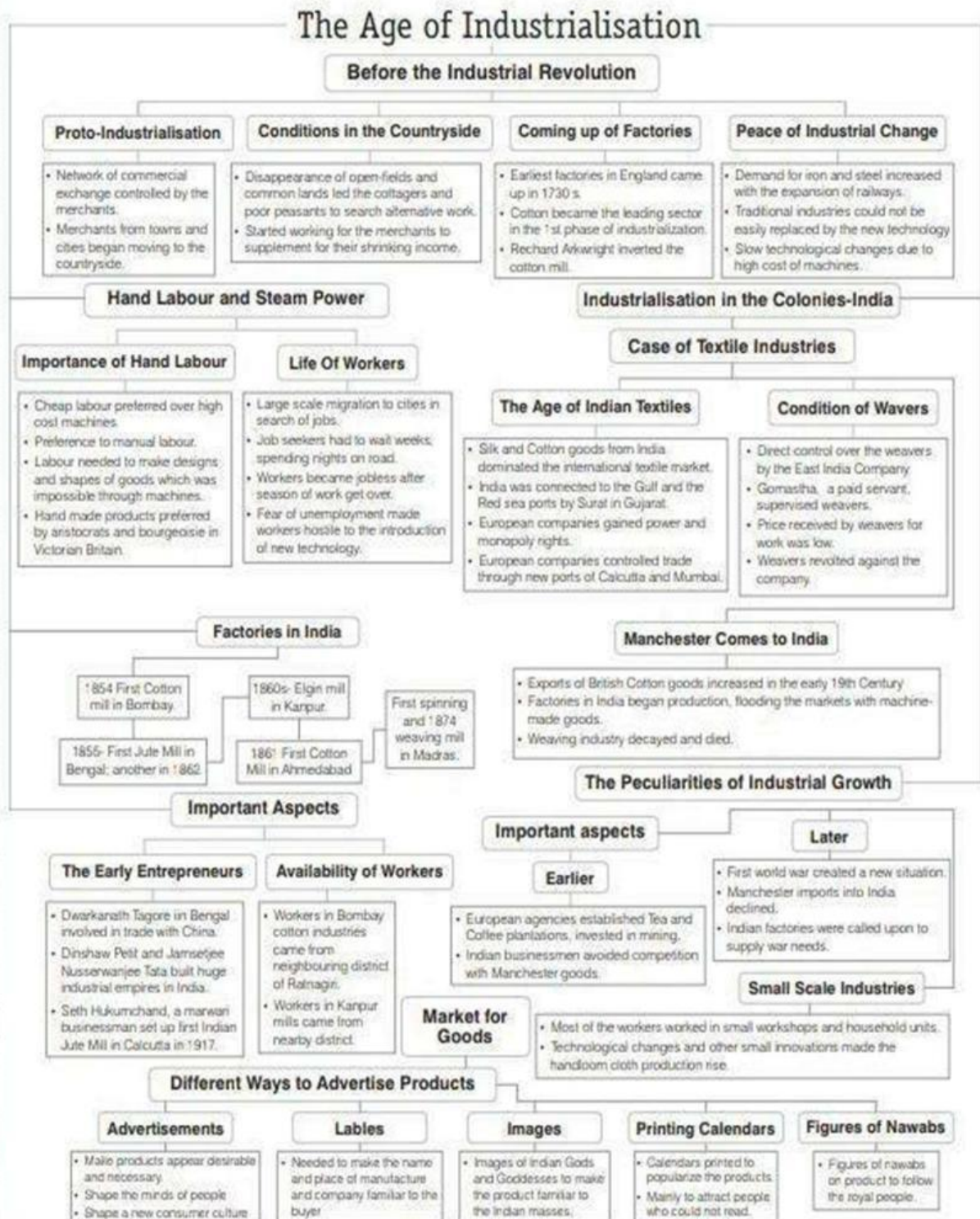
3. Industries and markets collapsed.

4. People lost their purchasing power.

CHAPTER 4

THE AGE OF INDUSTRIALISATION

FLOW CHART



KEY WORDS/ TERMS:

Guilds: These were associations of producers that trained craftspeople maintained control over production, regulated competition and prices. and restricted the entry of new people within the trade. Rulers granted different guilds the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products.

Spinning Jenny : It was a machine devised by James Hargreaves to speed up the spinning process. The machine could set in motion a number of spindles and spin several threads at the same time.

Gomasthas:They were the paid servants of the East India Company who used to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth.

Fly-Shuttle: It is a mechanical device used for weaving moved by means of ropes and pulleys. It places the horizontal threads (called the weft) into the vertical threads (called the warp). The invention of the fly shuttle made it possible for weavers to operate large looms and weave wide pieces of cloth.

Jobber: Jobber was an old and trusted worker employed by the Indian industrialists to recruit the new workers.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (1 Mark)

1. Who was the producer of the music book having a picture on the counter page entitled, Dawn of the Century?

- a) E.T. Paull b) Jefferson
- c) Elizabeth Paul d) Graham Bell

Ans: a

2. Which of the following is in the center of the picture?

- a) A Goddess like figure b) A God like figure
- c) Sun d) Moon

Ans: a

3. What symbolizes the wheel with wings?

- a) Time b) Progress
- c) Carriage d) Future

Ans: a

4. Which part of the world is represented by Aladdin?

- a) West
- b) Orient
- c) North
- d) South

Ans:b

5. In the period of proto-industrialization, production was carried at?

- a) Countryside
- b) Town
- c) Both a and b
- d) None

Ans:c

6. During which period the earliest of factory came up in England?

- a) 1760s
- b) 1730s
- c) 1600s
- d) 1740s

Ans:b

7. Who created the Cotton Mill?

- a) J C Cotton
- b) R L Cotton
- c) Richard Arkwright
- d) None

Ans:c

8. The most dynamic industries in Britain were said to be of

- a) Cotton
- b) Metal
- c) Coal
- d) Cotton and Metal

Ans:d

9. What was the period of first phase of industrialization?

- a) Up to 1840s
- b) Up to 1860s
- c) Up to 1830s
- d) Up to 1850s

Ans:a

10. Railways' expansion began in England in

- a) 1850s
- b) 1840s

c) 1820s

d) 1860s

Ans:a

11. The expansion of railways took place in colonies in

a) 1840s

b) 1820s

c) 1880s

d) 1860s

Ans:d

12. The expansion of railways boosted which of the following industries?

a) Cotton and Metal

b) Iron and steel

c) Mining

d) Wooden

Ans:b

13. What did James Watt do to the steam engine produced by Newcomen?

a) Improvement

b) Disbursement

c) Both a and b

d) None

Ans:a

14. In which year James Watt got patent of the steam engine?

a) 1760

b) 1781

c) 1784

d) 1789

Ans:b

15. Who was the author of “Comers and Goers”?

a) Michael Wolf

b) Raphael Samuel

c) Henry Cook

d) None

Ans:b

16. What's the Illustrated London News?

a) Book

b) Magazine

c) Newspaper

d) None

Ans:c

17. Spinning Jenny was devised by

- a) John Mathew b) James Hargreaves
- c) James Princep d) None

Ans:b

18. The drawing of spinning jenny in 1835 belonged to

- a) James Hargreaves b) T E Nicholas
- c) S Nicholas d) None

Ans:b

19. Spinning Jenny was commissioned in

- a) 1764 b)1835
- c) 1730 d) 1760

Ans:b

20. Which of the following were main pre-colonial ports of India?

- a) Surat, Bombay, Tuticorin b) Surat, Hoogly, Calcutta
- c) Surat, Hoogly, Masulipatam d) Surat, Hoogly, Madras

Ans:c

21. In 1854 the first cotton mill of India was established in ?

- a) Calcutta b) Madras
- c) Bombay d) Ahmedabad

Ans: c

22. The first spinning and weaving mill of Madras began production in

- a) By 1784 b) By 1874
- c)By 1866 d) By 1854

Ans:b

23. Opium trade was conducted with which of the following country?

- a) Sri Lanka b) Burma

c) China

d) Iran

Ans:c

24. Which of the following was set by Dwarkanath Tagore ?

a) Individual Companies

b) Joint Stock Company

c) Spinning Company d) Steel Industry

Ans:b

25. What do you mean by 'fly shuttle'?

a) A mechanical device, used by weavers, moved by means of ropes and pulleys

b) A mechanical device which increased production in factories

c) The device which places horizontal threads (the weft) into the vertical threads (the warp)

d) None of these

Ans:a

1 MARK QUESTION:

1.Name two industrialists of Bombay who built huge industries empire during the nineteenth century.?

Ans.) Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata.

2.Which ports had trade links with South Asia ports?

Ans.Masulipattanam, Hooghly and surat.

3.How was the nationalist message of Swadeshi spread?

Ans. Through advertisements.

4.Where were most of the large-scale industries located in 1911?

Ans. Bengal and Bombay.

5.Why did some industrialists in nineteenth century Europe prefer hand labour over machines ? State any one factor.

Ans

In industries such as gas works, breweries, where production fluctuated with the season, industrialists usually preferred hand labour over machines.

6. What was the importance of Surat port in the sixteenth century ?

Ans

A vibrant sea trade operated through Surat on the Gujarat coast. It connected India to the Gulf and Red Sea Ports.

7.Mention any one reason that led to clashes between weavers and gomasthas.

Ans

The gomasthas were outsiders, with no long-term social link with the village. They acted

arrogantly, marched into villages with sepoy and peons, and punished weavers for delays in supply – often beating and flogging them.

8. What did Henry Patullo, a company official, say about Indian textiles ?

Ans

Henry Patullo, a company official said that the demand for Indian textiles could never reduce, since no other nation produced goods of the same quality.

9. Name any two European Managing Agencies which till the First World War controlled a large sector of Indian industries.

Ans: a) Bird Heiglers and Co. (b) Jardine Skinner and Co.

10. Generally from where did the workers come from to work in factories ?

Ans

In most industrial regions workers came from the districts around e.g., the mills of Kanpur got most of their textile workers from the villages within the district of Kanpur.

11. What was the main function of a jobber ?

Ans

The main function of the jobber was to get new recruits.

12. How were the working conditions in the 19th century in India ?

Ans

The working conditions were not good e.g., the shift was 10 hours from 5 pm to 3 am.

3 MARK QUESTIONS:

1. Explain any three causes which led to the decline of Indian cotton textiles in the early nineteenth century.

Ans. (i) The British cotton manufactures began to expand.

(ii) They pressurised the government to restrict cotton imports.

(iii) They began to search the overseas markets for selling their cloth

(iv) Indian textiles faced stiff competition in other international market.

(v) There was a decline in the share of the textile.

(vi) Tariffs were imposed on the cloth imports into Britain.

2. Describe the contribution of Dwarkanath Tagore as an entrepreneur in Bengal.

Ans (i) Dwarka Nath Tagore believed that India would develop through westernization and industrialization

(i) He invested in shipping, mining, banking, plantation and insurance.

(ii) He made his fortune in China trade before he turned to industrial investment, setting up six joint stock companies in the 1830s and 1840s.

3. Explain with examples the importance of advertisement in the marketing of the goods.

Ans. (i) Advertisements play a very vital role in the marketing of any products. One way in which new consumers are created is through advertisements.

(ii) Advertisements make products appear desirable and necessary.

They try to shape the minds of the people and new needs.

iii) Today, we live in a world where advertisements surround us.

4. Why did some industrialists in 19th century prefer hand labour over machines?

Ans: In Britain upper class preferred. Hand made goods came to symbolize, by exclusively refinement and class

ii) Shortage of human labour was not there.

III) Introduces a machine required

5. How did the system of advances tie the poor weavers to the company?

Ans: (i) Under the system of advances, once the order was placed, the weavers were given loans to purchase the raw material for their production. Those who took loans had to hand over the cloth they produced to the company. They could not sell it to any other trader.

(ii) In the beginning, the poor weavers were happy. They eagerly took the advances, hoping to earn more. They leased out their land which they had earlier cultivated along with weaving and devoted all their time to weaving. They also engaged their children and women in different stages of the process.

(iii) The innocent weavers were least aware of the fact that they had lost their freedom and space to bargain for prices and sell to different buyers. The price they received from the company was miserably low and the loans they had received tied them to the company.

5. Why were there frequent clashes between Indian weavers and the Company gomasthas?

Give three reasons.

Ans: The company gomasthas were appointed to supervise weavers, collect supplies, and examine the quality of cloth.

However, in many weaving villages there were reports of clashes between weavers and these gomasthas.

a) Earlier supply merchants were those who lived within the weaving villages, and had a close relationship with the weavers. The new gomasthas were outsiders, with no long term link with the village.

b) They acted arrogantly, marched into villages with sepoy and peons, and punished weavers for delays in supplies.

c) The weavers lost the space to bargain for prices and sell to different buyers. The price they received from the company was very low. In extreme frustration these weavers revolted, opposing these gomasthas.

5 MARKS QUESTIONS:

1. Why did the export of Indian textiles decline at the beginning of the nineteenth century?

Ans. (i). Britain imposed import duties on cotton textiles, thus export market declined.

(ii) Exports of British goods to India increased. The Manchester goods flooded Indian markets.

(iii) The machine-made goods were economical and Indian weavers could not compete with them.

(iv). Raw cotton exports from India to Britain led to an increase in the prices of cotton.

2. Describe any three major problems faced by Indian cotton weavers in nineteenth century?

Ans. Major problems faced by the Indian cotton weavers

(i) Their export market collapsed.

(ii) The local market shrunk.

(iii) Increase in price of raw cotton

(iv) Shortage of cotton

(v) Difficulty of weavers to compete with the imported machine made cheaper cotton products.

(vi) Factories in India also began cheaper machine made goods to which our weavers could not compete.

6. “ Serious of changes affected the pattern of industrialization in India by the early twentieth century” Analyze the statement.

Ans. Series of changes affected the pattern of industrialization in India by the early twentieth century.

(i) As the Swadeshi Movement gathered, momentum nationalists mobilized people to boycott foreign cloth.

(ii) Industrial groups organized themselves to protect their collective interest.

(iii) Pressurizing the government to increase tariff protection and grant other concessions.

(iv) The export of Indian yarn to China declined.

(v) Industrialists in India began shifting from yarn to cloth production.

(vi) Cotton piece goods production in India doubled between 1900-1912.

7. Describe the techniques which were adopted by the Manchester industrialists to sell their goods in India.

Ans (i) The Manchester made cloth carried a label with ‘Made in Manchester’ written in bold. This assured the buyers of the quality of the cloth.

(ii) The British manufacturers used images of Indian gods and goddesses on the labels. It symbolized the divine approval for the commodity. It also created familiarity with Indian buyers.

(iii) Manufacturers got calendars printed with the images of gods and the advertisements of their products make products appear desirable and necessary.

(iv) Images of historical characters and heroes from the past were also displayed on calendars, thus sending the message that the product was as worthy of respect as were these respectable characters.

v) The Indian manufacturers printed the images of Bharat Mata and nationalist message on the labels. They also printed 'Made in India' on the labels, thus appealing nationalist sentiments.

5. How did East India Company procure regular supplies of cotton and silk textiles from Indian weavers

Ans. (a) Asserted a monopoly right to trade.

(b) Eliminate the existing traders and brokers connected with the cloth trade and establish direct control over the weaver

(c) Appointed gomasta to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth

(d) System of advances-

(e) Gave loan to purchase the raw materials.

6. Mention the contributions of the following entrepreneurs in the industrialisation of India

- Dwarkanath Tagore
- Dinshaw Petit
- Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata
- Seth Hukumchand
- G.D. Birla

Dwarkanath Tagore:

In Bengal, he made his fortune in the China trade before he turned to industrial investment, setting up six joint-stock companies in the 1830s and 1840s. Although Tagore's enterprises sank along with those of others in the wider business crises of the 1840s, later in the nineteenth century many of the China traders became successful industrialists.

Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata:

They were Parsi businessmen. They built huge industrial empires in India, accumulated their initial wealth partly from exports to China, and partly from raw cotton shipments to England.

Seth Hukumchand:

He was a Marwari businessman who set up the first Indian jute mill in Calcutta in 1917. He also traded with China.

G.D. Birla:

He was also a Marwari businessman and traded with China. He played an important role in industrialising India.

Over the years, the space within which Indian merchants could function became increasingly limited. They were barred from trading with Europe in manufactured goods, and had to export mostly raw materials and food grains like raw cotton, opium, wheat and indigo which the British required. They were also gradually edged out of the shipping business.

7. Why did industrialists in Victorian Britain want to stick to human labour in spite of the introduction of new technologies and machines?

Ans) Some industrialists in nineteenth-century Europe preferred hand labour over machines because of the following reasons:

(i) There was no dearth of human labour during this period. Poor peasants and migrants moved to cities in large numbers in search of jobs. They were ready to work at low wages. So industrialists did not want to introduce machines.

(ii) In many industries such as gas works and breweries, the demand for labour was seasonal. Since, in these industries production fluctuated with the season, so industrialists usually preferred hand labour, employing workers for the season.

(iii) A range of products could be produced only with hand labour. Machines were oriented to producing uniforms, standardised goods for a mass market. But the demand in the market was often for goods with intricate designs and specific shapes. In mid-nineteenth-century Britain, several varieties of hammers and axes were produced. These required human skill, not machines.

(iv) In nineteenth-century Britain, the aristocrats and the bourgeoisie preferred things produced by hand. Handmade products were better finished, individually produced and carefully designed. Machine-made goods were for export to the colonies.

8. Enumerate five factors that caused Industrial Revolution in England.

Ans) Five factors that caused Industrial Revolution in England are given below:

(i) Growth of an international market: An international market began to grow in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Therefore, merchants from towns in Europe moved to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for the international market.

(ii) Growing demand for goods: With the expansion of world trade and the acquisition of colonies in different parts of the world, the demand for goods began growing. These goods were produced by a vast number of producers working within their family farms.

(iii) Availability of capital: British traders were experts in trade. They traded in foreign countries and accumulated vast amount of capital which they invested in setting up factories.

(iv) New inventions: There occurred a series of inventions in the eighteenth century. These inventions increased the efficacy of each step of the production process. They enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more and they made possible the production of stronger threads and yarn. Richard Arkwright's cotton mill proved to be a big factor for causing Industrial Revolution in England.

(v) Availability of natural resources: England had no dearth of natural resources like iron ore and coal. Needless to say that these are the base of industries. England used these resources to establish a number of industries.

9. Give the reasons why the network of export trade in textiles controlled by Indian merchants broke down by the 1750s?

(i) The European companies gradually gained power – first securing a variety of concessions from local courts, then the monopoly rights to trade. This resulted in a decline of the old ports of Surat and Hoogly through which local merchants had operated.

(ii) Exports from these ports fell dramatically, the credit that had financed the earlier trade began drying up, and the local bankers slowly went bankrupt.

(iii) While Surat and Hoogly decayed, Bombay and Calcutta grew. This shift from the old ports to the new ones was an indicator of the growth of colonial power.

(iv) Trade through the new ports came to be controlled by European companies, and was carried in European ships.

(v) Many of the old trading houses, therefore, collapsed. Those that wanted to survive had to now operate within a network shaped by European trading companies.

PICTURE BASED QUESTIONS:

Q.1. Who published “Dawn of the century” in 1900?



- a) William Bell Scott
- b) Samuel Luke Fildes
- c) E T Paull
- d) James Watt

Answer: (c) E T Paull

Q.2. Who devised the spinning jenny in 1764?



- a) Newcomen
- b) James Hargreaves
- c) T E Nicholson
- d) C E Turner

Answer: James Hargreaves

Q.3. Identify the person in the picture.



- a) Jamshedji Jeejeebhoy
- b) J N Tata
- c) Bhai Bhosle
- d) Dwarknath Tagore

Answer: Dwarknath Tagore

SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS:

1. Read the following paragraph and answer the following:

Even before factories began to dot the landscape in England and Europe, there was large-scale industrial production for an international market. This was not based on factories. Many historians now refer to this phase of industrialization as proto-industrialization.

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for an

international market. With the expansion of world trade and the acquisition of colonies in different parts of the world, the demand for goods began growing. But merchants could not expand production within towns. This was because here urban crafts and trade guilds were powerful. These were associations of producers that trained craftspeople, maintained control over production, regulated competition and prices, and restricted the entry of new people into the trade. Rulers granted different guilds the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products. It was therefore difficult for new merchants to set up business in towns. So they turned to the countryside.

Q.1. Which country is known as the cradle of industrialization ? (1)

Q.2. What is proto industrialization? (1)

Q.3. What are trade guilds? (1)

Q.4. What were the reasons for the movement of merchants of Europe from towns to countryside in seventeenth and eighteenth centuries? (2)

Answers:

Q.1. England

Q.2. Even before factories began to dot the landscape in England and Europe, there was large-scale industrial production for an international market. This was not based on factories. This phase of industrialisation as proto-industrialisation.

Q.3. These were associations of producers that trained craftspeople, maintained control over production, regulated competition and prices, and restricted the entry of new people into the trade.

Q.4.

1. With the expansion of world trade and the acquisition of colonies in different parts of the world, the demand for goods began growing.

2. Rulers granted different guilds the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products. It was therefore difficult for new merchants to set up business in towns. So they turned to the countryside.

2. Read the following paragraph and answer the following

By the first decade of the twentieth century a series of changes affected the pattern of industrialisation. As the swadeshi movement gathered momentum, nationalists mobilised people to boycott foreign cloth. Industrial groups organised themselves to protect their collective interests, pressurising the government to increase tariff protection and grant other concessions. From 1906, moreover, the export of Indian yarn to China declined since produce from Chinese and Japanese mills flooded the Chinese market. So industrialists in India began shifting from yarn to cloth production. Cotton piecegoods production in India doubled between 1900 and 1912.

Yet, till the First World War, industrial growth was slow. The war created a dramatically new situation. With British mills busy with war production to meet the needs of the army, Manchester imports into India declined. Suddenly, Indian mills had a vast home market to supply. As the war prolonged, Indian factories were called upon to supply war needs: jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents and leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a host of other items. New factories were set up and old India and the Contemporary World 122 ones ran multiple shifts. Many new workers were employed and everyone was made to work longer hours. Over the war years industrial production boomed.

Q.1. How did the Swadeshi movement affect the industrialisation in India? (1)

Q.2. What were the items demanded from Indian factories at the time of World War I? (1)

Q.3.“By the first decade of the twentieth century a series of changes affected the pattern of industrialization in India.Support the statement

Answers:

Q.1. Swadeshi movement encouraged the production of good within India and persuaded the people to boycott foreign goods.

Q.2. Indian factories were called upon to supply war needs: jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents and leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a host of other items.

Q.3.

1.Swadeshi and Boycott movement

2.World War I

3.Read the following paragraph and answer the following

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for an international market. With the expansion of world trade and the acquisition of colonies in different parts of the world, the demand for goods began growing, But merchants could not expand production within towns. This was because here urban crafts and trade guilds were powerful. These were associations of producers that trained craftspeople, maintained control over production, regulated competition and prices, and restricted the entry of new people into the trade. Rulers granted different guilds the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products. It was therefore difficult for new merchants to set up business in towns. So they turned to the countryside.

1.What is a guild?

2.Why did the merchants turn to country side?

3.What factors led to an increase in demand for goods?

Answers:

1.**Guilds** were associations of producers that trained craftspeople who had the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products.

2.To supply money to artisans and to produce for international market.

3.Expansion of world trade and acquisition of more colonies.

CHAPTER 5

PRINT CULTURE AND THE MODERN WORLD

Important Date Lines

768-770AD - Introduction Of hand printing technologetechnology Into japan

868AD - The oldest Japanese book. The diamond Sutra was printed.

1295- Marco Polo brought the knowledge of producing books with woodblocks to Europe.

1430- Johann Gutenberg developed first well known printing press.

1448- Gutenberg printed his first book The Bible.

1517- Martin Luther wrote 95 theses.

1713- Catholic priests printed the first Malayalam book.

Mid 16th century - Print comes to India, First printing press set up in Kolkata.

1812- Grimm brother in Germany published collection of traditional folk tales.

1871- Jyotiba Phule wrote gulamgiri about the injustices of the caste system.

1876 - Rashsundari Devi wrote her autobiography Amar jiban.

1878- Vernacular press act was passed.

1907- Bal Gangadar Tilak published kesar.

1938- Kashibaba published " Chote or bade ka seawall ".

Keywords

Vellum :- A parchment made from the skin of animals.

Vlema :- Legal scholar of Islam and the sharia.

Ballad :- A historical account or folk tales usually sung or recited.

Taverns :- places where people gather to drink alcohol to be served food and to meet friends.

Chapbook :- A term used to describe pocket size books that are sold by traveling pedlars called Chapman.

Novel :- Modern form of literature.

The first printed book

CHINA

Buddhist missionaries introduced hand printing technology in Japan

Print comes to Europe

Silk Route

Luxury editions were still Handwritten on very expensive vellum and rich monastic libraries merchants and students in the university towns bought the cheaper printed copys.

GUTENBERG AND THE PRINTING PRESS

In Germany, Johan Gutenberg developed first known printing press

The new technology Did not entirely displaced the existing art of producing books by hand

THE PRINT REVOLUTION AND ITS IMPACT

A new reading public

Books flooded the market

Content to include the common people into reading group

Popular ballads were included

Folk tales

Books were illustrated with pictures

RELIGIOUS DEBATE AND THE FEAR OF PRINTS

Criticism of new printed literature

In 1570 Martin Luther wrote ninety five theses

Criticise many of the practices and ritual of Roman Catholic Church

Print and Dissent

When the Roman church began its inquisition to repress heretical ideas, Menocchio was hauled up twice and ultimately executed.

Booksellers and began to maintain an index of prohibited books from 1558.

THE READING MANIA

Setting up of schools by churches of different denominations.

New form of popular literature appeared in print

In France BILIOTHIC BLEUE were sold.

Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the world

TREMBLE - Involuntary shaking or movement

TYRANTS - Cruel and oppressive ruler.

PRINT CULTURE AND THE FRENCH REVOLUTION

print culture created the conditions within which French revolution occurred

1. Print popularised the ideas of enlightened thinkers
2. Print created a new culture of dialogues and debates
3. Outpouring of literature mocked the royalty and criticised their morality

Print did not directly shape their minds, but it did open up the possibility of thinking differently

THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

Women became an important readers as well as writers

Censorship

Power-driven cylindrical press by Richard M. Hoe.

Offset press was developed which could print up to six colours at a time

India And The World of Prints

Manuscripts were used before the age of print

Bengal Gazette Published by Gangadhar Bhattacharya

RELIGIOUS REFORMS AND PUBLIC DEBATES

In this course print not only spread the new ideas, but they shaped the nature of debate.

Samba Kaumudi - Rammohan Roy

Samachar Chandrika - Hindu orthodox

From 1821, Persian newspaper Jam-I-Jahan Nama and Shanmukha Akbar

Impact of print among Hindu and Muslims

Religious texts, therefore reached a very wide circle of people, encouraging discussions, debates and controversies within and among different religions.

NEW FORM OF PUBLICATIONS

1. NOVELS
2. PAINTING
3. CARICATURES AND CARTOONS
4. NEW LITERARY FORMS

WOMEN AND PRINTS

Muslims feared that educated women would be corrupted

Hindu conservatives believe that a literate girl would be widowed.

Tarabai Shinde and Pandita Rama Bai wrote with passionate about the miserable lives of upper caste Hindu women.

Vernacular press were devoted for education of women.

PRINT AND THE POOR PEOPLE

Very cheap small books were sold at crossroads

Issues of caste discrimination began to be written

Involvement of people from working class in writing

PRINT AND CENSORSHIP

BY 1820 - Calcutta Supreme Court Passed certain regulation to control press freedom

1835, Governor General Bentinck revised press law on request of editors of English and vernacular newspaper

But after the revolt of 1857, censorship became strict vernacular press act, 1878 was passed.

One Mark Questions

'Liberty of speech ... liberty of the press ... freedom of association. The government of India is now seeking to crush the three powerful vehicles of expression and cultivating public opinion. The fight for swaraj, for Khilafat ... means a fight for this threatened freedom before all else ...'

1. The above statement was given in 1922 by _____.

2. This page belongs to the oldest Japanese Book printed in AD 868. Name the book.



3. Name the person in the portrait.



4.



Name the painter who painted this famous painting in which Raja Ritudhwaj is rescuing Princess Madalsa from the captivity of demons.

5. Define Calligraphy.

6. _____ was a German goldsmith and inventor credited with inventing the movable type of printing in Europe.

7. Define Despotism.

8. Define Bibliotheque Bleue.

9. Name the countries where the earliest kind of print technology was developed.

10. Name the first book published by Johann Gutenberg.

11. Who were scribes?

12. A historical account or folk tale in verse, usually sung or recited were called _____.

13. Who said "Printing is the ultimate gift of God and the greatest one ?

14. When did the first printing press come to India?

15. Name the first weekly that appeared in India. Who brought it out ?

16. Define Fatwa.

17. Who printed the first Tamil book ?

18. Who invented power driven cylindrical press ?

19. Name the paper with which Bal Gangadhar Tilak was associated.

20. Who introduced hand printing technology in Japan?

21. Which method of hand printing was developed in China?

22. What were Penny Chapbooks?

23. What was a Ukiyo?

24. Which city of Europe had the breakthrough of first printing press?

25. _____ was the art of woodblock printing introduced in Europe.

Three Mark Questions

26. Write a short note on Indian manuscripts.

27. Give a brief description of the first form of print technology.

28. "Woodblock print came to Europe after 1295". Give any three reasons to explain the above statement.

29. Why were the printed books popular even among illiterate people ?

30. Mention any four social values which print culture promoted.

31. Write a short note on Martin Luther.
32. Write a short note on Gutenberg Printing Press.
33. What was Vernacular press act?
34. What is the relevance of the chapter 'Print Culture and the Modern World'?
35. "The imperial state in China was the major producer of printed material." Support this statement with examples.
36. Describe any three difficulties in copying manuscripts.

Five Mark Questions

37. Analyse the impact of print revolution on religion.
38. How did the print media affect the women in India?
39. How did the practice of reading and writing increase among women in India in the 19th century. Support your answer with the help of examples.
40. What were the effects of the spread of print culture for the poor people In the 19th century India ?
41. Explain any two:
 - a. Martin Luther was in favour of print and spoke out in praise of it.
 - b. The Roman Catholic Church began keeping an Index of Prohibited books from the mid-sixteenth century.
 - c. Gandhi said the fight for 'Swaraj is a fight for the liberty of speech, liberty of the press, and freedom of association.

One Mark Questions

1. Mahatma Gandhi
2. Diamond Sutra
3. Johann Gutenberg
4. Ravi Varma
5. The art of beautiful and Stylish writing is known as calligraphy.
6. Johann Gutenberg
7. **Despotism** : A system of governance in which absolute power is exercised by an individual, unregulated by legal and constitutional checks.
8. **Biliotheque Bleue** : These are low priced small books printed in France These were printed on poor quality paper and bound in cheap blue covers.
9. China (ii) Japan (iii) Korea
10. Bible
11. Scribes were skilled persons who used to write manuscript for the publishers.
12. Ballads
13. Martin Luther
14. First Printing press came to Goa with Portuguese missionaries in the mid-16th century.
15. James Augustus Hickey.
16. A legal pronouncement on Islamic law usually given by a mufti (legal scholar) to clarify issues on which the law is uncertain.
17. Catholic priests printed the first Tamil book in 1579.
18. Richard M Hoe of New York.
19. Kesari.
20. Buddhist missionaries from China.
21. Wood Block Printing.
22. Penny Chapbooks were pocket-sized books sold for a penny by paddlers known as Chapmen.
23. Ukiyo means pictures of floating world or depiction of ordinary human experiences specially urban ones.
24. At Strasbourg, Germany

25. Marco Polo.

Three Mark Questions

26. India had a very rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts – in Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian, and other vernacular languages. Manuscripts were copied on palm leaves or on handmade paper. Pages were beautifully illustrated. These manuscripts were bound between wooden covers or sewn together for preservation. Manuscripts were produced in India even after print technology was introduced. Manuscripts were expensive and fragile and had to be handled carefully. It was difficult to read manuscripts as they were written in different styles.
27. The first form of print technology used wooden blocks which were carved with words or designs. The carvings were in relief. These wooden blocks were inked. Then paper was rubbed against it. The markings now made an impression on the paper. The paper was thin and so printing was done only on one side. The papers were folded and stitched.
28. (i) Paper reached Europe through the Silk Route in the 11th century.
(ii) In 1295, Marco Polo, a great explorer, returned to Italy after many years of exploration in China. He brought with him the knowledge of woodblock printing.
(iii) Italy began producing with woodblocks, and soon the technology spread to other parts of Europe.
29. (i) Those who could not read enjoyed listening to books being read out. So printers began publishing popular ballads and folk tales illustrated with pictures.
(ii) These books were then sung and recited at gathering in villages and in taverns in towns.
(iii) Indian writers like Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay himself used to read his novels for illiterate gathering.
30. (i) Print culture promoted application of reasoning and rationality.
(ii) It created a new culture of dialogue and debate.
(iii) It did open up the possibility of thinking differently.
(iv) It promoted spirit of people's rule i.e., democracy.
31. Martin Luther was a religious reformer. In 1517 he wrote the 'Ninety Five Theses' criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. A printed copy of this was pasted on a church door in Wittenberg. The Church was prompted to discuss his ideas. Soon Martin Luther's Ninety Five Theses 'was printed in vast numbers and read widely. This led to a division within the Church and was the beginning of the Protestant Reformation. Martin Luther's translation of the New Testament sold 5,000 copies within a few weeks and a second edition appeared within three months. Several scholars felt print brought about a new intellectual atmosphere and helped spread the new ideas that led to the Reformation.
32. The Gutenberg Press: The first printing press was developed by Johan Gutenberg in 1430s. It was a developed form of the olive and wine presses. By 1448 Gutenberg perfected this system. The lead moulds were used for casting the metal types for the letters of alphabet. The first book he printed was Bible. He produced 180 copies of Bible in 3 years, which was much faster by standards of the time, at the time.
33. Vernacular press act enacted in 1878 to curtail the freedom of the Indian-language press. Proposed by Lord Lytton, then viceroy of India (governed 1876–80), the act was intended to prevent the vernacular press from expressing criticism of British policies.

34. Print culture is important because it is a true medium of mass communication like newspapers, journals and books etc. It also helps in creation of new ideas, thoughts, etc via books and magazines, etc.
35. (1) Textbooks for the civil service examination were printed in vast numbers the sponsorship of the imperial state.
 (2) Merchants used print in their everyday life as they collected trade information.
 (3) The new readership preferred fictional narratives, poetry, romantic plays.
 (4) Rich women began to read and many women began publishing their poetry and plays.
 (5) Wives of scholar-officials published their works and courtesans wrote about their lives.
36. The main three difficulties in copying manuscripts were as follows:
 (1) The copying of manuscript was an expensive, laborious and time consuming business.
 (2) There was one more problem. The manuscripts were fragile, awkward to handle. They could not be easily carried around or read easily.
 (3) When scribes copied manuscripts, they also introduced small changes in word here and there. Repeatedly these changes made the text substantially different from the original.

Five Mark Questions

37. (i) Fear of spread of irreligious thoughts: Not everyone welcomed the printed book, and those who did also had fears about it. Many were apprehensive of the effects that the easier access to the printed word and the wider circulation of books, could have on people's minds. It was feared that if there was no control over what was printed and read then rebellious and irreligious thoughts might spread.
 (ii) Division of Church: In 1517, the religious reformer Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five Theses criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. This led to a division within the Church and to the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.
 (iii) Index of prohibited books: The Roman Church, troubled by such effects of popular readings and questionings of faith, imposed severe controls over publishers and booksellers and began to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books from 1558.
 (iv) Print and Muslims: To check conversion or fear of change of laws Muslims used cheap lithographic presses, published Persian and Urdu translations of holy scriptures, and religious newspapers and tracts. The Deoband Seminary, founded in 1867, published many fatwas telling Muslim readers how to conduct themselves in their everyday lives, and explaining the meanings of Islamic doctrines.
 (v) Print and Hindus: Among Hindus, too, print encouraged the reading of religious texts, especially in the vernacular languages. The first printed edition of the Ramcharitman MS of Tulsidas, a sixteenth-century text, came out from Calcutta in 1810. Religious texts, therefore, reached a very wide circle of people, encouraging discussions, debates and controversies within and among different religions.
38. Lives and feelings of women were written with intensity. This increased the number of women who took to reading. Liberal husbands and fathers started educating their womenfolk at home and some sent them to schools. Many journals began carrying writings by women, and explained why women should be educated. They also carried a syllabus and attached suitable reading matter which could be used for home-based schooling.
 Superstition was a reason for illiteracy among a large population of women.
 • Conservative Hindus believed that a literate girl would be widowed.
 • Muslims feared that educated women would be corrupted by reading Urdu romances.
 Social reforms and novels created a great interest in women's lives and emotions. Women's opinions and views were slowly considered and respected. Stories were written about how about how women were imprisoned at home, kept in ignorance, forced to do hard domestic

labour and treated unjustly by the very people they served. Stories about the miserable lives of upper-caste Hindu women, especially widows also appeared in print. These stories paved the way for the liberation of the suppressed Indian woman.

Other kinds of literature solely for women soon flooded the markets.

- Article on household and fashion lessons for women.
- Articles on issues like women's education, widowhood, widow remarriage and the national movement.
- Short stories and serialised novels.
- Folk literature.

In Bengal, an entire area in central Calcutta – the Battala – was devoted to the printing of popular books. These books were being profusely illustrated with woodcuts and coloured lithographs. Peddlers took the Battala publications to homes, enabling women to read them in their leisure time.

39. (i) Writings about lives and feelings of Women: Lives and feelings of women began to be written in particularly vivid and intense ways. Women's reading, therefore, increased enormously in middle-class homes.
- (ii) Women and liberal families: Liberal husbands and fathers began educating their womenfolk at home, and sent them to schools when women's schools were set up in the cities and towns after the mid-nineteenth century. Many journals began carrying writings by women, and explained why women should be educated. They also carried a syllabus and attached suitable reading matter which could be used for home-based schooling.
- (iii) Women and Conservatives: Conservative Hindus believed that a literate girl would be widowed and Muslims feared that educated women would be corrupted by reading Urdu romances.

Reaction:

(i) Sometimes, rebel women defied such prohibition. In East Bengal, in the early nineteenth century, Rashundari Debi, a young married girl in a very orthodox household, learnt to read in the secrecy of her kitchen. Later, she wrote her autobiography *Amar Jiban* which was published in 1876. It was the first full-length autobiography published in the

Bengalilanguage.

(ii) In the 1880s, in present-day Maharashtra, Tarabai Shinde and Pandita Ramabai wrote with passionate anger about the miserable lives of upper-caste Hindu women, especially widows.

(iii) A woman in a Tamil novel expressed what reading meant to women who were so greatly confined by social regulations: 'For various reasons, my world is small. More than half my life's happiness has come from books.'

(iv) In 1926, Begum Rokeya Sakhawat Hossein, a noted educationist and literary figure, strongly condemned men • for withholding education from women in the name of religion.

40. (i) Public libraries : The print reached to the poor in the 19th century. Publishers started producing small and cheap books. These books were sold at crossroads. Public libraries were set up by the Christian missionaries and the rich people.
- (ii) Highlighting the issue of class discrimination : From the late 19th century, many writers started writing about the issue of class distinction.
- (i) Jyotiba Phule was a social reformer. He wrote about the poor condition of 'low caste'. In his book *Gulamgiri* (1871), he wrote about the injustices of the caste system.
- (ii) In the 20th century, B.R. Ambedkar also wrote powerfully against the caste system. He also wrote against untouchability.
- (iii) E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker, also known as Periyar, too wrote about the caste system prevailing in Madras (Chennai). The writings of these writers were read by people all over India. Local protest movements and sects also created a lot of popular journals and tracts criticising ancient scriptures with a view to creating new and just future.

(iv) Poor workers and the print : Workers in factories were too overworked, and thus, lacked the education to write about their expectations and experiences. But Keshibaba, a Kanpur mill worker wrote and published *Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal* in 1938 to depict the links between caste and class exploitation. The poems of another Kanpur mill worker, who wrote under the name of Sudarshan Chakra between 1935 and 1955, were brought together, and published in a collection called *Sacchi Kavita*. By the 1930s, Bangalore cotton mill workers set up libraries to educate themselves. By doing so, they were following the example of Bombay (Mumbai) workers. These libraries were sponsored by social reformers who tried to restrict excessive drinking among the poor, to bring literacy and, sometimes, to propagate the message of nationalism.

41.

1. A. Martin Luther was in favour of print and spoke out in praise of it.

In 1517 Martin Luther wrote *Ninety Five Theses* criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. A printed copy of this was posted on a church door in Wittenberg. It challenged the Church to debate his ideas. Luther's writings were immediately reproduced in vast numbers and read widely.

This led to a division within the Church and to the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.

Luther's translation of the New Testament sold 5,000 copies within a few weeks and a second edition appeared within three months. All this became possible due to printing technology. Deeply grateful to print, Luther said, "Printing is the ultimate gift of God and the greatest one." Several scholars, in fact, think that the print brought about a new intellectual atmosphere and helped spread the new ideas that led to the Reformation.

B. The Roman Catholic Church began keeping an Index of Prohibited Books from the mid-sixteenth century due to the following reasons :

The print and popular religious literature encouraged many distinctive individual interpretations of faith even among little-educated working people. For example, Manocchio, a miller in Italy, after reading some books available in his locality, reinterpreted the message of the Bible and formulated a view of God and Creation that enraged the Roman Catholic Church. Various types of questions were raised against the faith and the Church. Manocchio was hauled up twice and ultimately executed.

As the Roman Catholic Church was troubled by such writings, it imposed severe controls over publishers and began to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books from 1558.

C. Gandhi said the fight for Swaraj is a fight for the liberty of speech, liberty of the press, and freedom of association due to the following reasons :

After the revolt of 1857, as the vernacular press became assertively nationalist, the colonial government tried to control it. Thus in 1878, the Vernacular Press Act was passed modelled on the Irish Press Laws. It provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the vernacular press. Whenever there was a seditious report, the newspaper was warned and if the warning was ignored, the press was liable to be seized and the printing machinery confiscated.

When Punjab revolutionaries were deported in 1907, Bal Gangadhar Tilak wrote with great sympathy about them in his *Kesari*. This led to his imprisonment in 1908. There were widespread protests all over India.

During the First World War under the Defence of India Rules, 22 newspapers had to furnish securities. Of these, 18 shut down rather than comply with government orders.

Similarly during the Khilafat and Non-Cooperation Movement, the Government of India was trying to crush the three powerful vehicles of expressing (Liberty of speech, liberty of press, and freedom of association) and cultivating public opinion. Thus the fight for Swaraj was a fight for this freedom than anything else

Social Science

Contemporary

India II

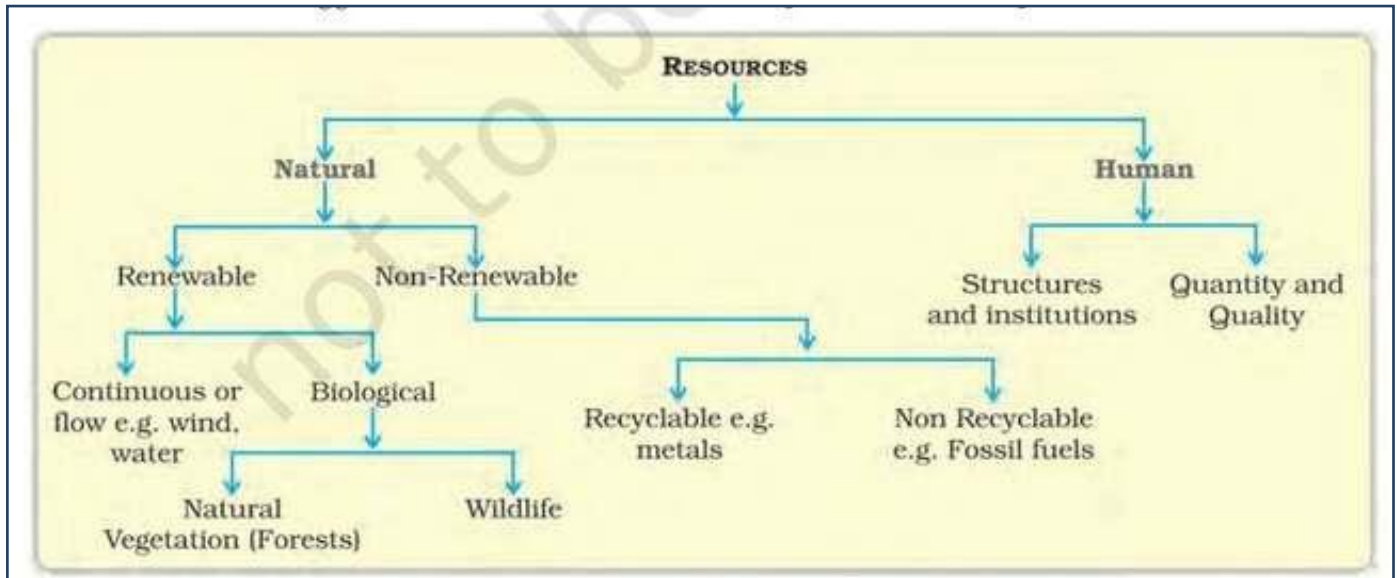
**Textbook in
Geography for Class X**

**Textbook in
Geography for Class X**

CHAPTER 1

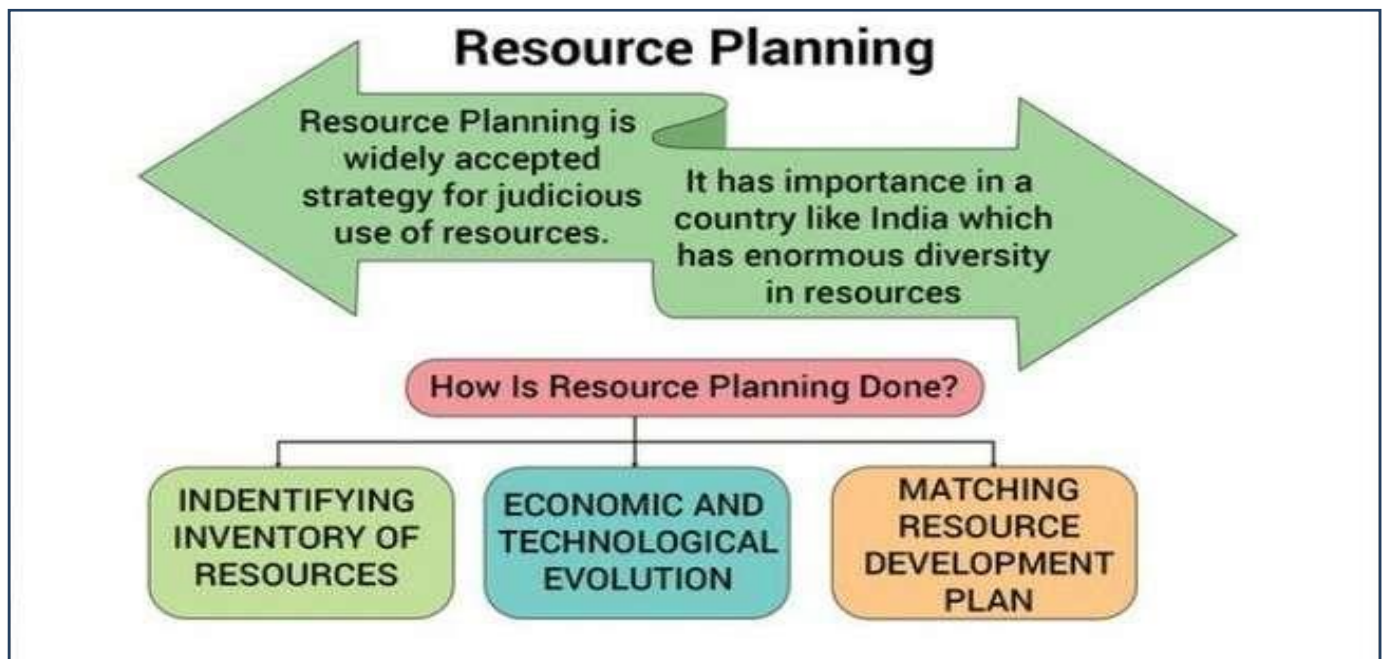
RESOURCES AND DEVELOPMENT

1. Flow chart of the major concept/ Mind Mapping.



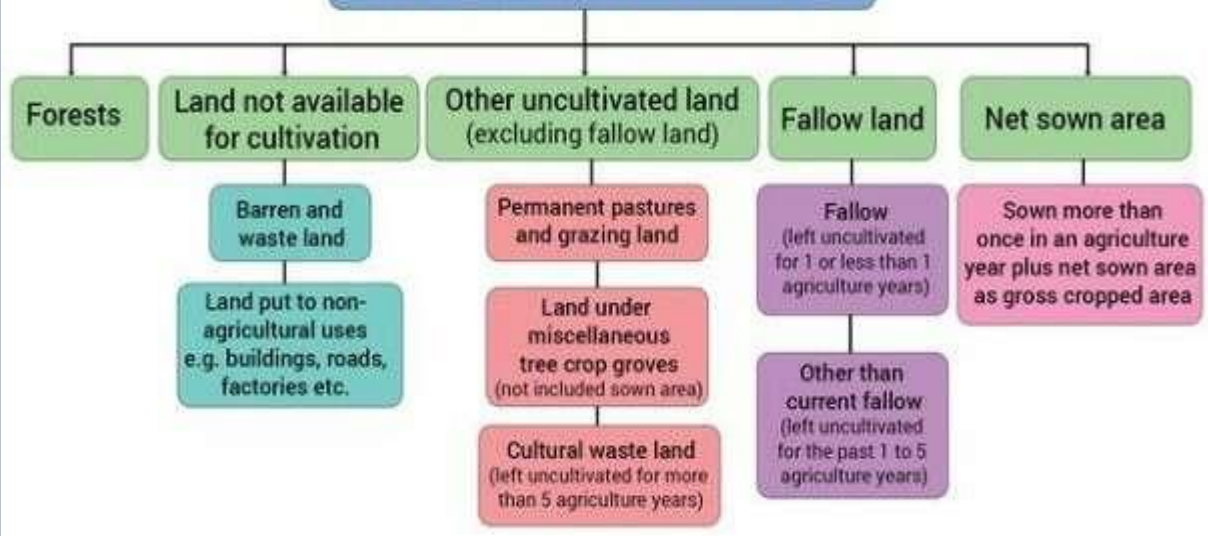
Resources and Development:

- Concept • Development of Resources
- Resource Planning - Resource Planning in India, Conservation of Resource
- Land Resources
- Land Utilization
- Land Use Pattern in India
- Land Degradation and Conservation Measures
- Soil as a Resource - Classification of Soils, Soil Erosion and Soil Conservation (excluding Box Information on State of India's Environment)



Land Utilization

Land Resources Are Used For :



ON THE BASIS OF OWNERSHIP

National Resource

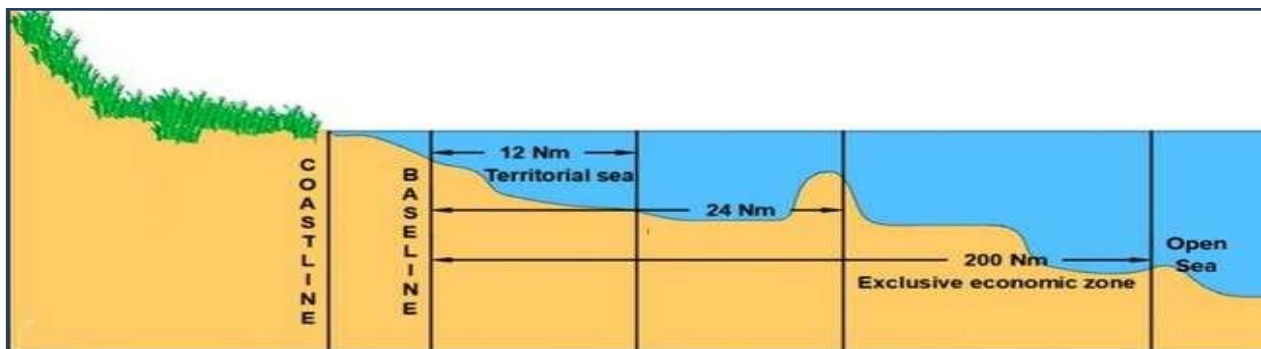
Controlled by **nation**.

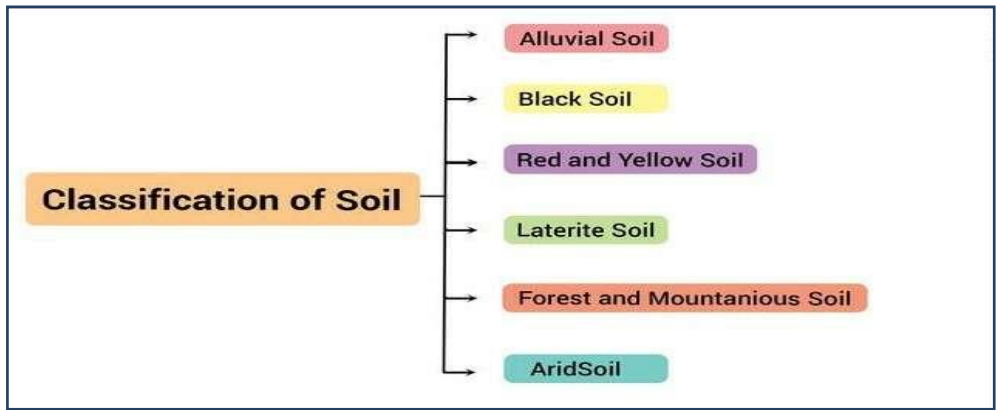
Ex: Minerals, Water,, Forest, Wildlife & Oceanic Area upto 12 nautical miles(22.2km) from the coast termed as **territorial water & resources**.

International Resource

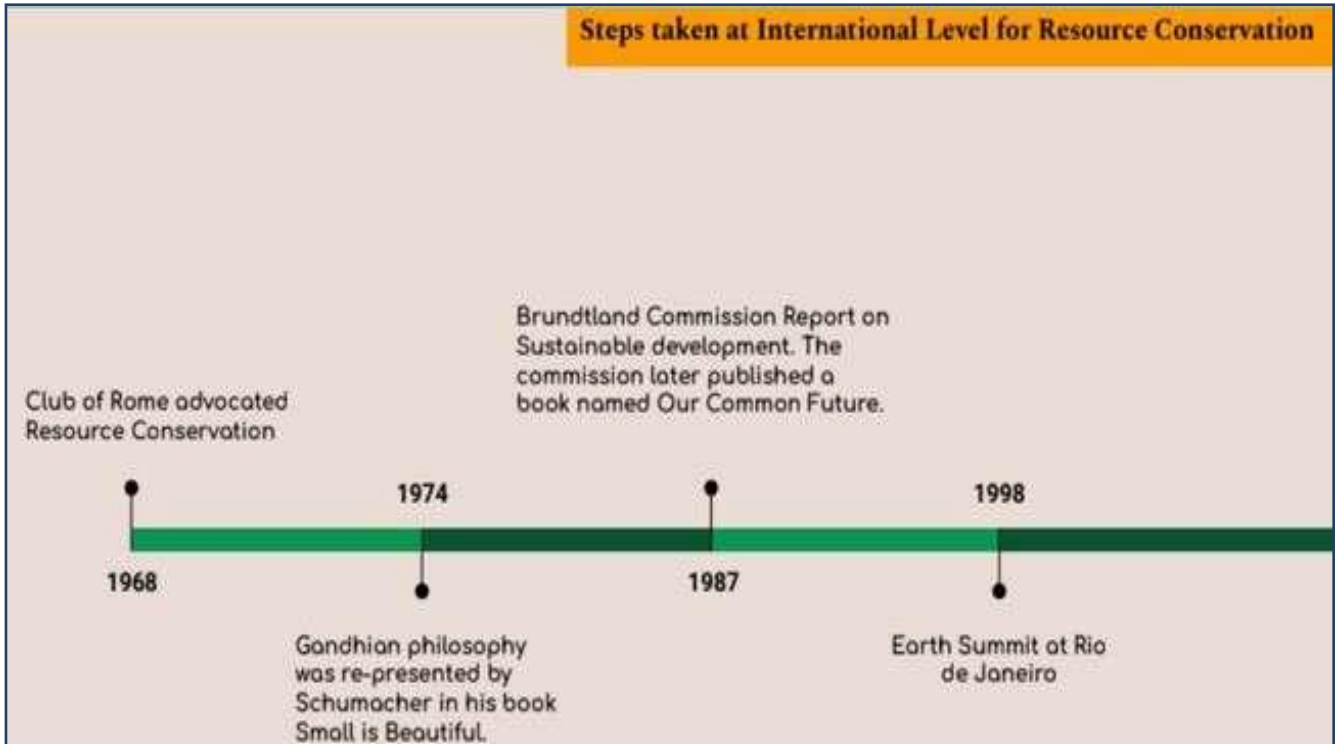
Owned & regulated by **international institution**.

Ex: Oceanic resource, space. The oceanic resource beyond 200 nautical miles of the **Exclusive Economic Zone** belong to open ocean.





Steps taken at International Level for Resource Conservation



Rio De Janeiro Earth Summit, 1992

The first global gathering on sustainability

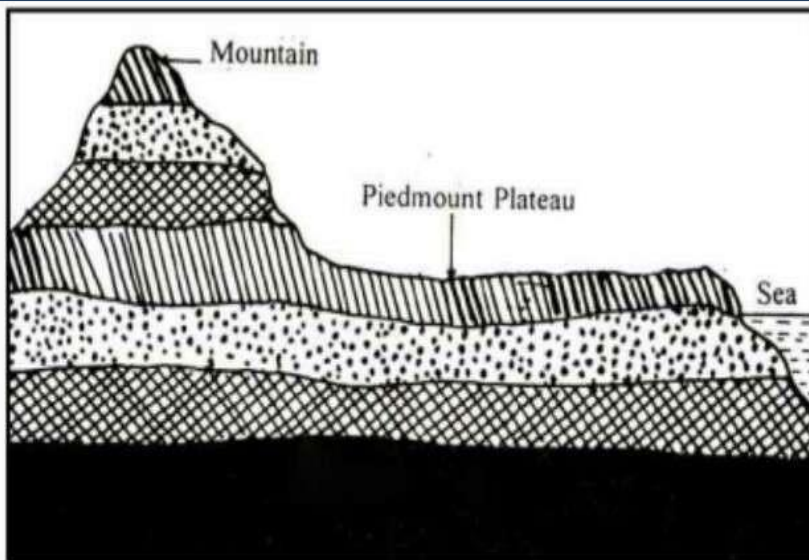
The assembled leaders signed the Declaration on Global Climatic Change and Biological Diversity.

Convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio economic development at the global level.

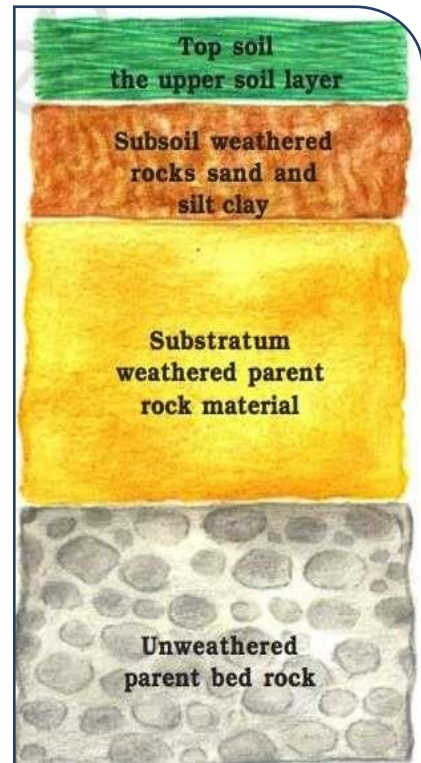
Type of Land	No. of years it is left uncultivated for
Current Fallow Land	Less than or upto one year
Other Than Current Fallow Land	More than 1 year (1-5 years)
Culturable Waste land	More than 5 years

Gross cropped Area:

Net Sown Area (Area Cultivated once in one agricultural year)
+
Area cultivated more than once in one agricultural year.



An area at the base of a mountain range or a mountain is known as Piedmont Plane.



Soil	Texture	Climatic Condition	Characteristic	Crops grown	Region
Alluvial Soil	Loomy in texture	Hot & Humid Climate	Highly fertile	Cotton, Jute, Castor, Millets	Haryana, Punjab, U.P
Black Soil	Finely textured & Clayey	High temp. & low rainfall	Moisture retentive	Cotton, Jowar, Castor	Maharashtra, Malwa, Madhy Pradesh
Red & Yellow Soil	Coarse-grained (Texture vary from sand to clay & loam)	Warm & moist climate	Have a porous structure	Oilseed, Groundnut, Orchard, Millets	Karnataka, Chattisgarh, Telangana

Soil	Texture	Climatic Condition	Characteristic	Crops grown	Region
Laterite Soil	Coarse	High temp. & High rainfall	Low Humus content	Rubber, Coconut, Cinchona, tea.	W. Bengal, Orissa, Kerala, Karnataka
Arid Soil	Sandy	Dry climatic condition, low rainfall.	Contains substantial amount of salt and calcium.	Millets, Pulses, Corn, Wheat	Punjab, Haryana, Gujarat
Forest Soil	Coarse-gravels to fine loams & slits.	Require sufficient Rainfall.	Acidic and organic in nature	Coffee, Palm, Spices, Maize	Assam, W. Bengal, Eastern ghats

2. Key words and terms.

1. The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is described as **soil erosion**.

2. The running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels as **gullies**. The land becomes unfit for cultivation and is known as **bad land**.

3. According to their age alluvial soils can be classified as old alluvial (**Bangar**) and new alluvial (**Khadar**). The bangar soil has higher concentration of **kanker** nodules than the Khadar. It has more fine particles and is more fertile than **the bangar**.

4. **Sustainable development** Sustainable economic development means 'development should take place without damaging the environment, and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of the future generations.

5. **Reserves** are the subset of the stock, which can be put into use with the help of existing technical 'know-how' but their use has not been started.

Q:1 Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

Planning is the widely accepted strategy for judicious use of resources. It has importance in a country like India, which has enormous diversity in the availability of resources. There are regions which are rich in certain types of resources but are deficient in some other resources. There are some regions which can be considered self-sufficient in terms of the availability of resources and there are some regions which have acute shortage of some vital resources. For example, the states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and coal deposits. Arunachal Pradesh has abundance of water resources but lacks in infrastructural development. The state of Rajasthan is very well endowed with solar and wind energy but lacks in water resources. The cold desert of Ladakh is relatively isolated from the rest of the country. It has very rich cultural heritage but it is deficient in water, infrastructure and some vital minerals. This calls for balanced resource planning at the national, state, regional and local levels.

1. In which among the following States of India, coal deposits are abundantly available?

- a. Madhya Pradesh
- b. Chhattisgarh
- c. Jharkhand (Ans)**
- d. Rajasthan

2. In which among the following States you may find suitable amount of Water Deposits.

- a. Rajasthan
- b. Laddakh
- c. Arunachal Pradesh (Ans)**
- d. None of the above

3. Which state lacks water resources?

- a. Madhya Pradesh

- b. Haryana
- c. Punjab
- d. Rajasthan (Ans)**

4. Rajasthan is very well endowed with

- a. Wave energy
- b. Solar and wind energy (Ans)**
- c. Geothermal energy
- d. Tidal energy

5. Why do we need resource planning?

- a. Because of enormous diversity in the availability of resources (Ans)**
- b. Because we need to think of future generations
- c. We need to consider materials in the environment which have the potential to satisfy human needs
- d. The need to collect materials and resources and then using them accordingly

6. Strategy for judicious use of resources is

- a. Resources Development
- b. Resources Management
- c. Resources Conservation
- d. Resources Planning. (Ans)**

Q.2: Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

Potential Resources: Resources which are found in a region, but have not been utilised. For example, the western parts of India particularly Rajasthan and Gujarat have enormous potential for the development of wind and solar energy, but so far these have not been developed properly.

Developed Resources: Resources which are surveyed and their quality and quantity have been determined for utilisation. The development of resources depends on technology and level of their feasibility.

Stock: Materials in the environment which have the potential to satisfy human needs but human beings do not have the appropriate technology to access these, are included among stock. For example, water is a compound of two inflammable gases; hydrogen and oxygen, which can be used as a rich source of energy. But we do not have the required technical 'know-how' to use them for this purpose. Hence, it can be considered as stock

2.1 Potential and development resources are categories under which type of resources?

- a. On the basis of origin
- b. On the basis of exhaustibility
- c. On the basis of ownership
- d. On the basis of status of development (Ans)**

2.2 If a person knows about the presence of a resource in abundance at a place but is not able to harness it due to lack of technical know-how use or any other problem then that resource would be known as which of the following resources?

- a. Abiotic resource
- b. International resource
- c. Community resource

d. Stock resource (Ans)

2.3 Coal , natural gas , petroleum , water etc are example of which type of given resources ?

- a. Potential resource
- b. Community owned resource
- c. Non-renewable resource(Ans)**
- d. Biotic resource

2.4 Which are the main factors that determine creation of a resource? Identify the correct options.

- a. Nature and technology
- b. Nature and human beings
- c. Nature, human beings and technology (Ans)**
- d. Technology and human beings

2.5 There are some regions of India where availability of resources is sufficient, but in some regions, there are acute shortage of important resources. Identify which of the following region is deficient in water resources.

- a. Jharkhand
- b. Rajasthan(Ans)**
- c. Ladakh
- d. Arunachala Pradesh

3. Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

At the international level, the Club of Rome advocated resource conservation for the first time in a more systematic way in 1968. Subsequently, in 1974, Gandhian philosophy was once again presented by Schumacher in his book Small is Beautiful. The seminal contribution with respect to resource conservation at the global level was made by the Brundtland Commission Report, 1987. This report introduced the concept of ‘Sustainable Development’ and advocated it as a means for resource conservation, which was subsequently published in a book entitled Our Common Future. Another significant contribution was made at the Earth Summit at Rio de Janeiro, Brazil in 1992.

3.1 Who wrote the book ‘Small is Beautiful’?

- a. M K Gandhi
- b. Schumacher (Ans)**
- c. G. Brundtland
- d. J L Nehru

3.2 What did Club of Rome advocate ?

- a. Resources utilisation
- b. Resources development
- c. Resources conservation(Ans)**
- d. Resource exploitation

3.3 What is the theme of the book “Our Common Future”?

- a. Resources exploitation
- b. Resources development
- c. Resources planning
- d. Sustainable development (Ans)**

- 3.4 Which of the following statements about Brundtand Commission Report is correct?
- It was published in 1987.
 - It made seminal contribution with respect to resource conservation at global level.
 - This report introduced the concept of Sustainable development.
 - All of these.(Ans)**

- 3.5 In which country was the first Earth Summit held?
- India
 - USA
 - Brazil (Ans)**
 - Argentina

4. Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

This is the most widely spread and important soil. In fact, the entire northern plains are made of alluvial soil. These have been deposited by three important Himalayan river systems– the Indus, the Ganga and the Brahmaputra. These soils also extend in Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor. Alluvial soil is also found in the eastern coastal plains particularly in the deltas of the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri rivers.

4.1 Name the soil which is being described in the above paragraph.

- Black soil
- Alluvial soil(Ans)**
- Laterite soil
- Forest soil

4.2 This soil is mainly good for cultivation of

- Sugar cane
- Paddy
- Wheat
- All of the above (Ans)**

4.3 This soil have been deposited by which river system?

- Godavri – Krishna – Ioin
- Chambal- Yamuna – Narmada
- Brahmaputra – Godavari – Banas
- Brahmaputra - Ganga – Indus (Ans)**

4.4 Where do deltas form?

- At the start of a river
- Where a river empties into a larger body of water(Ans)**
- Where rivers carve deep into the Earth's surface
- At the point where two rivers join together

1 Mark Questions

1. Who wrote the book 'Small is Beautiful'?

Ans. Schumacher

2. Which type of soil is found in the river deltas of the Eastern Coast?

Ans. Alluvial Soil

3. Write the two types of renewable resources.

Ans. Continuous and Biological resources

4. From which Five Year Plan has India made concerted efforts for achieving the goals of resource planning?

Ans. First Five Year Plan

5. Give any two factors which determine the land use pattern of a nation.

Ans. . Topography and Population

6. How much degraded land is present in India?

Ans. 130 million hectare

7. By which name is the bad land known in Chambal basin?

Ans. Ravines

8. Name the institution which is empowered by the government of India to acquire land?

Ans. Urban Development Authorities

9. What is strip cropping?

Ans. . Large fields divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of the wind. This method is known as strip cropping.

10. Name the way which helps the sand dune to stabilization.

Ans. Shelter Belts have contributed significantly to the establishment of sand dunes.

11. Name the areas where terrace farming is practiced in India?

Ans. Western and central Himalayas of India

12. Why are the lower horizons of the soil occupied by Kankar?

Ans. Because of the increasing calcium contents downwards

13. Name the soil which is suitable for the cropping of cashew nuts.

Ans. . Red Laterite Soil

14. Name the nutrient in which black soils is poor?

Ans. Phosphoric contents

15. Name any two nutrients which are found in black soils?

Ans. Calcium carbonate and magnesium

16. Mention the reason due to which red soils looks red?

Ans. These soils develop a reddish colour due to diffusion of iron in crystalline and metamorphic rocks.

17. Name the soils which are well known for their capacity to hold moisture.

Ans. . Black soils

18. Which region of India is known as Basalt region?

Ans. The Deccan trap region spread over northwest Deccan plateau.

19. In which state overgrazing is the main reason of land degradation in India?

Ans. Gujarat

20. Where was first international earth summit held?

Ans. . Rio de Janeiro in Brazil

21. Coal, iron ore, petroleum, diesel etc. are the examples of

- a) Biotic resources b) Abiotic resources
c) Renewable resources d) Non Renewable resources**

Ans. d) Non Renewable resources

22. Which one of the following term is used to identify the old and new alluvial respectively ?

- a) Khadas & Tarai b) Tarai & Bangar
c) Bangar & Khadar d) Tarai & Dvars**

Ans. c) Bangar & Khadar

23. Which one of the following soil is the best for cotton cultivation ?

- a) Red soil b) Black soil
c) Laterite soil d) Alluvial soil**

Ans. b) Black soil

24. How much percentage of forest area in the country according to the National Forest Policy.

- a) 33% b) 37%
c) 27% d) 31%**

Ans. a) 33%

25. Which type of soil develops due to high temperature and evaporation ?

- a) Arid Soil b) Forest Soil
c) Black Soil d) Red Soil**

Ans. a) Arid Soil

26. Which one of the following resources can be acquired by the Nation ?

- a) Potential resources b) International resources
c) National resources d) Public resources**

Ans. c) National resources

27. Which one of the following is responsible for sheet erosion ?

- a) Underground water b) Wind
c) Glacier d) Water**

Ans. d) Water

28. Which one of the following method is used to break up the force of wind?

- a) Shelter belt b) Strip Cropping
c) Contour ploughing d) Terrace farming**

Ans. a) Shelter belt

29. Which one of the following is the main cause of land degradation in Madhya Pradesh ?

- a) Mining b) Overgrazing
c) Deforestation d) Over Irrigation**

Ans. c) Deforestation

30. Which one of the following statements refers to the sustainable development ?

- a) Overall development of various resources
b) Development should take place without damaging the environment.
c) Economic development of people.
d) Development that meets the desires of the members of all communities.**

Ans. b) Development should take place without damaging the environment.

31. Name three states having black soil and the crop which is mainly grown in it.

Ans. 31 Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh are states having black soil. Cotton is mainly grown in black soil.

Multiple choice questions.

1) The pattern of the net sown area varies greatly from one state to another. It is over 80 per cent of the total area in _____.

- a) Madhya Pradesh
- b) Assam
- c) Rajasthan
- d) Punjab**

Answer: Option (d)

2) Land which is left uncultivated for more than 5 agricultural years is known as _____.

- a) Culturable waste land**
- b) Barren land
- c) Pastures
- d) Fallow Lands

Answer: Option (a)

(3) Which one of the following is the main cause of land degradation in Punjab?

- (a) Intensive cultivation
- (b) Deforestation
- (c) Over irrigation(Ans)**
- (d) Overgrazing

Answer:

Over irrigation

(4) In which one of the following states is terrace cultivation practised?

- (a) Punjab
- (b) Plains of Uttar Pradesh
- (c) Haryana
- (d) Uttarakhand(Ans)**

Answer:

Uttarakhand

(5) In which of the following states black soil is predominantly found?

- (a) Jammu and Kashmir

(b) Maharashtra(Ans)

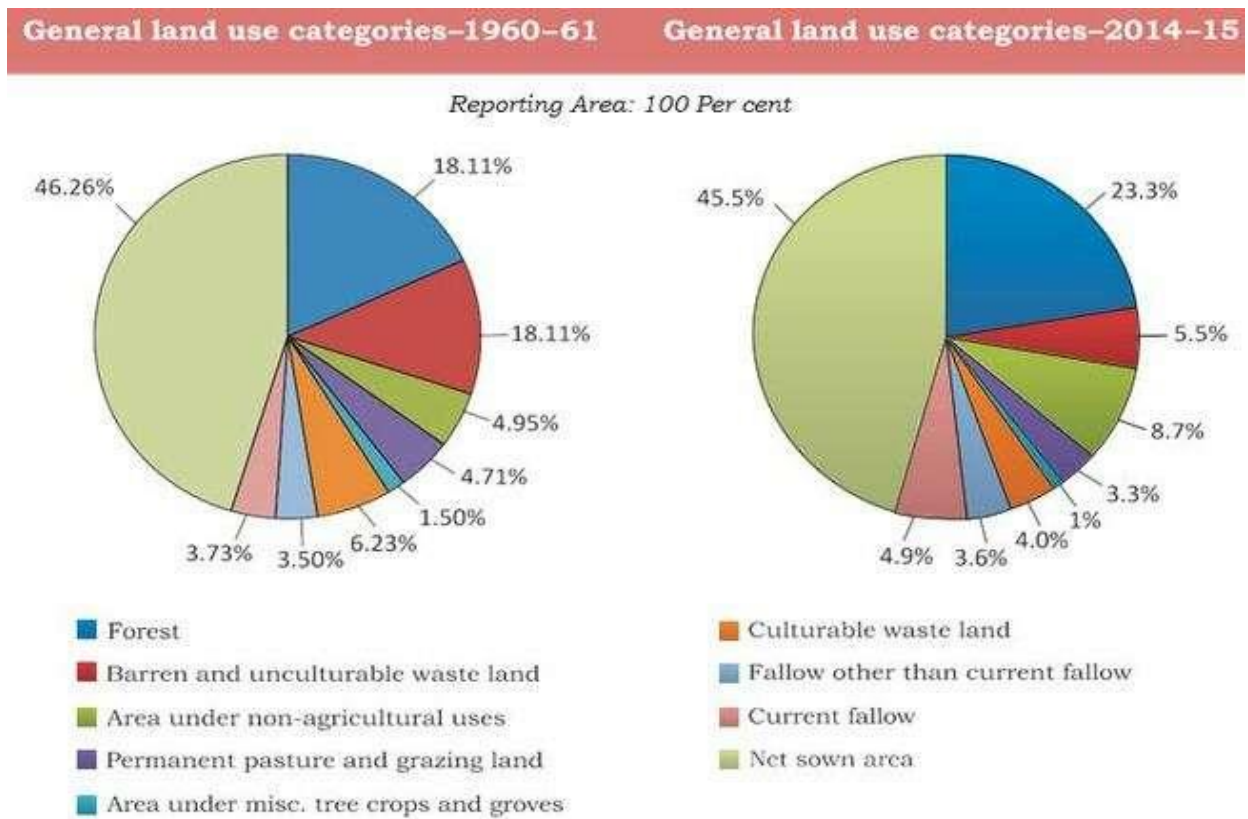
(c) Rajasthan

(d) Jharkhand

Answer:

Maharashtra

6: Study the following pie diagram and answer the following:



What percentage increase is seen in area under **forest** in the year 2014-15 from base year 1960-61?

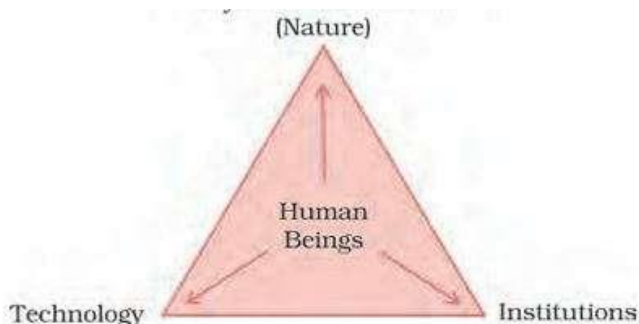
(A) 5.19(Ans)

(B) 3

(C) 4.1

(D) 5.16

7. Observe the following image given below:-



Transformation of things available in our environment involves an interactive relationship between ?

- a. Nature and technology
- b. Nature, technology and institutions(Ans)**
- c. Nature and institutions
- d. Environment and human beings

8. Why is resource planning necessary in India?

- a. Due to large availability of resources
- b. Due to limited availability of resources
- c. Due to enormous diversity in the availability of resources (Ans)**
- d. Due to corruption and mismanagement

9. "There is enough for everybody's need but not for anybody's greed". Who said this?

- a. Jawahar Lal Nehru
- b. Atal Bihari Vajpai
- c. M K Gandhi (Ans)**
- d. Sunder Lal Bahuguna

10. Which one of the following statements is true about the term resources?

- a. Everything available in our environment
- b. Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs
- c. Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs, provided it is technologically accessible, economically feasible and culturally acceptable.(Ans)**
- d. All of these

11: What was the main cause of colonization?

- a. Rich resources in colonies
- b. Higher technological know- how in colonizing countries which helped them to exploit those resources
- c. Both of these (Ans)**
- d. None of these

12.: The process of creation of resources involves which of the following ?

- a. Nature
- b. Technology
- c. Institutions
- d. All of these(Ans)**

13. The ocean resources till 200 nautical miles are classified under which zone?

- a. Exclusive Economic Zone(Ans)**
- b. Export-processing Zone
- c. Special Economic Zone
- d. None of these

14) On the basis of the status of development, resources can be classified as _____.

- a) Potential
- b) Developed Stock
- c) Reserves
- d) All of the above(Ans)

Answer: (d)

15) Which of the following statements are true?

- a) Abiotic resources are obtained from the biosphere and have life, such as human beings, flora and fauna.
- b) Biotic resources are all those things which are composed of non-living things like rocks and metals.
- c) Both the above statements are false.(Ans)
- d) Both the options (a) and (b) are true.

Answer: Option (c)

16) Minerals and fossil fuels are examples of non-renewable resources which take _____ for their formation.

- a) Hundreds of years
- b) Thousands of years
- c) Millions of years(Ans)
- d) Just a year

Answer: Option (c)

17) All the minerals, water resources, forests, wildlife, land within the political boundaries and oceanic area up to _____ from the coast termed as territorial water and resources therein belong to the nation.

- a) 20 nautical miles
- b) 25 nautical miles
- c) 15 nautical miles
- d) 12 nautical miles(Ans)

Answer: Option (d)

18) _____ are the subset of the _____, which can be put into use with the help of existing technical 'know-how', but their use has not been started.

- a) Reserves, Developed Resources
- b) Stocks, Reserves
- c) Developed Resources, Stock
- d) Reserves, Stock(Ans)

Answer: Option (d)

19) In June 1992, more than 100 heads of states met in _____ in Brazil, for the first International Earth Summit.

a) **Rio de Janeiro(Ans)**

b) São Paulo

c) Brasilia

d) Curitiba

Answer: Option (a)

20) The Rio Convention endorsed the global Forest Principles and adopted _____ for achieving Sustainable Development in the 21st century.

a) Agenda 20

b) **Agenda 21(Ans)**

c) Agenda 19

d) Agenda 22

Answer: Option (b)

21) Which of the following statements about Agenda 21 is true?

a) It aims at achieving global sustainable development.

b) It is an agenda to combat environmental damage, poverty and disease through global cooperation.

c) One of the major objectives of Agenda 21 is that every local government should **not** draw its own local Agenda 21.

d) **Option (a) and (b).(Ans)**

Answer: Option (d)

22) The states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and _____ deposits.

a) **Coal(Ans)**

b) Gold

c) Silicon

d) None of the above

Answer: Option (a)

23) The state of Rajasthan is very well endowed with solar and _____ energy but lacks in water resources.

a) Geothermal

b) Hydro

c) **Wind(Ans)**

d) Tidal

Answer: Option (c)

24) The Brundtland Commission Report published in _____, shared ideas about sustainable development and how it could be achieved.

a) 1997

b) **1987(Ans)**

c) 1992

d) 1977

25. Resources which are surveyed for their quality and quantity and have been determined for utilization are called _____.

A. DEVELOPE RESOURCES.

26 – UNCED stands for

(a) United Nations Convention on Energy and Development.

(b) United Nations Conference on Environment and Development.

(c) United Nations Commission on Energy and Development.

(d) None of these.

Ans – (b) United Nations Conference on Environment and Development.

27.–Name the soil which is the most retentive of moisture ?

(a) Alluvial Soil.

(b) Black Soil.

(c) Red & Yellow Soils.

(d) Arid Soils.

Ans – (b) Black Soil.

28 – Which one of the following is an example of Cultivable Wasteland ?

(a) Barren Wasteland .

(b) Current Fallow Land.

(c) Uncultivable Land.

(d) Net Sown Area.

Ans – (c) Uncultivable Land.

29 – The Soil type in which one can find the piedmont plains such as Duars, Chos and Terai is

(a) Red & Yellow Soils.

(b) Black Soil.

(c) Alluvial Soil.

(d) Arid Soils.

Ans – (c) Alluvial Soil.

30– Indiscriminate exploitation of resources has led to global ecological crises. Which of the following is not related to the above statement ?

(a) Environmental Pollution.

(b) Global Warming.

(c) Land Degradation.

(d) Ozone Layer Maintenance

Ans – (d) Ozone Layer Maintenance

31. Identify the action plan with regard to Sustainable Development with the help of clues given below.

- It is the declaration signed by world leaders in 1992.
- It was held at United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED).
- It aims at achieving global, sustainable development.
- It was an agenda to combat environmental damage, poverty, disease through global co-operation and common interests.

Options

(a) Earth Summit

(b) Agenda 21

(c) Five Year Plan

(d) Our Common Future

32. Match the following options in Column I with those in Column II.

Column I

Column II

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| A. Regur soil | 1. Alluvial soil |
| B. Kankar | 2. Black soil |
| C. Khadar soil | 3. Laterite soil |
| D. Brick soil | 4. Arid soil |

Choose the correct option from the options given below

- | | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|------------------|
| A | B | C | D | A B C D |
| (a) 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | (b) 1 3 2 4 |
| (c) 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 | (d) 2 4 1 3(Ans) |

33. Read the following statement and choose the correct option.

I. The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is described as

‘Soil erosion’.

II. The land becomes unfit for cultivation is known as ‘Sheet erosion’.

III. Sheet erosion is also caused due to defective methods of farming.

IV. Wind blows loose soil off flat or sloping land known as ‘wind erosion’.

Options

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) Only II is correct | (b) Only IV is correct |
| (c) I and III are correct | (d) I and IV are correct |

Directions (Q. Nos. 34-36) In the question given below, there are two statements marked as

Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Read the statement and choose the correct option.

Codes

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 (c) A is true, but R is false.
 (d) A is false, but R is true.

34. Assertion (A) Alluvial soil is loamy and permeable.

Reason (R) It does not develop cracks in the dry hot season.

35. Assertion (A) Human beings interact with nature through technology and create institutions to accelerate their economic development.

Reason (R) Resources are essential for human development.

36. Assertion (A) Economic Development of a nation depends mainly on the richness, development and management of resources.

Reason (R) Over-population results in over-exploitation of resources

Answers. 34 a 35 a 36 a

Q.6 THREE MARKS QUESTION.

1. Why is conservation of energy sources essential in India? Give any three reasons.

Ans. 1. Energy is a basic requirement for economic development.

2. India is presently one of the least energy efficient countries in the world.

3. The economic development plans implemented since Independence necessarily required increasing amounts of energy to remain operational.

So there is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development. After all “energy saved is energy produced”.

2. What type of soil is found in the river deltas of the eastern coast? Give three main features of this type of soil.

Answer:

The type of soil found in river deltas is Alluvial Soil.

1. Very fertile, and therefore good for the cultivation of crops
2. Consists of various proportions of sand, silt and clay
3. It has a good quantity of potash, lime and phosphoric acid, which is good for the growth of paddy and sugarcane.

3. What steps can be taken to control soil erosion in the hilly areas?

Answer:

The main techniques that can be used are given below.

1. Contour ploughing
2. Terrace farming
3. Strips of grass are allowed to grow between the crops. This method is known as strip cropping.

4. What are the biotic and abiotic resources? Give some examples.

Answer:

Biotic resource:

1. These are resources that are obtained from the biosphere
2. These resources have life
3. Examples are plants, animals, fish, human beings, livestock etc.

Abiotic resource:

1. These resources are composed of non-living things
2. Examples are water, minerals, metals, wind, solar energy etc.

5. What was the main contribution of the Brundtland Commission Report, 1987?

Ans. a. The seminal contribution with respect to resource conservation at the global level was made by the Brundtland Commission Report, 1987.

b. This report introduced the concept of 'Sustainable Development' and advocated it as a means for resource conservation, which was substantially published in a book, entitled Our Common Future.

6. Explain the interdependent relationship between nature, technology and institutions.

Ans. a. The process of transformation of things available in our environment involves an interdependent relationship between nature, technology and institutions.

b. Human beings interact with nature through technology and create institutions to accelerate their economic development.

c. Resources are the functions of activities.

7. What was agenda 21?

Ans. a. It is the declaration signed by world leaders in 1992 at the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED).

b. It focuses on attaining Global Sustainable Development.

c. Its main aim is to fight the environmental damage, poverty, diseases through global cooperation on common interest, mutual needs and shared responsibilities.

d. An important and distinct aim of the agenda is that every local government should draw its own local Agenda 21.

8. Write a short note on Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit, 1992.

Ans. a. Rio de Janeiro was the meeting ground for the first International Earth Summit.

b. More than 100 heads of state met at this famous conference which was convened in June 1992 to address the urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level.

c. A declaration on Global Climatic change and the Biological Diversity was signed by the assembled leaders.

d. They adopted Agenda 21 and endorsed the global forest Principles to achieve Sustainable Development in the 21st century.

9. Explain the relationship between the process of colonization and rich resources of colonies.

Ans. a. The History of colonization reveals that rich resources in colonies were the main attractions of the foreign traders.

b. It was primarily the higher level of technological development of colonizing countries that helped them to exploit resources of other regions and established their supremacy over colonies.

c. There for resources can contribute to development only when they are accompanied by appropriate technological development and institutional changes.

10. What type of relief covers most of India's land? Explain.

Ans. a. India has land under a variety of relief features, namely: mountains, plateaus, plains and islands.

b. About 43 per cent of land area is plain, which provides facilities for agriculture and industry.

c. Mountains account for 30 per cent of the total surface area of the country and ensure perennial flow of rivers, provides facilities of tourism and ecological aspects.

D. About 27 per cent of the area of the country is plateau region. It possesses rich reserves of minerals, fossil fuels and forests.

11. What is soil erosion? Explain the major types of soil erosion?

Ans. a. Soil Erosion: Soil erosion is the removal of soil by the forces of nature like wind and water is called soil erosion. This can also be described as denudation of soil cover and subsequent washing down. Following are its two types:

b. Wind Erosion: Wind blows loose soil off flat or sloping land. This is known as wind erosion.

c. Water Erosion: When running water is responsible for the removal of the top most layer of the earth that is known as water erosion.

12. Why is resource planning essential?

Ans. a. As the resources are limited, so their planning is quite necessary so that we can use them properly and at the same time save them for our coming generations.

b. For the balanced development of the country, the planning of the resources becomes very essential.

c. A resource planning is also necessary to save their exploitation or unlawful exploitation by the unscrupulous elements of the society.

13. Why does the net sown area vary from one state to another?

Ans. a. There are wide variations in the pattern of net sown area from one state to another state.

b. If we compare Haryana and Punjab with Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, Manipur and Andaman and Nicobar Islands there is a great disparity.

c. In Punjab and Haryana the net sown area is 80% of the total area but in other mentioned states it is less than 10% of the total area.

d. The reasons for this differences are many, e.g., climate, soil, relief, irrigation facilities

14. Explain three stages of 'resource planning.

Answer:

Three stages of resource planning:

A. Identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country. This involves surveying, mapping and the qualitative and quantitative estimation and measurement of the resources.

B. Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and institutional set up for implementing resource development.

Matching the resource development plans with overall national development

15. Do you think that resources are free gifts of nature as is assumed by many? Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments.

Answer: They are not free gifts of nature as :

(i) Resources are a function of human activities,

(ii) Human beings themselves are essential components of resources.

(iii) They transform material available in our environment into resources and use them.

For example river is a natural resource but river become a resource when its water is used for irrigation or power production.

Five Marks Questions

1. "India has land under a variety of relief features." Justify.

Or

What are the main advantages of India's land under a variety of relief features?

Answer: India has land under a variety of relief features, namely: mountains, plateaus, plains and islands.

(i) About 43 per cent of the land area is plain, which provides facilities for agriculture and industry.

(ii) Mountains account for 30 per cent of the total surface area. They ensure perennial flow of some rivers, provide facilities for tourism and ecological aspects.

(iii) About 27 per cent of the land area is plateau. It possesses reserves of minerals, fossil fuels and forests.

2. Explain the land use pattern in India and why has the land under forest not increased much since 1960-61?

Answer:

The use of land is determined both by physical factors such as topography, climate, soil types as well as human factors such as population density, technological capability and culture and traditions etc. The pattern of the net sown area varies greatly from one state to another. It is over 80 per cent of the total area in Punjab and Haryana and less than 10 per cent in Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, Manipur and Andaman Nicobar Islands. Forest area in the country is far lower than the desired 33 per cent of geographical area, as it was outlined in the National Forest Policy (1952). It was considered essential for the maintenance of the ecological balance. A part of the land is termed as wasteland and land put to other non-agricultural uses. Wasteland includes rocky, arid and desert areas and land put to other non-agricultural uses includes settlements, roads, railways, industry etc. Continuous use of land over a long period of time without taking appropriate measures to conserve and manage has resulted in land degradation.

3. Explain the classification of resources on the basis of ownership.

Or

Explain what is meant by national resources and individual resources.

Answer: (a) Individual Resources: Resources which are owned by private individuals are known as individual resources. Plots, fields, houses, cars, books, etc., are some examples of individual resources.

(b) Community Owned Resources: The resources which are accessible to all the members of the community are known as community resources. Village ponds, public parks, playgrounds, etc., are some examples of community resources.

(c) National Resources: All the resources which are under the control of state or union government are known as national resources. All the resources within political boundaries are national resources because the government has the power to acquire even the private properties.

(d) International Resources: These resources are owned and regulated by international institutions. The oceanic resources beyond 200 km of the Exclusive Economic Zone belong to the open ocean, and no individual country can utilise these without the concurrence of international institutions. India has got the right to mine manganese nodules from the bed of the Indian Ocean from that area which lies beyond the Exclusive Economic Zone.

4. Explain the classification of resources on the basis of the state of development.

Or

Distinguish between stock resources and reserve resources.

Answer: (i) Potential Resources : Resources which are found in a region, but have not been utilised due to lack of capital or other reasons. For example: the western parts of India, particularly Rajasthan and Gujarat have enormous potential for the development of wind and solar energy, but so far, these have not been developed properly.

(ii) Developed Resources : These are resources which have been surveyed and their quality and quantity have been determined for utilisation. The development of resources depends on technology and the level of their feasibility. For example, India has a cumulative total of about 2,47,847 million tonnes of coal resources.

(iii) Stock : These are the materials in the environment which have the potential to satisfy the human needs but cannot be used as the human beings do not have the appropriate technology to convert them into usable form. For example, water (H₂O) is a compound of two inflammable gases, i.e., hydrogen and oxygen, but human beings do not have the required technology to use them as a source of energy.

(iv) Reserves : These are the subset of the stock, which can be put into use with the existing technology, but their uses have been postponed keeping in mind the needs of the future generations. For example, India has sufficient amount of forests to fulfil the needs of the present generation, but they are being protected for the future generations

5. How is land a natural resource of utmost importance ? Explain with four facts.

Or

“Land is a natural resource of utmost importance.” Elaborate the statement with the help of suitable examples highlighting the value of land resource.

Answer: Land is an important natural resource, because :

- (i) All economic activities are performed on land.
- (ii) It supports natural vegetation and wildlife.
- (iii) Most of the minerals are formed in land.
- (iv) It is used for transport and communication system

6. Which is the most widely spread and important soil of India? State any six characteristics of this type of soil

Or

Mention any four characteristics of alluvial soils.

Or

How are alluvial soils formed? How is Bangar different from Khadar?

Answer: Characteristics of the Alluvial soil are :

- (i) Alluvial soils are transported soils. Most of the soils are derived from the sediments deposited by rivers as in the Indo-Gangetic plain. Thus, the parent material of these soils is of transported origin.

(ii) These soils consist of varying proportion of sand, silt and clay. In the upper course of the river, the soil is coarse. In the middle course, it is medium, and fine grained in the lower course.

(iii) Apart from the size of their grains or particles, soils are described according to their age as well. They are old alluvium and new alluvium. Locally, the old alluvium is called 'Bhangar' and the new alluvium is called 'Khadar'.

(iv) The old alluvium often contains 'kankar, nodules, with calcium carbonates in the sub-soil. The new alluvium is more fertile than the old alluvium.

7. Which soil is called 'regur soil? Mention any four characteristics of this type of soil.

Answer:

(i) These have been formed due to withering of lava.

(ii) The black soils are made of extremely fine materials, i.e., clayey materials.

(iii) These soils are rich in soil nutrients such as calcium carbonate, magnesium carbonate, potash and lime.

(iv) These soils are generally poor in phosphoric content.

(v) The soil is well known for its capacity to hold moisture.

8. What is soil erosion? Explain the major types of soil erosions prevailing in India.

Answer: "Soil erosion is the removal of soil by the forces of nature like wind and water, more rapidly than the various soil forming processes can replace it." Generally, there is a balance between the soil forming process and the erosional process. The balance can be disturbed by natural or human factors.

Types of Soil Erosion :

(a) Water Erosion : Water is a powerful agent of soil erosion. Following are the major types of erosion caused by water.

(i) Sheet Erosion : When the top layer of the soil is removed over a large area by the running water, it is called as sheet erosion.

(ii) Gully Erosion : This is the third stage of sheet erosion. With further erosion of the soil, the rills may deepen and become enlarged, and are ultimately turned into gullies. The main cause of gully erosion is the removal of vegetation, particularly of trees with their widespread binding roots. Gullies cut up agricultural land and the entire area may be turned into a bad land topography. Gully erosion is also responsible for the formation of ravines.

(b) Wind erosion : Wind is a powerful agent of erosion in arid and semi-arid lands with little rainfall. Wind can lift the valuable top soil from one area and deposits in another area. The wind erosion is very dangerous type of erosion because due to wind most of the deserts of the world are expanding.

9. Discuss the problems which have been caused due to over-utilisation of resources. Suggest any two ways to save the resources.

Or

"Indiscriminate use of resources has led to numerous problems". Justify the statement in three points.

Answer: (I) Depletion of resources : Over-utilisation has led to the depletion of the resources for meeting the greed of a few individuals. For example, over-utilisation of petroleum products has led to a situation where most of the countries of the world are facing energy crisis.

(ii) Concentration of resources: This has divided the society into ‘haves’ and ‘have nots’ or the rich and the poor.

(iii) Global ecological crisis : Over utilisation of resources has led to the global ecological crisis such as global warming, depletion of ozone layer, pollution and land degradation.

Suggestions :

(i) Minimising wastage.

(ii) Use of renewable resources.

10. “The earth has enough resources to meet the need of all but not enough to satisfy the greed of even one person.” How is this statement relevant to the discussion of development?

Discuss.

Answer: (i) Resources are vital for any developmental activity.

(ii) The irrational consumption and over utilization of resources may lead to socio economic and environmental problems.

(iii) Indiscriminate exploitation of resources led to global ecological crises such as global warming, environmental pollution, etc

(iv) The greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology is the root cause for resource depletion at the global level.

(v) If the present trend of resource depletion by a few individuals and countries continues, the future of our planet is in danger.

(vi) There is need for sustainable development.

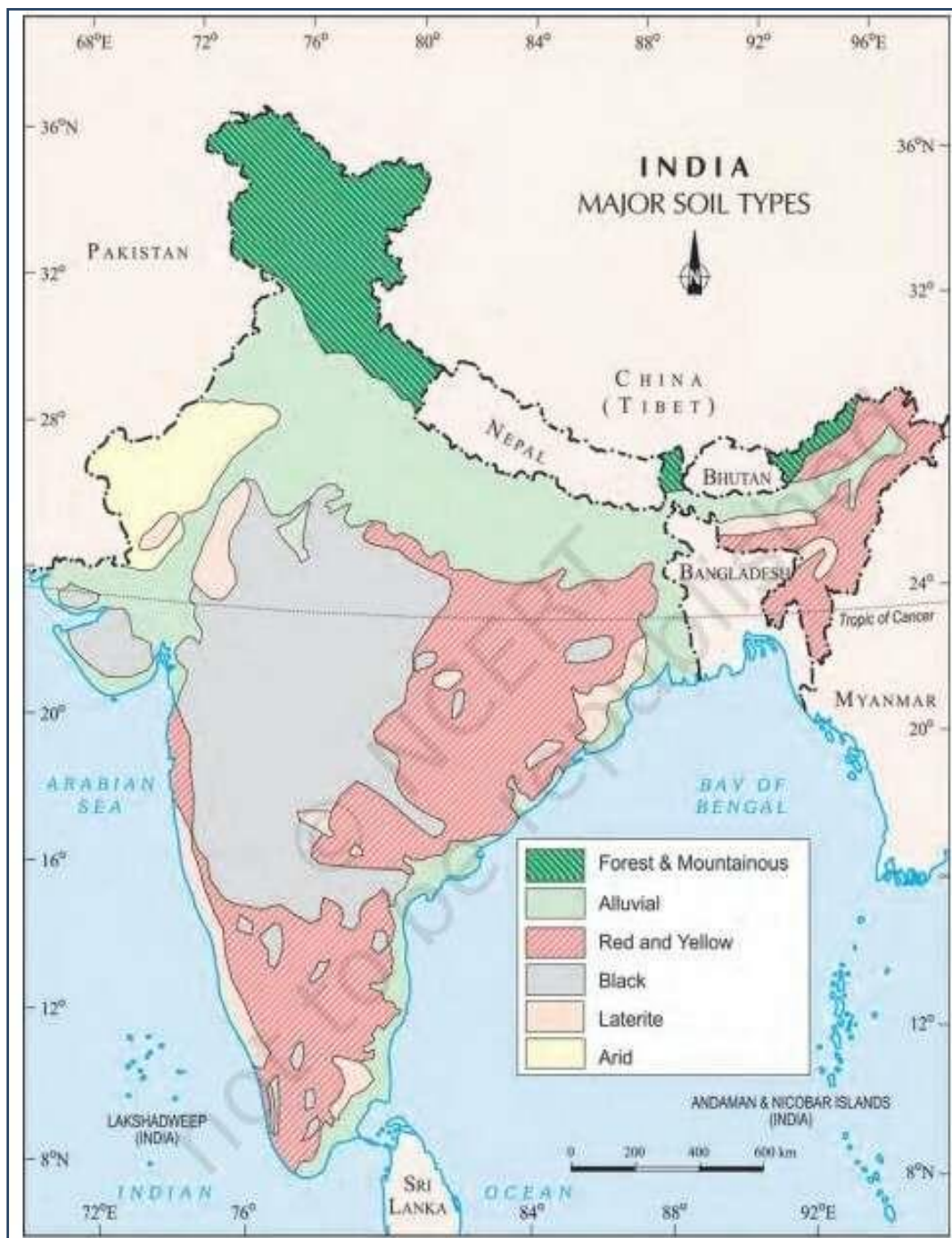
It means development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the need of future generations’.

11. How have technical and economic development led to more consumption of resources?

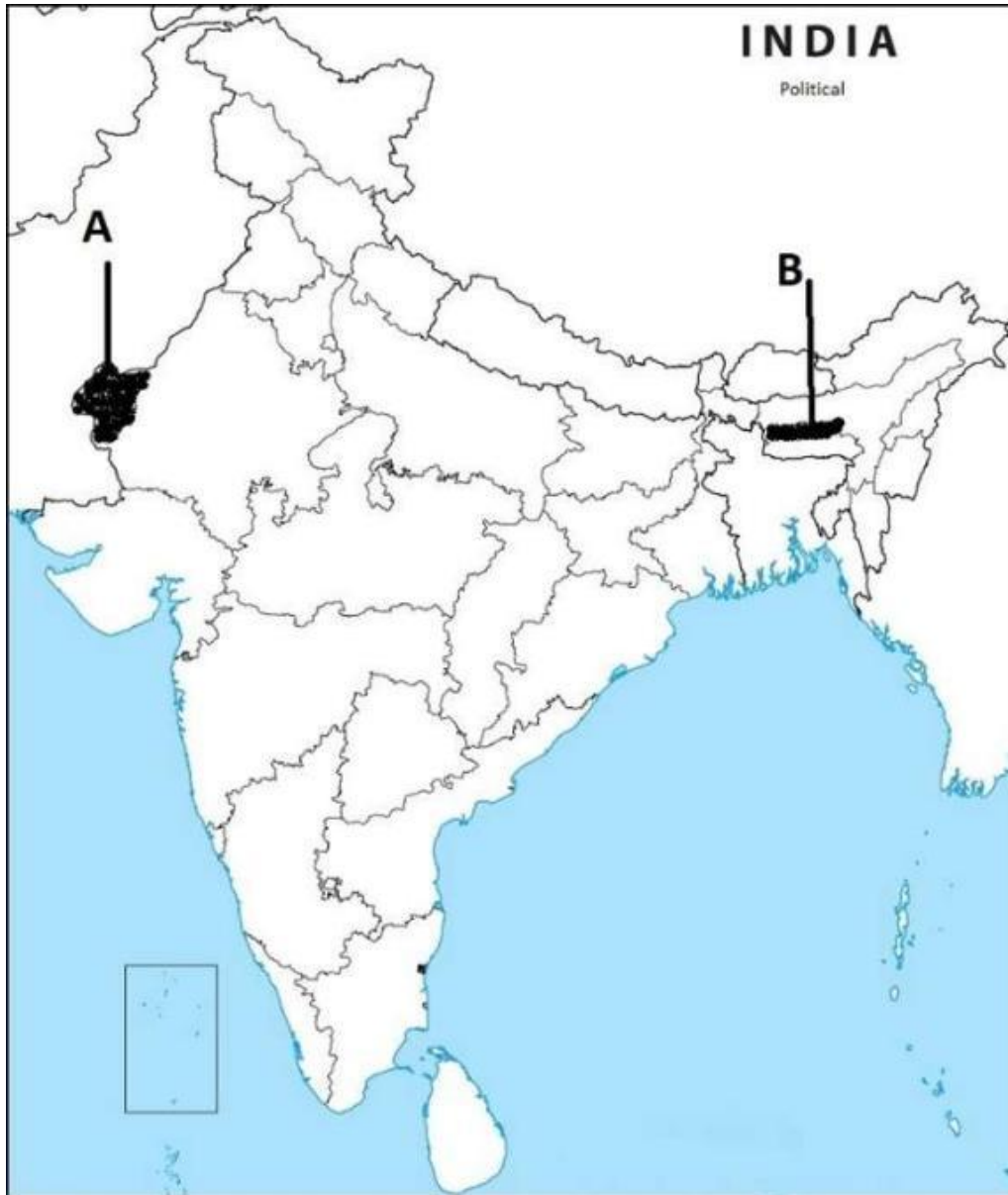
Technical and economic development led to more consumption of resources:

- Advancements made in the field of surveying helped in finding the hidden natural resources.
- Advancements made in different fields helped in identifying the different uses of various natural resources.
- Due to advancements made in the field of engineering, science and technology aided in extraction of natural resources in an environmentally feasible manner.
- Due to advancements made in technology, the extraction of natural resources became more feasible.

Due to rising economic development, demand for natural resources started rising from other countries as well in addition to the domestic demand, hence the exploitation of natural resources started increasing to increase trade.



On the given outline map of India, Identify the location with the help of specified information .



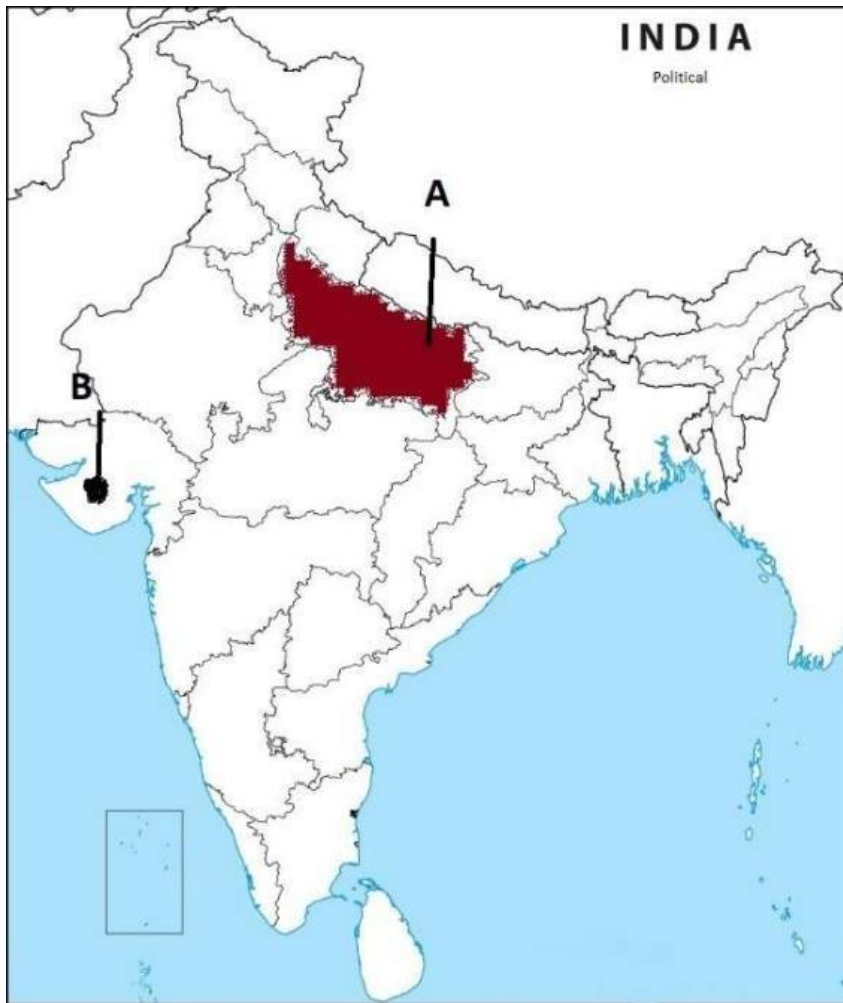
Q30 Identify the type of soil marked as A and choose the correct option.

- a. Black soil
- b. Arid soil (Ans)
- c. Alluvial soil
- d. Red and yellow soil

Q31 Identify the type of soil marked as B and choose the correct option.

- a. Black soil
- b. Arid soil
- c. Alluvial soil
- d. Laterite soil (Ans)

On the given outline map of India, Identify the location with the help of specified information.



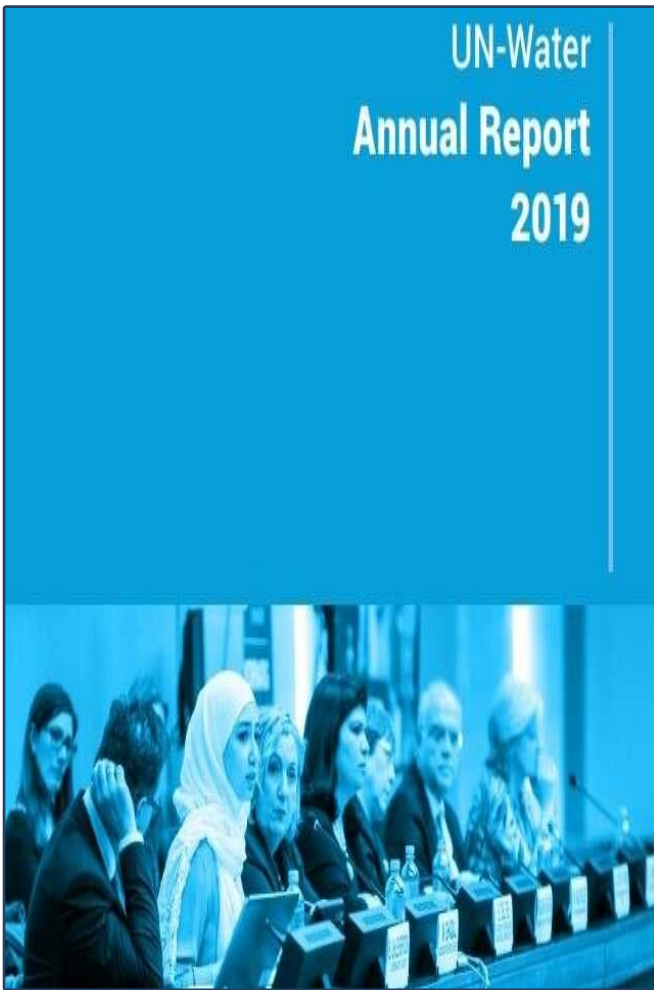
Q32 Identify the type of soil marked as A and choose the correct option.

- a. Black soil
- b. Arid soil
- c. Alluvial soil**
- d. Laterite soil

Q33 Identify the type of soil marked as B and choose the correct option.

- a. Black soil**
- b. Arid soil
- c. Alluvial soil
- d. Red and yellow soil

EXTRA CCT TYPE OF QUESTIONS.



World Water Day 2020: Water and Climate Change, event hosted during the World Water Week in Stockholm, where participants learned more about the then forthcoming 2020 World Water Day campaign and the World Water Development Report on the topic of water and climate change and ways to get involved. August 2019, Stockholm. UN-Water Photo.

UN-WATER GLOBAL ANALYSIS AND ASSESSMENT OF SANITATION AND DRINKING WATER (GLAAS) 2019

“NATIONAL SYSTEMS TO SUPPORT DRINKING-WATER, SANITATION AND HYGIENE: GLOBAL STATUS REPORT 2019” 2019 saw the launch of the UN-Water Global Analysis and Assessment of Sanitation and Drinking-Water (GLAAS). The report is produced every two years by the World Health Organization on behalf of UN-Water and this year’s edition surveyed 115 countries and territories and 29 external support agencies. For the first time, the report was launched at World Water Week in Stockholm in the UN-Water Stakeholder Dialogue, where a wide range of stakeholders discussed how to use the report findings to help decision makers extend and sustain water, sanitation and hygiene services to more people.

Q.1 The "World Water Development Report" is a flagship report of which organisation?

- a) UN Environment Programme
- b) Global Water Intelligence
- c) UN-Water
- d) International Water Association

Answer. (c) UN-Water

Q.2 What is GLASS?

A.2 GLOBAL ANALYSIS AND ASSESSMENT OF SANITATION AND DRINKING WATER

Q.3 UN-Water Global Analysis and Assessment of Sanitation and Drinking-Water (GLAAS) report is produced every two years by _____

- A. W.T.O
- B. UNICEF
- C. ISKCON
- D.W.H.O

ANS. D

Q.4 The GLAAS report was launched at _____

Ans. Stockholm



GLOBAL HANDWASHING DAY IS AN OPPORTUNITY TO DESIGN, TEST, AND REPLICATE CREATIVE WAYS TO ENCOURAGE PEOPLE TO WASH THEIR HANDS WITH SOAP AT CRITICAL TIMES.

The COVID-19 pandemic provides a stark reminder that one of the most effective ways to stop the spread of a virus is also one of the simplest: hand hygiene, especially through handwashing with soap. To beat the virus today and ensure better health outcomes beyond the pandemic, handwashing with soap must be a priority now and in the future. This year's theme, Hand Hygiene for All, calls for all of society to achieve universal hand hygiene.

No matter your role, you can celebrate Global Handwashing Day!

Q.1 Why do we celebrate Global Handwashing Day?

Ans.1 Global Handwashing Day (15 October) is a global advocacy day dedicated to increasing awareness and understanding about the importance of handwashing with soap as an effective and affordable way to prevent diseases and save lives.

Q.2 What are the three aims of the Global Hand Washing Day?

Ans. Global Handwashing Day (GHD) is an international handwashing promotion campaign to motivate and mobilize people around the world to improve their handwashing habits. Washing hands at critical points during the day and washing with soap are both important.

Q.3 When should handwashing be done?

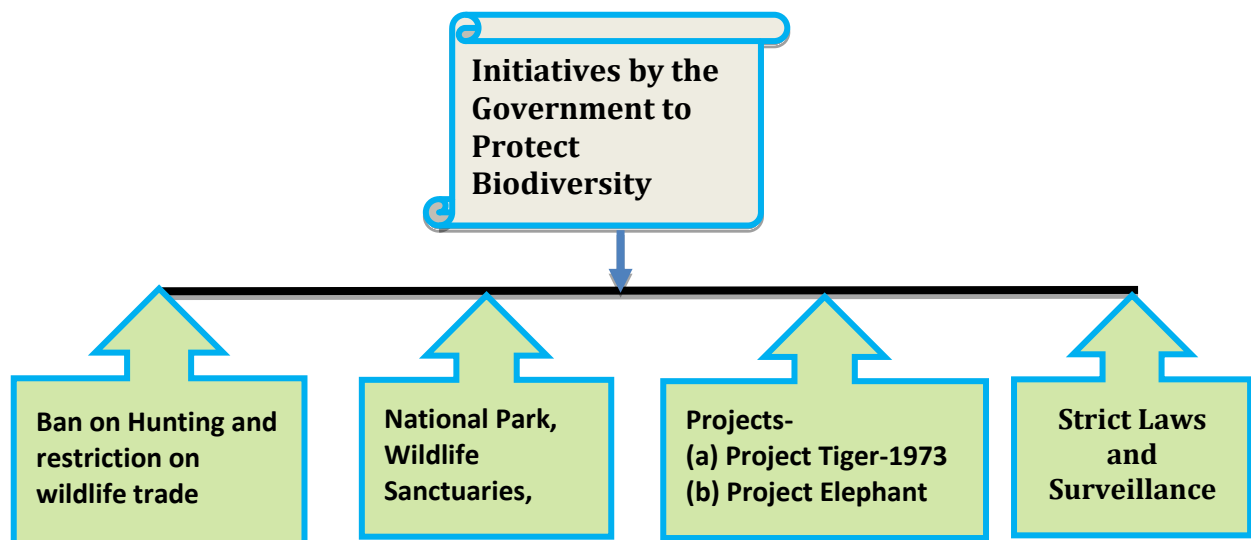
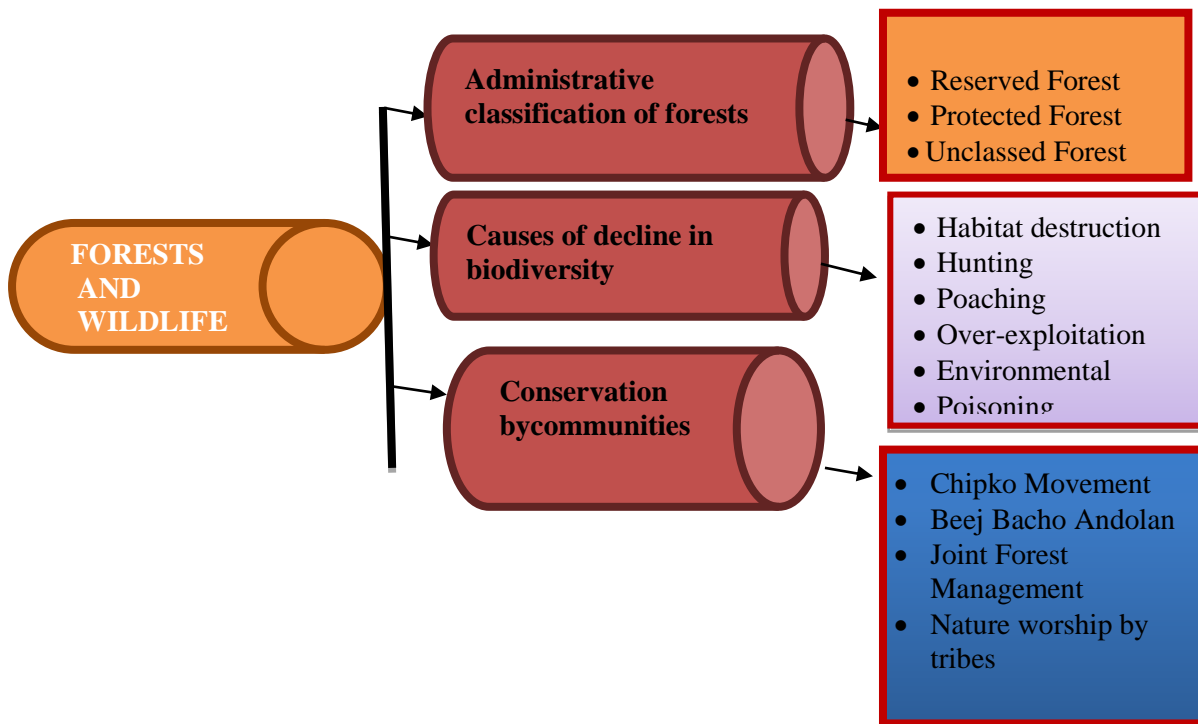
Ans.3 Wash your hands with soap and water when hands are visibly dirty or visibly soiled with blood or other body fluids or after using the toilet.

Q.4 What are the benefits of handwashing?

Ans. 4 Germs from unwashed hands can be transferred to other objects, like handrails, table tops, or toys, and then transferred to another person's hands. Removing germs through handwashing therefore helps prevent diarrhea and respiratory infections and may even help prevent skin and eye infections.

CHAPTER 2

FOREST AND WILD LIFE RESOURCES



ONE MARK QUESTIONS-

- (1) **Several virgin forests preserved in the pristine form are called ____**
(a) Sacred Forests
(b) Sacred Groves
(c) Sacred Trees
(d) Sacred Plants
- (2) **Which of the following categories of forests and wastelands belongs to government, private individuals' communities?**
(a) Protected Forests
(b) Reserved Forests
(c) Unclassed Forests
(d) Open Forests
- (3) **Teak Monoculture has damaged the natural forests in**
(a) Ganga Plain
(b) South India
(c) Brahmaputra Plain
(d) None of the above
- (4) **Which one is considered as Primary Producers in an ecological system**
(a) Forest
(b) Animals
(c) Sun
(d) Humans
- (5) **Which of the following states has the largest area under Permanent Forests?**
(a) Nagaland
(b) Assam
(c) Madhya Pradesh
(d) Kerala
- (6) **In _____ Tiger Reserve, Rajasthan villagers have fought against _____ by citing the Wildlife Protection Act.**
- (7) **_____ was the first state to pass the Joint Forests Management Resolution.**
- (8) **Farmers and citizen's groups like the _____ in Tehri and _____ have shown that adequate levels of diversified crop production without the use of synthetic chemicals are possible and economically viable.**
- (9) **Nature worship is an age-old tribal belief based on the premise that all creations of _____ have to be protected.**
- (10) **An integrated unit consisting of the community of living organisms and the physical environment is called _____.**

(11) Match the following: -

Column - A	Column – B
1. Corbett National Park	(a) Madhya Pradesh
2. Bandhavgarh National Park	(b) Assam
3. Sariska Wildlife Sanctuary	(c) Kerala
4. Manas Tiger Reserve	(d) Rajasthan
5. Periyar Tiger Reserve	(e) Uttarakhand

(12) What is Flora and Fauna?

Flora - Plants of a particular region or period

Fauna - Species of animals

(13) What are wildlife Sanctuaries?

A reserved area for preserving natural beauty, e.g., wildlife.

(14) What do you mean by Biodiversity?

Biodiversity is the sum total of all varieties of species of plants and animals and micro-organisms on the earth

(15) Name any two states which have largest percentage of reserved forests?

Kerala Tamil Nadu

(16) What is the main objective of the famous Chipko Movement?

To resist deforestation in several areas of the country. The Chipko Movement in the Himalayas to protect the forest cover was started by Sunder Lal Bahuguna.

(17) Mention any two factors responsible for depleting our forests and wildlife

- Expansion of agriculture
- Mining

(18) What is the main thrust of the Indian Wildlife Protection Act 1972?

To protect the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting and restricting trade in wildlife.

(19) Assertion: Destruction of forests and wildlife resulted into the loss of cultural (1) diversity

Reason: The conservation of forests and wildlife is essential to provide a better quality of life.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are true and Reason is the correct explanation of
- (b) Assertion and Reason are true but Reason is not the correct explanation of Assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but Reason is false
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are false.

(20) What is JFM?

Joint Forest Management: It was a programme launched for management and restoration of degraded forests by involving the local communities. Odisha was the first state to pass JFM Resolution

THREE MARK QUESTIONS

(21) Why is Biodiversity important?

- Co-existence in life forms
- Resource availability
- Ecological balance

(22) Mention a social impact of deforestation

- In many societies, women bear the major responsibility of collection of fuel, fodder, water and other basic subsistence needs.
- As these resources are depleted, the drudgery of women increases and
- sometimes they have to walk for more than 10 km to collect these resources.

(23) Name any three movements which were launched by local communities for the protection of forests or wildlife.

- Chipko Movement
- Beej Bachao Andolan
- Bhairi Dakav Sonchuri

(24) What is the Classification of forests on administrative basis and explain them.

- **Reserved forest:** Regarded most restricted and valuable forest. Local people are prohibited. These forests enjoy judicial protection. More than half of the total forest land has been declared reserved forests.
- **Protected Forests:** Protected from any further depletion. Sometimes the local community has got the rights for activities like hunting and grazing as they are living on the fringes of the forest because they sustain their livelihood wholly or partially from forest resources or products. Almost one-third of the total forest area is protected forest, as declared by the Forest Department. Reserved and protected forests are also referred to as permanent forest
- **Un classed forest:** These are other forests and wastelands belonging to both government and private individuals and communities

(25) What is NFP ?

National Forest Policy – to ensure environmental stability and maintenance of ecological balance including atmospheric equilibrium which are vital for sustenance of all life forms, human, animal and plant. It also stated that the forest area far lower than the desired 33 percent of geographical area.

(26) Read the paragraphs and answer the questions that follow

The biological loss is strongly correlated with the loss of cultural diversity. Such losses have increasingly marginalized and impoverished many indigenous and other forest-dependent communities, who directly depend on various components of the forest and wildlife for food, drink, medicine, culture, spirituality, etc. Within the poor, women are affected more than men. In many societies, women bear the major responsibility of collection of fuel, fodder, water and other basic subsistence needs. As these resources are depleted, the drudgery of women increases and sometimes they have to walk for more than 10 km to collect these resources. This causes serious health problems for women and negligence of home and children because of the increased hours of work, which often has serious social implications. The indirect impact of degradation such as severe drought or deforestation-induced floods, etc. also hits the poor the hardest.

(26.1) Mention the importance of forests in our life. (1)

- Productive uses - wood, Food, medicine, honey etc
- Protective uses - Habitat for animals, maintains ecological balance and food chain, rain oxygen

(26.2) How does biological loss of forest and wildlife correlate with the loss of cultural diversity? (2)

- Loss of cultural diversity – Many indigenous communities depend on forests for various components of forest and wildlife will be increasingly marginalized and impoverished
- Social Impact – Women have to walk long distance to collect basic necessities, increased hours of work, this causes health problems.
- Outcome of environment degradation- Severe drought, deforestation induced floods. Poverty – If forests are destroyed poor people will be deprived of the basic necessities.

(27) Nature worship is an age old tribal belief based on the premise that all creations of nature have to be protected. Such beliefs have preserved several virgin forests in pristine form called Sacred Groves (the forests of God and Goddesses). These patches of forest or parts of large forests have been left untouched by the local people and any interference with them is banned. Certain societies revere a particular tree which they have preserved from time immemorial. The Mundas and the Santhal of Chota Nagpur region worship mahua (*Bassia latifolia*) and kadamba (*Anthocaphalus cadamba*) trees, and the tribals of Odisha and Bihar worship the tamarind (*Tamarindus indica*) and mango (*Mangifera indica*) trees during weddings. To many of us, peepal and banyan trees are considered sacred

(27.1) Mahua and Kadamba are worshipped by which tribal community? (1)
Mundas and Santhals

(27.2) What are Sacred Groves? (1)
Forest fragments which are protected by communities and have religious connotations for the protecting community

(27.3) “Nature worship is an age-old tribal belief based on the premise that all creations of nature have to be protected” Which values does it promote? (1)

Preserve natural ecosystem/ conserve and maintain the diversity

FIVE MARK QUESTIONS

(28) The greatest damage inflicted on Indian forests was due to the extension of agriculture. Explain. Suggest any two ways to increase area under forests.

- The expansion of agriculture started during the colonial period.
- Between 1951 and 1980, according to the Forest Survey of India, over 26,200 km of forest areas was converted into agricultural lands all over India.
- Substantial parts of the tribal belts, especially in the north-eastern and central India, have been deforested or degraded by Shifting Cultivation (jhum), a type of 'slash and burn' agricultural method.

Suggestions:

- (i) Planting more trees
- (ii) Celebrating Van Mahotsav at community and school level.

(29) Mention any four major threats to the population of tiger? Explain the efforts made by the government to protect them.

- (i) Poaching for trade
- (ii) Shrinking habitat
- (iii) Depletion of prey base species
- (iv) Growing human population
- (v) The trade of tiger skins and the use of their bones in transitional medicines, especially in the Asian countries left the tiger population on the verge of extinction.

Efforts made by the government to protect them are as under :

- (i) Project Tiger, one of the well-publicised wildlife campaigns in the world, was launched in 1973.
- (ii) There are 42 tiger reserves in India covering an area of 37,761 sq km.
- (iii) Tiger conservation had been viewed not only as an effort to save an endangered species, but with equal importance as a means of preserving bio types of sizeable magnitude.
- (iv) Some of the tiger reserves of India are Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand, Sunderbans National Park in West Bengal etc.

(30) "Human Activities affected the depletion of flora and fauna" Explain.

- Overutilization of forests
- Colonial Plantation
- Agricultural expansion
- Multipurpose river projects
- Mining
- Grazing and fuel wood collection

Chapter 2 Forests and Wildlife

ANSWERS

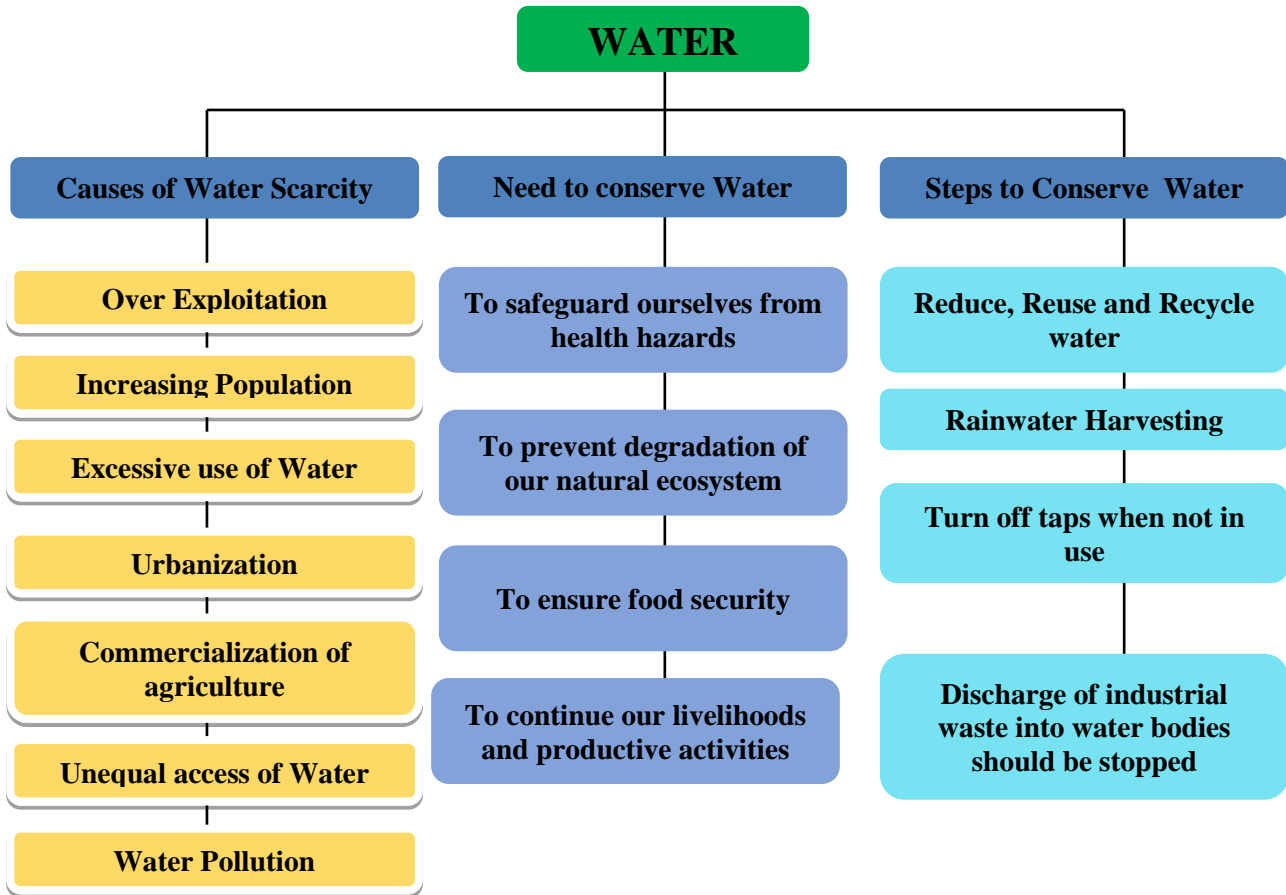
- (1) (b) Sacred Groves
 - (2) (c) Unclassed Forests
 - (3) (b) South India
 - (4) (a) Forests
 - (5) (c) Madhya Pradesh
 - (6) Sariska , Mining
 - (7) Odisha
 - (8) Beej Bachao Andolan, Navdanya
 - (9) Nature
 - (10) Ecosystem
 - (11) 1.(e) 2.(a) 3. (d) 4. (b) 5. (c)
- (19.3) (b) Assertion and Reason are true but Reason is not the correct explanation of

Assertion

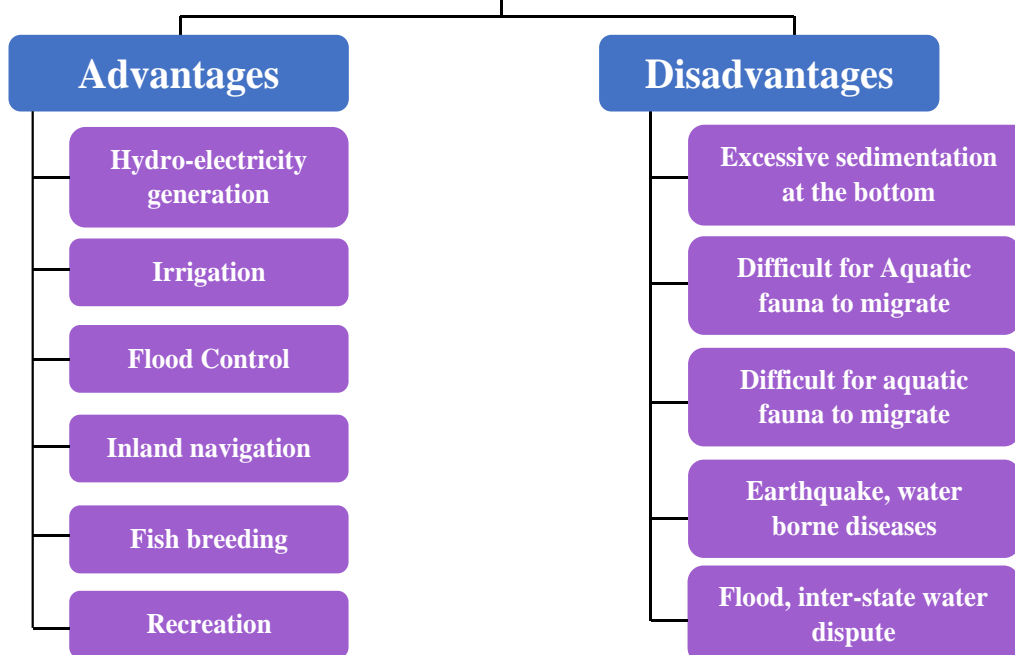
NOTE: No Map from this chapter as per list of map items, 2022-23.

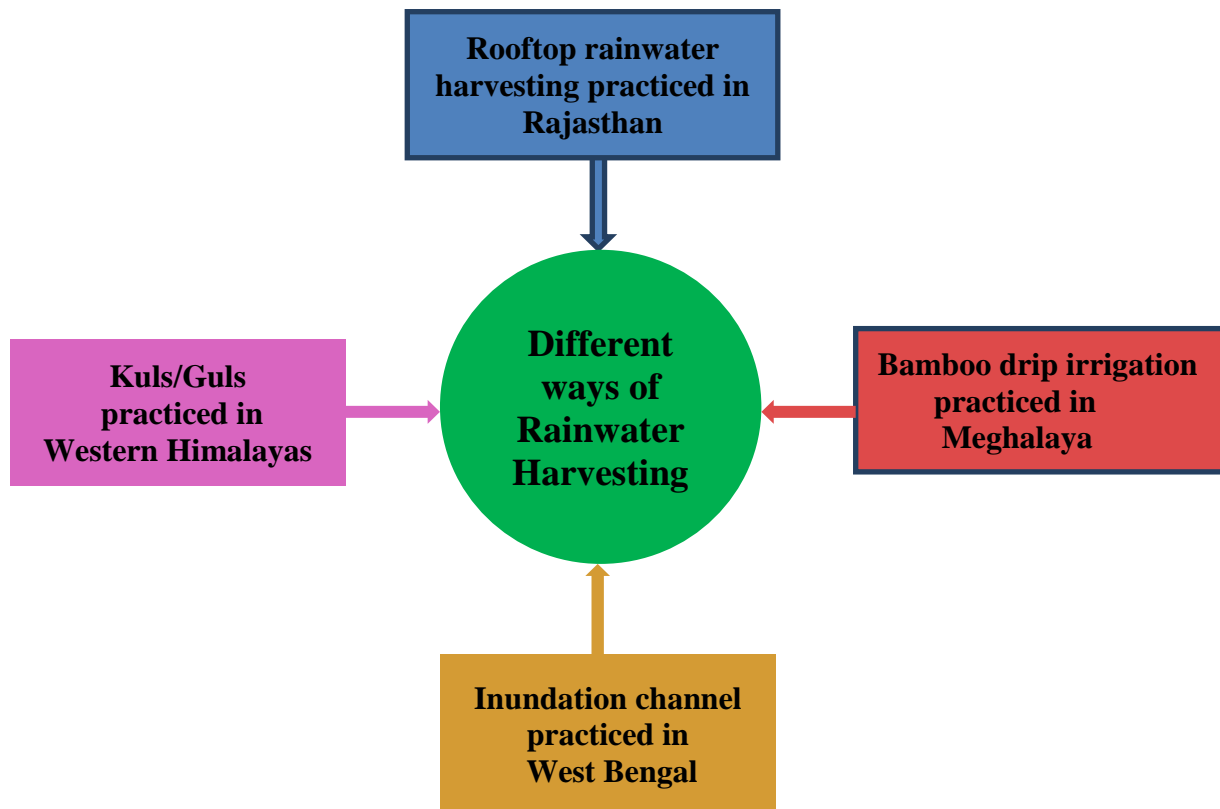
CHAPTER 3

WATER RESOURCES



Multi-purpose Project





KEY WORDS

1. **Dam**-Embankments or structures built across the river to store rain water for various uses.
2. **Inundation Canal** -Canal meant for diverting flood water mainly during the rainy season.
3. **Rain water Harvesting**- It is a technique of increasing the recharge of ground water by capturing and storing rainwater by construction of dug well, percolation pit etc.
4. **Guls/Kuls**-Diversion channel for agriculture in the hill and mountain regions.
5. **Khadins-Johads**-Rain fed storage structures in agricultural fields that allow water to stand and moisten the soil.
6. **Multipurpose project**-A river valley project which serves a number of purposes.
7. **Water scarcity**- Shortage of water as compared to its demand.
8. **Rainwater Harvesting**- Technique of increasing the recharge of groundwater and storing rainwater by constructing well, percolating pits and check-dams.

(3 Marks)

Question and Answer

1. Why are multi-purpose River Valley Projects called the ‘temples of modern India’?

A)-Economic prosperity-agriculture, urbanization, Promotion of tourism

Integrate the development of agriculture and the village economy with rapid industrialization

2. Why is it necessary to conserve water resources in India? Give three reasons?

A) To ensure food security.

To control over exploitation and mismanagement

To safeguard ourselves from health hazard as quality of water is affected badly.

3.. How are dams classified?

A) Dams are classified according to structure and height like timber dams, embankments, masonry, large medium height or low dams.

4. Why was the Narmada Bachao Andolan started?

A) Andolan focused on environmental issue, rehabilitation of displaced people against the building of Sardar Sarovar Dam.

5) Why multi-purpose projects and large dams have been opposed?

A) These projects and dams have been opposed because they lead to the large-scale displacement of local people and communities. They have to give up their land and livelihood and their meager access to resources

6) What is meant by hydrological cycle?

A) Hydrological cycle, also known as water cycle, describes the continuous movement of water on, above and below the surface of the earth through evaporation, condensation and precipitation.

7) How does over-exploitation of water resources lead to its scarcity?

A) Over-exploitation of water resources lead to falling ground water levels thus causing water scarcity.

8) Read the following passage and answer the questions-

Irrigation has also changed the cropping pattern of many regions with farmers shifting to water intensive and commercial crops. This has great ecological consequences like Salinization of soil. At the same time, it has transformed the social landscape for e.g.; increasing the social gap between the richer land owners and landless poor. As a result, we can see, the dams did create conflicts between people wanting different uses and benefits from the same water resources. In Gujarat, the Sabarmati basin farmers were agitated and almost caused a riot over the higher priority given to water supply in Urban areas, particularly during droughts. Inter-state water disputes were also becoming common with regard to sharing the costs and benefits of multi-purpose projects.

Q.8.1 How did cropping pattern change by irrigation?

8.2 Analyse the statement “Dams created conflict between people.”

8.3 What are the consequences of irrigation on Soil and social landscape

9) Why is quality of some water resources inferior

A) It is inferior due to domestic and industrial effluence- chemicals, pesticides and fertilisers and also Garbage dumping in and around water bodies.

10. Explain how Water becomes a renewable resource.

A) It is continuously being renewed and recharged through the hydrological cycle where a three process takes place as Evaporation, Condensation and Precipitation. This process of water cycle is never ending and hence water is renewable resource

(5Marks)

1) Write a note on the traditional method of rain water harvesting in western Himalayas, Bengal and Rajasthan?

A) In hill and mountainous regions, people-built diversion channels like the ‘guls’ or ‘kuls’ of the Western Himalayas for agriculture. In the flood plains of Bengal, people developed inundation channels to irrigate their fields.

In Rajasthan - The tankas were part of the well-developed rooftop rainwater harvesting system and

were built inside the main house of the courtyard. They were connected to the sloping roofs of the houses through a pipe.

2) Explain any five main causes of water pollution.

- Industrial effluents dumped without treatment.
- Thermal Pollution-Polluted hot water is pumped into the river.
- Domestic waste, Use of washy, oily spills from the ships.
- Use of excessive fertilizers- Drip into the soil- Underground water get polluted.
- Garbage dumping near water bodies.

3) In recent years, multi-purpose projects and large dams have come under great scrutiny and opposition – Why?

- A) a) Excessive sedimentation,
b) Difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate,
c) large scale displacement of local communities,
d) Unsuccessful in control of floods at the time of excessive rain fall,
e) Induced earth quakes, caused water borne diseases and pests pollution.
f) Release of water from dams during heavy rains.

4) Give five reasons responsible for water scarcity in India.

A) Five reasons responsible for water scarcity in India are-

(i) Population in India is growing fast. A large population means more water not only for domestic use but also to produce more food. To facilitate higher food grain production, water resources are being exploited to expand irrigated areas and dry-season agriculture.

(ii) The ever-increasing number of industries have made matters worse by exerting pressure on existing freshwater resources. Industries are heavy users of water. They also require power to run them. Much of this energy comes from hydroelectric power.

(iii) Most of the housing societies or colonies in the cities have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their water needs. This has caused depletion of water resources in several of these cities.

(iv) The quality of water is deteriorating day by day due to domestic and industrial wastes, chemicals, pesticides and fertilizers used in agriculture. As a result, even areas with sufficient water are suffering from acute water scarcity. This scarcity is mainly due to bad quality of water.

(v) Unequal distribution and availability of water resources have also aggravated the problem. There are areas which do not get abundant rainfall while in some areas flood like situation prevails, especially during rainy season. In both the situations people face the problem of safe drinking water.

5) 'The need of the hour is to conserve and manage our water resources'. Justify the statement.

A) There is an urgent need to conserve and manage our water resources to

- Safeguard ourselves from health hazards
- Ensure food security.

- Continuation of our livelihoods and productive activities.
- Prevent degradation of our natural ecosystems.
- Over-exploitation and mismanagement of water resources will impoverish this resource and cause ecological crisis that may have serious impact on our lives.

(1Marks)

- 1) Which state has made roof top rainwater harvesting structure compulsory to all the houses across the state?
 - (a) Kerala
 - (b) Karnataka
 - (c) Tamil Nadu
 - (d) Andhra Pradesh
- 2) Nagarjuna Sagar Dam is built on which river?
 - (a) Chenab
 - (b) Mahanadi
 - (c) Krishna
 - (d) Satluj
- 3) The first multi-purpose project of India was
 - (a) Sivasamudram
 - (b) Damodar Valley
 - (c) Hirakud
 - (d) Rajasthan Canal
- 4) Sardar Sarovar Dam is constructed on
 - (a) River Krishna
 - (b) River Mahanadi
 - (c) River Kaveri
 - (d) River Narmada
- 5) Oceans contain volume of water.
 - (a) 90 percent
 - (b) 75 percent
 - (c) 96.5 percent
 - (d) 98 percent
- 6) Which one of the following is not a source of freshwater?
 - (a) Oceans
 - (b) Surface run off
 - (c) Ice-sheets
 - (d) Groundwater
- 7) Hirakud dam is built on which river?
 - (a) Chenab
 - (b) Mahanadi
 - (c) Krishna
 - (d) Satluj

Fill in the blanks:

- 8) Diversion channels are built in and regions of India.
- 9) Drip irrigation system is a means of conservation.
- 10) Today dams are built for reasons.
- 11) Different social groups do not have access to water.
- 12) Multi-purpose projects were launched in India after

13) Which of the following multipurpose projects is found in the Satluj-Beas River basin?

- (a) Hirakud Project
- (b) Damodar Valley Corporation
- (c) Bhakra Nangal Project
- (d) Rihand Project

14) On which of the following issues did the Narmada Bachao Andolan first focus?

- (a) Benefits of irrigation to landless farmers
- (b) Environmental issues related to submergence of trees under the dam water
- (c) Rehabilitation of the people displaced due to construction of the dam
- (d) Economic issues of wastage of money for the construction of the dam

ASSERTION AND REASON

Read the statement and choose the correct option-

- A. Both **A** and **R** are true and R is true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true and R is true and R is the correct explanation of A
- C. A is true but R is false
- D. Both Assertion and Reason are false

15) Assertion (A): Rainwater harvesting is to collect and store rain water.

Reason (R): Rainwater can be directed to recharge the underground water

16) Assertion (A): Sardar Sarovar Dam has been built over the Narmada River in Gujarat.

Reason (R): This is one of the largest water resource projects of India covering four states

STATE WHETHER TRUE OR FALSE

17) Rooftop rainwater harvesting is the most common practice in Shillong and Meghalaya

18) Tamil Nādu solved the problem of acute shortage of water.

19) Salal Dam is built on Chenab River

20) Water stored in dams does not produce electricity

ANSWER KEY

8.1. Many farmers because of increased availability of water have switched over to the cultivation of water intensive commercial crops such as Jute/Cotton and Tea, rather than food grains such as Bajra, Wheat and Ragi.

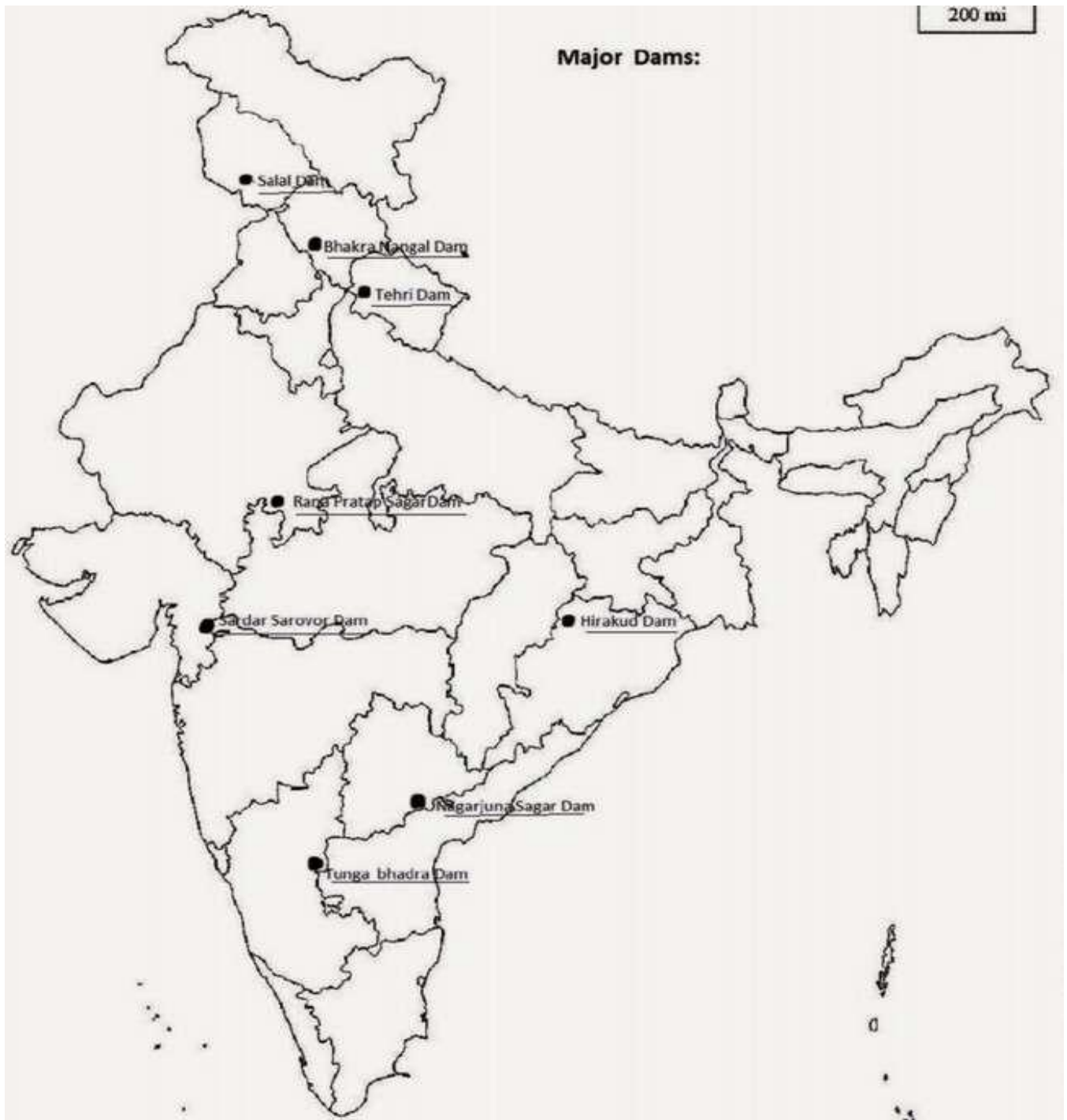
8.2. Dams cause mostly internal disputes for the sharing and non-sharing of water benefits to each other. Displacement of local people of the area.

8.3. Water logging and salinisation of soil is common problem associated with irrigation.

MCQ

- 1. Tamil Nadu
- 2. Krishna
- 3. Damodar Valley
- 4. Narmada river
- 5. 96.5%
- 6. Surface water
- 7. Mahanadi
- 8. Hilly and mountainous
- 9. Water
- 10. Multipurpose
- 11. Equal
- 12. Independence
- 13. Bhakra Nangal project
- 14. Environmental issue related to submergence of trees under the water.
- 15. A
- 16. A

- 17. True
- 18. True
- 19. True
- 20. False



CHAPTER 4

AGRICULTURE

TYPES OF FARMING

- Primitive Subsistence
- Intensive Subsistence
- Commercial

CROPPING SEASON

- Kharif
- Rabi
- Zaid

TECHNO-INSTITUTION REFORMS

- Land Reforms
- Abolition of Zamindari system
- Green Revolution
- KCC, PAIS
- Loan to farmers, MSP
- Research and developments
- Weather Bullet

Types of Farming

(a) Natural

Primitive Subsistence Farming

- Practiced on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools
- Depend on Monsoon • It's 'Slash and Burn' agriculture

Intensive Subsistence Farming

- Practiced in areas of high population • Labour intensive farming • High doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used

Commercial Farming

- Use of higher doses of modern inputs, such as High Yielding Variety (HYV) Seeds, chemical fertilizers etc.
- Plantation is a type of commercial farming

Sl.No.	Crop	Geographical requirement	Areas of Production
1.	Rice-Kharif Crop	Staple Crop in India, Kharif crop, requires 25° C temperature, and high humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm.	Plains of north and north-eastern India, coastal areas and the deltaic regions. West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Punjab, Tamil Nadu, Kerala.
2.	Wheat-Rabi Crop	Temperature 15° C-20° C 50-75 cm annual rainfall, cool growing season and bright Sunshine at the time of ripening.	Ganga-Satluj plains in the northwest Black soil region of the Deccan Punjab, Haryana, Uttar, Pradesh
3.	i)Jowar, ii)bajra iii)ragi	i)Rain-fed crop – grown in moist areas ii)sandy soils and shallow black soil. iii)Crop of dry regions and grows well on red, black, sandy, loamy and shallow black soils	i)Maharashtra, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh ii) Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, iii) Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Himachal Pradesh
4.	Sugarcane source of sugar, gur (jaggary), khandsari and molasses.	Tropical as well as a subtropical crop. It grows well in hot and humid climate with a temperature of 21°C to 27°C and an annual rainfall between 75cm. and 100cm	Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu,
5.	Tea - Beverage crop	Grows in tropical and subtropical climates, require warm and moist frost-free climate all through the year, fertile well drained soil, Temperature 20° C to 30° C. Rainfall 150-300cm.	Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala.
6.	Coffee - Beverage crop	Temperature 15° C to 28° C Rainfall 150-200cm	Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

7.	Cotton - Fibre Crop	Black soil, high temperature, 210 frost free days and bright sunshine for its growth.	Maharashtra, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh,
8.	Jute- 'Golden Fibre'	Grows well on well drained fertile soils in the floodplains where soil is renewed every year, High temperature during its growth.	West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Odisha
9.	Maize - Food and Fodder Crop	kharif crop which requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C and grows well in old alluvial soil.	Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh,

Cropping Seasons –

•**Kharif**- Grown with onset of monsoon, harvested in September-October, Crops-Rice (Paddy), Maize, Jowar, Bajra, Tur, Cotton, Jute, Groundnut, Soyabean

•**Rabi**- Sown in winter from October to December and harvested in summer from April to June. Crops – Wheat, Barley, Peas, Gram, Mustard.

•**Zaid**- Between Kharif and Rabi seasons, short season, Crops- watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber, vegetables, and fodder crops.

Multiple Choice Questions

1) Which of the following type of economic activity is agriculture?

(a) Secondary (b) Primary (c) Tertiary (d) Organized

2) 'Slash and Burn' agriculture is –

(a) Shifting agriculture (b) Commercial agriculture (c) Intensive agriculture (d) None of these

3) Hoe, dao digging sticks are associated with

(a) Primitive subsistence farming (b) Green Revolution (c) Commercial farming (d) Industrial revolution

4) Which of the following conditions is not a feature for primitive subsistence farming?

(a) Fertility of soil (b) Monsoon (c) Favourable atmosphere (d) Sufficient capital

(5) Name the type of farming, which has an interface of agriculture and industry.

(a) plantation agriculture (b) Slash and Burn agriculture (c) Intensive Subsistence (d) None of the above

(6) What is Primitive subsistence farming called in Bastar district of Chattisgarh and in Andaman and Nicobar Island?

(a) Ray (b) Valre (c) Khil (d) Dipa

(7) Which one of the following describes a system of agriculture where a single crop is grown on a large area?

(a) Shifting Agriculture (b) Plantation Agriculture (c) Horticulture (d) intensive Agriculture.

(8) Which of the following oil-seeds is a Rabi crop?

(a) Sesamum (b) Linseed (c) Groundnut (d) None of the above

(9) Karnataka is famous for which plantation crops

(a) Coffee (b) Tea (c) jute (d) Wheat

(10) Name the crop grown with the onset of monsoon in different parts of the country.

(a) Kharif Crop (b) Rabi Crop (c) Zaid (d) None of the above

(11) Which of the following are plantation crops?

(a) Rice and maize (b) Wheat and pulses (c) Tea, coffee, banana and sugarcane (d) Rice and Wheat

(12) Rabi crops are:

(a) sown in winter and harvested in summer (b) sown during rainy season and harvested in winter (c) sown in summer and harvested in winter (d) None of the above

(13) A short season between the rabi and kharif season is known as:

(a) Aus (b) Boro (c) Zaid (d) None of the above

(14) The two main wheat growing regions are:

(a) The Ganga-Sutlej plains and the Deccan Trap (b) North-eastern part and eastern-coastal plains (c) Deccan plateau and Konkan coast (d) None of the above

(15) Which of the following crop is a major source of protein in a vegetarian diet?

(a) Wheat (b) Rice (c) Pulses (d) Oilseeds

(16) Rearing of silk worms for the production of silk fibre is known as:

(a) Sericulture (b) Aquaculture (c) Viticulture (d) Pisciculture

(17) Ragi is rich in

(a) Zinc (b) Iodine (c) Phosphorus (d) Iron

(18) Which of the following was the main focus of our First Five Year Plan

(a) Cost of Food (b) Globalisation (c) Land Reforms (d) Industrialisation

(19) Which type of agriculture is famous in North Eastern States like Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram, and Nagaland

(a) Commercial (b) Intensive (c) Jhumming (d) Commercial Subsistence

(20) Choose the correct option for the Puzzle “It requires high doses of biochemical. It is practiced in areas of high population. It produces good Yield with irrigation facilities.”

(a) Intensive Subsistence farming (b) Primitive subsistence farming (c) Commercial farming (d) All of the above

(21) Name the type of agriculture shown in the picture below-



(a) Primitive subsistence farming (b) Intensive subsistence farming (c) Commercial farming (d) Slash and burn farming

(22) Name the crop given in the picture, which is a source of Gur, Khandasari, Molasses



(a) Cotton (b) Rubber (c) Jute (d) Sugarcane

(23) KCC stands for _____

(a) Kissan Credited Card (b) Kissan Credit Carding (c) Kissan Crediting Card (d) Kissan Credit Card

(24) Bhoodan- Gramdan movement was initiated by _____

(a) Government of India (b) Mahatma Gandhi (c) Vinoba Bhave (d) Jawaharlal Nehru

(25) Complete the following table with correct information with regard to cultivation of Rice crop.

	Type of cropping season	Annual Rainfall	Temperature required for its growth
Rice	A -?	Above 100 cm	B -?

(a) A-Kharif: B- Above 40°C (b) A- Kharif: B- Above 25°C (c) A- Rabi: B- Above 35°C
(d) A- Zaid: B- Above 20°C

(26) Facilities like irrigation, awareness about modern techniques of agriculture, Kissan credit cards, provision of crop insurance, personal accident insurance scheme, special weather bulletins and minimum support price are all a part of_____.

(a) Technical and institutional measures (b) Input measures (c) Physical measures
(d) Human resources

(27) Match the following items given in column I with those in column II.

Sl.No.	Column I	Column II
1.	Jute	a) Oilseed
2.	Coffee	b) Food and Fodder crop
3.	Maize	c) Beverage Crop
4.	Sesamum	d) Fibre Crop

(A) 1-a, 2-b, 3-c, 4-d

(B) 1-d, 2-c, 3-b, 4-a

(C) 2-a, 1-b, 3- c, 4-d

(D) 3-a, 4-b, 1-c, 2-d

(28) Why is the share of agriculture in the GDP declining

Table 4.1: India: Growth Rate of GDP and Major Sectors (in %)

Sector	2013-14	2014-15	2015-16
Agriculture	4.2	-0.2	1.1
Industry	5.0	5.9	7.3
Services	7.8	10.3	9.2
GDP	6.6	7.2	7.6



Source: Economic Survey 2015-16

(a) Small size of land holdings; (b) Inadequate use of modern technology; (c) Lack of infrastructure (d) All of the above

(29) _____ is a coarse grain grown in India.

(a) Jowar (b) Hemp (c) Rice (d) Coffee

(30) White Revolution, related to _____ production

(a) Cotton (b) Milk (c) Oil seeds (d) Fruits Assertion and Reason

1. Assertion(A): India's primary activity is Agriculture Reason(R): Two thirds of its population is engaged in agricultural activities

2. Assertion(A): Crops are grown depending upon variations in soil, climate and cultivation practices Reason(R): Crops are also grown according to availability of water.

3. Assertion (A): Organic farming is much in vogue. Reason(R): In organic farming crops are grown using high doses of chemical fertilisers and insecticides.

4. Assertion (A): Indian Farmers should diversify their cropping pattern Reason (R): Diversification of agriculture will increase income and reduce environmental degradation

5. Assertion (A): Pulses are leguminous crops Reason (R): These help in restoring soil fertility by fixing nitrogen from air

Source Based Question

Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

(A) The Government of India embarked upon introducing agricultural reforms to improve Indian agriculture in the 1960s and 1970s. The Green Revolution based on the use of package technology and the White Revolution (Operation Flood) were some of the strategies initiated to improve the lot of Indian agriculture. But this too led to the concentration of development in few selected areas. Therefore, in the 1980s and 1990s, a comprehensive land development programme was initiated, which included both institutional and technical reforms. Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, fire and disease, establishment of Grameen banks, cooperative societies and banks for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest were some important steps in this direction.

1) Package technology refers to –

(a) High Yielding Variety of Seeds, (b) Modern equipment's of tilling the soil, (c) Fertilizers and pesticides (d) All the above

2) Farmers are provided insurance in case of _____. (a) Change of regional party (b) Restructuring of bank (c) Natural disasters (d) Technological reforms

3) Which of the following is associated with Operation flood?

(a) Green revolution (b) White Revolution (c) Gene Revolution (d) Blood less revolution

(4) What is the aim directly associated with Comprehensive land development?

(a) Industrial development (b) Farmers' development (c) Development of banking (d) Political development

(5) How are Grameen Bank beneficial for the farmers?

(a) Always offer interest free loan (b) Offer loans at low interest rate (c) To provide grain storage (d) Banks have branches in every town

(B) It is an equatorial crop, but under special conditions, it is also grown in tropical and Sub-tropical areas. It requires moist and humid climate with rainfall of more than 200 cm. and temperature above 25°C. It is an important industrial raw material. It is mainly grown in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Andaman and Nicobar and Garo hills of Meghalaya.

(1) The Crop discussed in the extract above-

(a) Jute (b) Cotton (c) Sugarcane (d) Rubber

(2) It is an example of _____ Crop.

(a) Food (b) Plantation (c) Beverage (d) Horticulture

(3) Name the island of India where this crop is grown

(a) Lakshadweep (b) Tamil Nadu (c) Kerala (d) Andaman Nicobar

(4) The crop is in great demand for _____ raw material.

(a) Industrial (b) Agricultural (c) Plantation (d) None of the above

(5) The crop is grown in _____.

(a) Tropical (b) Sub-tropical (c) Dry areas (d) Both A and B

(C) Under globalisation, particularly after 1990, the farmers in India have been exposed to new challenges. Despite being an important producer of rice, cotton, rubber, tea, coffee, jute and spices our agricultural products are not able to compete with the developed countries because of the highly subsidised agriculture in those countries. Today, Indian agriculture finds itself at the crossroads. To make agriculture successful and profitable, proper thrust should be given to the improvement of the condition of marginal and small farmers. The green revolution promised much. But today it's under controversies. It is being alleged that it has caused land degradation due to overuse of chemicals, drying aquifers and vanishing biodiversity. The keyword today is "gene revolution", which includes genetic engineering. Genetic engineering is recognised as a powerful supplement in inventing new hybrid varieties of seeds.

(1) Farmers in India have been exposed to new challenge under globalisation. Identify one such challenges based on given paragraph?

(a) Stiff Competition (b) Stability in Prices of crops (c) Land distribution (d) None of these

(2) What was the main objective of the Green Revolution?

(a) Improvement in the conditions of the farmers (b) Political stability (c) Crop insurance against theft (d) Right of inheritance

(3) The key word today is “gene revolution” which includes genetic engineering. Which of the following is recognized as genetic engineering?

(a) Inventing insecticides and pesticides (b) Inventing biological inputs and fertilisers (c) Inventing new hybrid varieties of seeds (d) Inventing organic and inorganic farming

(4) Why is green revolution under controversies?

(a) loss of soil fertility. (b) vanishing biodiversity (c) Increasing yield (d) Both (a) and (b)

(5) Farming done without using any type of chemical fertilisers, or insecticides is known as _____.

(a) Organic farming (b) Inorganic farming (c) Mixed farming (d) Collective farming.

(D) Rinjha lived with her family in a small village at the outskirts of Diphu in Assam. She enjoys watching her family members clearing, slashing and burning a patch of land for cultivation. She often helps them in irrigating the fields with water running through a bamboo canal from the nearby spring. She loves the surroundings and wants to stay here as long as she can, but this little girl has no idea about the declining fertility of the soil and her family’s search for fresh a patch of land in the next season.

(1) Can you name the type of farming Rinjha’s family is engaged in?

(a) Shifting Agriculture (b) Commercial Agriculture (c) Bamboo Plantation (d) None of these

(2) One can infer from the above information that the primary disadvantage of this cultivation is –

(a) Deforestation (b) Causes soil erosion (a) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these

(3) Why do the family go in search fresh patch of land for cultivation

(a) for seasonal fruits (b) due to loss of soil fertility (c) for sight seeing (d) for trade

(4) In this type of cultivation, fertility of the soil is through _____ process.

(b) Natural (c) Artificial (d) Government agencies (e) None of these.

Distribution of Rice- Major and Minor Areas in India



India: Distribution of Rice

Distribution of Wheat – Major and Minor areas in India



MAP BASED QUESTION.

Mark the states known for the following crops on the map of India.

- (a) Sugarcane plantation
- (b) Coffee plantation
- (c) Tea cultivation
- (d) Rubber cultivation
- (e) Cotton cultivation
- (f) Jute cultivation



ANSWERS

Q.No.	Answers	Q.No.	Answers	Q.No.	Answers
1	b	11	C	21	c
2.	a	12	A	22	d
3.	a	13	C	23	d
4	d	14	A	24	c
5	a	15	C	25	b
6	d	16	A	26	a
7	b	17	D	27	b
8	b	18	C	28	d
9	a	19	C	29	a
10	a	20	A	30	b

Answers- Assertion Reason

Ans1) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.

(Explanation of assertion- Agriculture is a primary activity, which produces most of the food that we consume. Two-thirds of India's population is involved in agricultural activities and earns livelihood through it).

Ans2) Both assertion and reason are true but the reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(Explanation of assertion- Variety of food and non – food crops are Grown in different parts of the country depending upon the variations in soil, Climate and cultivation practices. Major crops grown in India are rice, wheat, millets, pulses, tea, coffee, sugarcane, oil seeds, cotton and jute, etc).

Ans3) Assertion is true but reason is false

(Explanation of assertion – Organic farming is much in vogue today because it is practiced without factory made chemicals such as fertilizers and pesticides. Hence, it does not affect environment and human beings in a negative manner)

Ans4) Both are true.

Ans5) Both are true

Answers - Source Based Questions

- (A) Ans1) (d) All of these
Ans2) (c) Natural disasters
Ans3) (b) White Revolution
Ans4) (b) Farmers' development
Ans5) (b) Offer loans at low interest rate
- (B) Ans1) (d) Rubber
Ans2) (b) Plantation
Ans3) (d) Andaman Nicobar
Ans4) (a) Industrial
Ans5) (d) Both A and B
- (C) Ans1) (a) Stiff Competition
Ans2) (a) Improvement in the conditions of the farmers
Ans3) (c) Invention new hybrid varieties of seeds
Ans4) (d) Both (a) and (b)
Ans5) (a) Organic farming
- (D) Ans1) (a) Shifting Agriculture
Ans2) (d) Both a and b
Ans3) (b) due to loss of soil fertility
Ans4) (a) Natural

AGRICULTURE

Institutional and Technical Reforms to Help Farmers

1. Write different types of farming with cropping pattern. 3M

Types of farming main cropping seasons in India

Primitive Subsistence farming	Rabi
Intensive Subsistence farming	Kharif
Commercial farming	Zaid

2. Describe different types of crops with categories? 3M

Grains and Leguminous Crops	Food Crops other than Grains	Non-Food Crops
Rice		Oil seeds
Rubber		
Wheat	Tea	Fibre Crops
Millets	Sugarcane	Cotton
Maize	Coffee	jute
Pulses	Horticulture Crops	

3. Define Agriculture. Briefly describe different types of farming. {5M}

Agriculture is a primary activity which produces the food we eat and raw material for industries.

India is an agriculturally important country, two-third of the population is engaged in agriculture.

Types Of Farming

1) Primitive Subsistence Farming: -

It is done on a small patch of land with help of primitive tools like hole, digging sticks and dao, and family labour. The production is for self-consumption which depends on monsoon, natural fertility of the soil and other environmental condition. It is also called Slash and Burn Agriculture.

In this agriculture, tribals/farmers clear a patch of forest land and burn it for their agricultural practice and then leave the patch idle for few years. This allows the nature to replenish the fertility of the soil.

It is known by different names: -

<u>Name</u>	<u>Place</u>
Jhumming	North Eastern India
Dipa	Baster and A&N Islands
Milpa	Mexica and Central
Roca	America
Ray	Brazil
Masole	Vietnam
	Central Africa

2) Intensive Subsistence Farming: -

It is done on land of high population pressure. High doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation is used to obtain higher production.

3) Commercial Farming: -

The main feature is that high doses of modern inputs like high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, pesticides, and insecticides used to obtain higher productivity.

Plantation is a type of commercial farming in which only a single crop is grown on a large-scale, using capital intensive input with the help of migrant labourers. A good network of transport, communication, proper market facilities are required for this. Eg:- Tea in Assam and coffee in Karnataka

4. What are three different types of cropping pattern? 3M

3 Main Cropping Seasons Of India

#1)Rabi Crops:-

These crops are sown between October to December, and are harvested between April to June.

Eg:- Wheat, Barley, Peas, Gram and Mustard.

#2)Kharif Crops:-

These crops are sown at the onset of monsoon (May-July) season, and are harvested in September-October.

Eg:- Paddy, Maize, Jowar, Bajra, Urad, Moong etc.

#3)Zaid Crops:-

These crops are sown between Rabi and Kharif season (March-June).

Eg:- Watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber, vegetables and fodder crops etc.

MAJOR CROPS OF INDIA

Grains And Leguminous Crops

Grains: - Rice, wheat, millets and maize

Leguminous crops:- Pulses

5. Explain specialities of Rice cultivation in India. {5M }

Rice:-

- India is second largest producer of rice in world after China.
- It is the most important and staple food crop of majority of Indians.
- It requires high rainfall (above 100cm) and high temperature (above 25°C) to grow.
- It can be grown in low rainfall areas with help of proper irrigation.
- Major rice producing states are West Bengal, Bihar, Chattisgarh, Odisha, Jharkhand, UP, Tamil Nadu, Assam, Kerala etc.

6. Explain specialities of Wheat cultivation in India. {5M }

Wheat:-

- It is the main food crop in north and north-western part of country.
 - This Rabi crop requires a cool season and bright sunshine at the time of ripening.
- Rainfall should be between 50 to 75cm.
 - There are two important wheat growing zones in country:-
 - (i) Ganga - Satluj Plains
 - (ii) Black Soil Region in Deccan
 - Major wheat producing states are UP, MP, Haryana, Punjab, Uttarakhand Rajasthan.

7. What do you know about millets? {3M }

Millets:-

- Also called coarse grains.
- Jowar, Bajra and Ragi are important millets grown in India.
- Have high nutritional value.

8. Write any three specialities of Maize cultivation. {3M }

Maize:-

- It is a crop which is used both as food and fodder.
- It is a kharif crop but also Rabi crop in Bihar.
- It requires temperature between 21°C - 27°C.
- It grows well on old alluvial soil.
- Major maize producing states are UP, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka.

9. Why pulses are important for India? Explain its importance with climatic condition. {5 }

Pulses:-

- India is largest producer and consumer of pulses.
- It is the main source of protein in a vegetarian diet.
 - Major pulses grown in India are Urad , Arhar , Moong , Masur , Peas and Gram.
- Pulses need less moisture and can survive in dry climate.
- Being leguminous crops, all these are grown as rotational crop to restore the soil fertility by fixing nitrogen (except Arhar).
 - major pulses producing states are UP, Rajasthan, MP, Maharashtra and Karnataka.

Food Crops Other Than Grains

10. What are the Importance of oil seeds in India? {3M}

Oil Seeds:-

- Oil seeds cover about 12 % of total cropped area of India.
- Major oil seeds grown in India are Groundnut Mustard, Soyabean, Linseed, Cotton seeds, Castor seeds and Sesamum (Til).
- Some of them are used as raw material of soaps, cosmetics and ointment.
- India is the second largest producer of groundnut after China.
- Groundnut is kharif crop.
- Gujarat is the largest producer of groundnut, followed by Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu.

11. Explain tea cultivation in India? {5M}

Tea:-

- India is the second largest producer of tea in world after china.
- It is a beverage crop which was initially introduced by Britishers and example of plantation crop.
- It is grown on well drained fertile soil, rich in humus and organic matter.
- Tea bushes require warm and moist frost-free climate all through the year.
- Major tea producing states are Assam, hills of Darjeeling, West Bengal, Kerala, Uttarakhand, Tripura, Meghalaya.

12. Explain sugarcane cultivation in India? {5M}

Sugarcane:-

- This is a tropical as well as sub-tropical crop that requires almost a year to grow.
- It can be grown on a variety of soils, as long as they are fertile and well drained.
- It requires hot and humid climate to grow with temperature between 21°C - 27°C and annual rainfall between 75-100cm.
- Position of India is second in world. [cbse 2016]
- It is the main source of sugar, Gur, khandsari etc. India is second largest producer of sugarcane in world after Brazil.
- Major sugarcane producing states are UP, Maharashtra, Punjab, Haryana, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.

13. What do you know about coffee cultivation in India? {3M}

Coffee:-

- Indian coffee is known for its good quality and is in demand in all over the world.
- India has the Arabian variety which was initially brought from Yemen.
- In India for the first time the cultivation of coffee was done on Baba Budan Hills.
- Major coffee producing states are Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

14. Describe about Horticulture in India. { 5M}

Horticulture Crops:-

- These include the cultivation of both fruits and vegetables.
- India is the second largest producer of these after China.
- India produces both tropical and temperate fruits.

- Mangoes of Maharashtra, UP, WB
- Oranges of Nagpur and Cherrapunjee
- Bananas of Kerala and Tamil Nadu
- Lichi & Guava of UP and Bihar, Pineapples of Meghalaya
- Grapes of AP, Telangana and Maharashtra
- Apple, Pears, Apricots of J&K, Himachal.
- Important vegetable produces of India are pea, cauliflower, onion, cabbage, tomato, brinjal and potato.

Non-Food Crops

15. What are uses and producing states of Rubber? {3M}

Rubber:-

- Rubber is mainly an equatorial crop, but under special conditions it is also grown in tropical areas.
 - It is the main raw material for many industries like auto types and tubes, tyres belts and houses, foot ware etc.
 - It is mainly grown in Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

16. Write a short note on fibre crops of India? {3M}

Fibre Crops: -

- Cotton, Jute, hemp and natural silk are the four major fibre crops grown in India.
- The first three are plant products while silk is obtained from cocoons of the silkworms.
- Rearing of silk worm for production of silk fibre is known as Sericulture.

17. Describe Cotton cultivation in India. {5M}

Cotton:-

- It is the main raw material for cotton textile industry.
- It grows well on drier parts of black soil in Deccan, it takes 6-8 months to mature.
- India is the second largest producer of cotton in world after China.
- It requires high temperature, light rainfall or irrigation, 210 frost-free days and bright sunshine for its growth.
- Major cotton producing states are Maharashtra, Gujarat, MP, Haryana, Punjab, UP etc.

18. Describe about Jute cultivation in India? {3M}

Jute:-

- Also called Golden fibre.
- This fibre is very strong, due to its roughness it is used to make gunny bags, mats, ropes, yarn, carpets and other artefacts.
 - It grows well on well-drained fertile soils in flood plains.
 - Major jute producing states are W.B, Odisha, Bihar, Assam, Meghalaya.

19. What are Institutional and Technological reforms to the help of farmers in India? {5M}

Institutional And Technological Reforms To Help Farmers [cbse 2018]

- Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, fire, fire and diseases establishment of Grameen Banks for providing loan facilities at lower rates of interest.
 - Kisan Credit Card (KCC) and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) are some other schemes introduced by government for benefits of farmers.
 - Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on the

radio and television.

- The government also announces Minimum Support Price (MSP) to check exploitation of farmers by middlemen and speculators.
- Establishment of Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) , agricultural universities veterinary services and animal breeding centres , horticulture development and weather forecast were given priority to benefit Indian farmers.

Under globalisation , particularly after 1990 , the farmers in India have been exposed to next challenges . Despite being an important producer of rice, cotton, rubber, tea, coffee, jute and spices our agricultural products are not able to compete with the developed countries because of the highly subsidised agriculture in those countries.

20. difference between Primitive Subsistence farming and Commercial farming. 3M

Subsistence Agriculture	Commercial Farming
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Subsistence Agriculture is practiced on patches of land with primitive tools like dao, hoe sticks. 2. Farmer and his family produce cereal themselves and for the local market. Intensive where most of the by family /community. 3. It is practised in thickly popular areas. Example:- Cereals like wheat, rice, are mainly raised. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Commercial farming is done on a large scale with the huge of doses of the help of modern inputs. Eg:- HYV seeds, chemical fertilizers, insecticides and pesticides. 2. Crops are grown with a view to for export them to other countries. It is labour capital intensive where much of work is activities are done with the help of machines. 3. It is practised in sparsely populated areas. Eg:- coffee, cotton, banana, tea.

21. What is difference between Intensive Subsistence Farming and Commercial Farming? {3M}

"The Government of India has introduced various institutional and technological reforms to improve agriculture in the 1980s and 1990s". Support this statement with examples.

Compare 'intensive subsistence farming' with that of 'commercial farming' practiced in India.

Intensive Subsistence Farming	Commercial Farming
i) It is done in a high-density area, there is high pressure on land.	i) Crops are grown for the market.
ii) Size of field is small thus requires high of biochemical inputs and irrigation.	ii) High doses of modern inputs, doses eg:- HYV seeds, chemical fertilizers, insecticides, pesticides are required.
iii) Labour intensive agriculture activities. sophisticated technology.	iii) Capital intensive & requires
iv) Yield per hectare is high and production consumption.	iv) Processing units should for self-be located near the plantation.

Extra 1 Mark Questions

Question 1.

What type of country is India -“Agricultural or industrial ? Why ? Give one reason.

Answer:

India is an agricultural country because two-thirds of its population is engaged in agricultural activities. Agriculture is a primary activity, which produces most of the food for people.

Question 2.

What are agro-based industries ? Name any two.

Answer:

1. Agro-based industries are based on agricultural raw materials.
2. The examples are cotton textile and jute.

Question 3.

What is other name of primitive subsistence farming ?

Answer:

It is known as ‘slash and burn’ agriculture.

Question 4.

State any one feature of primitive subsistence agriculture.

Answer:

Primitive subsistence agriculture is practiced on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks and family/community labour.

Question 5.

What are the different names of ‘slash and bum’ agriculture in different countries ? Name any two.

Answer:

1. Mexico – Milpa
2. Venezuela – Conuco

3. Brazil – Roca
4. Central Africa -Masole
5. Indonesia – Ladang
6. Vietnam – Ray

Question 6.

State any two names of primitive subsistence farming in India.

Answer:

Bewar, Dahiya, Roman, Valre and Khil.

Question 7.

State any feature of Intensive Subsistence Farming.

Answer:

It is labour intensive farming, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production.

Question 8.

What is the main characteristic of commercial farming ?

Answer:

Use of higher doses of modern inputs i.e., HYV seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity.

Question 9.

State any one example of a crop which may be commercial in one region and may provide subsistence in another region.

Answer:

Rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab but in Orissa, it is a subsistence crop.

Question 10.

Mention any two plantation crops in India.

Answer:

Tea, coffee and rubber.

Question 11.

What is a plantation crop ?

Answer:

In plantation crop, a single crop is grown on a large area. Plantations cover large tracts of land, using capital intensive inputs, with the help of migrant labourers.

Question 12.

Mention India's cropping seasons.

Answer:

India has three cropping seasons e.g., rabi, kharif and zaid.

Question 13.

Which crops are grown in rabi season ?

Answer:

Some important crops are wheat, barley, peas, gram and mustard.

Question 14.

In which states three crops of paddy are grown ? Which are they ?

Answer:

1. In states like Assam, West Bengal and Orissa three crops of paddy are grown.
2. Three crops are Aus, Aman and Boro.

Question 15.

Which are important kharif crops ?

Answer:

Important kharif crops are paddy, maize, jowar, bajra, tur, moong, urad, cotton, jute, groundnut and soyabean.

Question 16.

When does the zaid season fall ?

Answer:

Zaid season falls in between the rabi and kharif seasons during summer months.

Question 17.

What is the position of rice production of India in the world ?

Answer:

India is the second largest producer of rice in the world after China.

Question 18.

In the areas of less rainfall how does rice grow ?

Answer:

In the areas of less rainfall i.e., less than 100 cm, rice grows with the help of irrigation.

Question 19.

What type of crop is wheat ?

Answer:

It is a cereal crop. It is the main food crop in north and north-western part of India

Question 20.

Which are important wheat-growing zones in India ?

Answer:

There are two important wheat growing zones in the country – the Ganga-Satluj plains in the north-west and black soil region of the Deccan.

CHAPTER 5

MINERALS AND ENERGY RESOURCES

What is a Mineral?

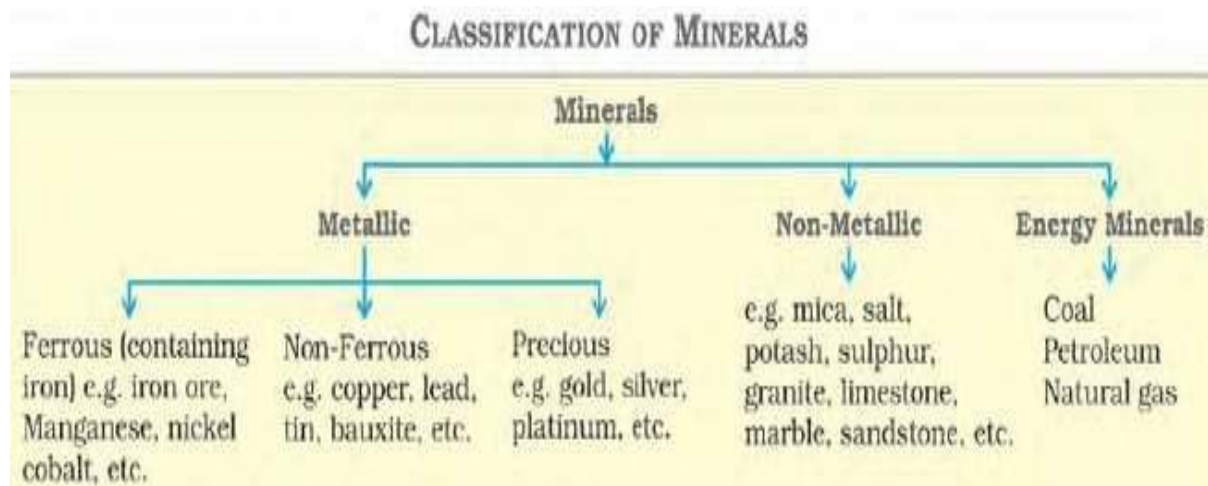
Mineral is defined as a “homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.” Minerals are found in varied forms in nature, ranging from the hardest diamond to the softest talc. Rocks are combinations of homogeneous substances called minerals.

Mode of Occurrence of Minerals

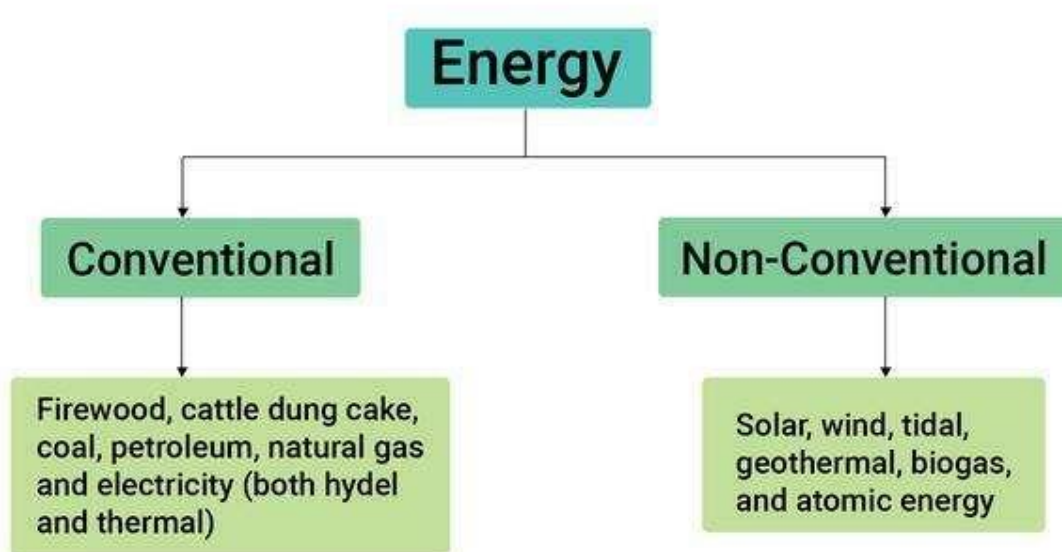
Minerals are usually found in “ores”. The term ore is used to describe an accumulation of any mineral mixed with other elements. Minerals generally occur in the following forms:

- In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints.
- In sedimentary rocks, a number of minerals occur in beds or layers.
- The decomposition of surface rocks and the removal of soluble constituents also forms the minerals.
- Minerals also occur as alluvial deposits in sands of valley floors and the base of hills.
- The ocean waters contain vast quantities of minerals.

Classification of Minerals



Energy Resources



Conservation of Energy Resources

Every sector of the national economy – agriculture, industry, transport, commercial and domestic – needs inputs of energy. There is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path for energy development. Here are some ways that each one of us can contribute to save energy resources:

- Using public transport systems instead of individual vehicles
- Switching off electricity when not in use
- Using power-saving devices.
- Using non-conventional sources of energy

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

1. The larger occurrences of minerals of igneous and metamorphic rocks are called:
(a) Veins
(b) Lodes
(c) Beds
(d) Layers
2. Which one of the following minerals is not obtained from the veins and lodes?
(a) Tin
(b) Zinc
(c) Lead
(d) Gypsum

3. Which one of the following is largely derived from ocean water?
 - (a) Bauxite
 - (b) Magnesium
 - (c) Gold
 - (d) Mica
4. One of the following is a non-metallic mineral. Choose the correct option
 - (a) Manganese
 - (b) Copper
 - (c) Coal
 - (d) Granite
5. Which ore is the most important industrial iron ore in terms of the quantity used?
 - (a) Magnetite
 - (b) Pyrite
 - (c) Goethite
 - (d) Hematite
6. Aluminium is obtained from
 - (a) bauxite
 - (b) limestone
 - (c) copper
 - (d) manganese
7. In which of the following iron ore belt Kudremukh mines are located?
 - (a) Orissa-Jharkhand belt
 - (b) Maharashtra-Goa belt
 - (c) Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt
 - (d) Bellary-Chitradiga-Chikmagalur-Tumkur belt
8. Which one of the following features is not true about copper?
 - (a) India is deficient in the reserve and production of copper.
 - (b) It is reliable, ductile and a good conductor.
 - (c) It is a ferrous ore.
 - (d) It is mainly used in electrical cables and electronic goods.
9. Which one of the following states, is the largest producer of copper in India ?
 - (a) Orissa
 - (b) Karnataka
 - (c) Madhya Pradesh
 - (d) Gujarat
10. Limestone is the basic raw material of
 - (a) Paper industry
 - (b) Cement industry
 - (c) Sugar industry
 - (d) Textile industry

11. Which one of the following is an essential feature of Mica?
- (a) It is a metallic mineral made up of a series of plates
 - (b) It can be clear, black, green, red, yellow or brown.
 - (c) It is not used in electric and electronic industry.
 - (d) It cannot be easily split into thin sheets
12. Mica is used in electric and electronic industries because
- (a) of its insulating properties and resistance to high voltage
 - (b) it is a good conductor of electricity
 - (c) of its great malleability
 - (d) of its sonorous nature
13. Which of the following is the oldest oil producing state of India?
- (a) Gujarat
 - (b) Madhya Pradesh
 - (c) Assam
 - (d) Andaman Nicobar island
14. Which one of the following minerals is formed by decomposition of rocks, leaving a residual mass of weathered material?
- (a) Coal
 - (b) Bauxite
 - (c) The Gold
 - (d) Zinc
15. The highest quality of hard coal is:
- (a) Lignite
 - (b) Bituminous
 - (c) Peat
 - (d) Anthracite
16. Which fuel mineral provides energy to industry as well as for domestic needs?
- A. Coal
 - B. Natural gas
 - C. Firewood
 - D. Petroleum
17. Uranium and thorium used for generating nuclear power are found in
- (a) Godavari Basin
 - (b) Gulf of Cambay
 - (c) Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh
 - (d) Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan

18. In which one of the following states the largest wind farm cluster is located?
- Gujarat
 - Kerala
 - Rajasthan
 - Tamil Nadu
19. In which region of India tidal energy is produced?
- Gulf of Kuchchh
 - Puga Valley of Ladakh
 - Gulf of Cambay
 - Madhapur near Bhuj
20. Which one of the following non- conventional sources of energy is harnessed near Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh?
- Geothermal Energy
 - Wind energy
 - Solar energy
 - Tidal Energy

ANSWERS

- Lodes
- Gypsum
- Magnesium
- Granite
- Hematite
- Bauxite
- Bellary-Chitradiga-Chikmaglur-Tumkur belt
- It is a ferrous ore
- Madhya Pradesh
- Cement industry
- It can be clear, black, green, red, yellow or brown
- of its insulating properties and resistance to high voltage
- Assam
- Coal
- Atrocities
- Coal
- Aravalli Ranges
- Tamil Nadu
- Gulf of Kochchi
- Geothermal

Fill in the blanks:

- Geologist define..... as a naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.
- Rocks are combination of homogeneous substances called - - - - -

- 3) Major metallic minerals like tin, copper, zinc and lead are obtained from - - - - -
- 4) The mineral deposits in Sands of Valley floors and the base of hills called - - - -
- 5) Sedimentary rocks on the western and eastern flanks of the Peninsula, in Gujarat and Assam have most of the - - - - -
- 6)must be present in ferrous minerals.
- 7)must be present in metallic minerals.
- 8)is the basic mineral and the backbone of industrial development.
- 9) India is critically deficient in the Reserve and production of.....
- 10)is obtained from bauxite ore.
- 11) Rajasthan is the largest producer of mica in India.
- 12) In India, - - - - - is the most abundantly available fossil fuel.
- 13) Deposits of lignite coal along with are found in Rajasthan.
- 14) is a fossil fuel which is present below natural gas.
- 15) - - - - - is the largest producer of manganese ores in India.

ANSWERS

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1) Minerals | 2) Minerals | 3) Veins and Lodes |
| 4) Placer Deposits | 5) Petroleum Deposits | 6) Iron |
| 7) Metal | 8) Iron Ore | 9) Copper |
| 10) Aluminium | 11) Second | 12) coal |
| 13) Limestone | 14) Petroleum | 15) Odisha |

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

- 1) What is a mineral ?
- 2) Where are minerals found?
- 3) What is an 'ore' ?
- 4) Which minerals are formed as a result of evaporation? Name any two.
- 5) Distinguish between ferrous and non-ferrous minerals?
- 6) What is placer deposits?
- 7) Define Rat-Hole Mining?
- 8) What is Hydro electricity?
- 9) What is Thermal electricity?
- 10) What is geothermal energy?

ANSWERS

- 1) Mineral is a "homogenous" naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.
- 2) Minerals are found in ores.
- 3) The term 'ore' is used to describe an accumulation of any material mixed with other elements.
- 4) Potash salt and sodium salt.
- 5) Ferrous minerals are the metallic minerals containing iron. For e.g.- Iron ore, Manganese, Nickel, Cobalt etc.
While non-ferrous minerals are also metallic, but they do not contain iron. For e.g.- Manganese, Nickel, Cobalt etc.
- 6) Certain minerals may occur as alluvial deposits in Sands of Valley floors and the base of hills. These deposits are called Placer Deposits.

- 7) Coal mining in Jowal and Cherapunjee is done by family member in the form of a long narrow tunnel known as rat hole mining.
- 8) Electricity is generated by running water
- 9) Electricity generated by using coal, Petroleum and natural gas.
- 10) Geo Thermal energy refers to the heat and electricity produced by using the heat from the interior of the earth.

ASSERTION AND REASON

DIRECTION : In the following questions, a statement of assertion is followed by a statement of reason. Mark the correct choice as :

- (a) If Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) If Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) If Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) If Both assertion and reason are false.

1) Assertion : Mining activity is often called a “Killer Industry”.

Reason : Mining helps in agriculture.

2) Assertion : Iron ore is the basic mineral and the backbone of India.

Reason : India is rich in good quality Iron ore.

3)Assertion: Mica is a metallic mineral.

Reason : Mica mineral is the basic raw material for cement industry

4) Assertion : Natural gas is referred as an environment friendly fuel.

Reason : Natural gas contains low carbon dioxide emissions

.5) .Assertion : Increased use of fossil fuels creates a healthy environment.

Reason : Fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas are easily obtained from natural . resource.

6) . Assertion : Conservation of Energy Resources is essential

Reason: Energy is a basic requirement for economic development

7)Assertion : Thermal power stations are located on or near the coalfields

Reason : Coal is a bulky material, which loses weight on use as it is reduced to ash. Hence, heavy industries and thermal power stations are located on or near the coalfields.

ANSWERS

- 1)(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- 2)(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- 3) (d) Both assertion and reason are false.
- 4) (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- 5) (d) Both assertion and reason are false.
- 6) (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- 7) (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

- 1) How are minerals formed in igneous and metamorphic rocks?
- 2) Why is conservation of mineral resources essential? Explain any three reasons.
- 3) What are the various uses of petroleum?
- 4) What are the chief characteristics of bauxite?
- 5) What are the chief characteristics of mica?
- 6) Where do we find limestone and what are its uses?
- 7) What are the uses of energy resources?

- 8) What are the various uses of coal?
- 9) What are the uses or importance of natural gas as a fuel?
- 10) Why do we need to conserve mineral resources?

ANSWERS

- 1) In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals can occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller deposits are called veins, and the larger ones are called lodes.
- 2) Conservation of mineral resources is essential because:
 - (i) Minerals are indispensable part of our life.
 - (ii) It is available in limited quantity.
 - (iii) Takes millions of years to get formed.
 - (iv) They are finite and non-renewable resources.
 - (v) Continued extraction leads in increasing costs.

- 3) **I)** Petroleum is also an important energy source in India after coal.
ii) It provides fuel for heat and lighting, lubricants for machinery and raw materials to a number of manufacturing Industries.

iii) Mineral oil is used in lotions and moisturiser.
Petroleum refineries act as a 'nodal industry' for synthetic textile, fertiliser and numerous chemical industries.

- 4) **i)** Though several ores contain aluminium, it is from bauxite that a clay-like substance alumina and later aluminium are obtained.
Ii) Bauxite deposits are formed by the decomposition of a wide variety of rocks rich in aluminium silicates.
iii) Aluminium is an important metal because it combines the strength of metals such as iron with extreme lightness and also with good conductivity and great malleability.

- 5) It is a mineral made up of a series of plates or leaves.
(ii) It splits easily into thin sheets.
(iii) These sheets can be so thin that a thousand plates can be layered into a mica sheet of a few centimetres high.
(iv) Due to its excellent di-electric strength, low power loss factor, insulating properties and resistance to high voltage, mica is one of the most indispensable minerals used in electric and electronic industries.

6) **(i)** It is found in association with rocks composed of calcium carbonates or calcium and magnesium carbonates.

(ii) It is found in sedimentary rocks of most geological formations.

(iii) Limestone is the basic raw material for the cement industry. It is essential for smelting iron ore in the blast furnace.

7) **i)** Energy is required for all activities. It is needed to cook, to provide light and heat.

(ii) It is used to propel vehicles.

(iii) It is also used to drive machinery in industries.

8) **(i)** In India, coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel.

(ii) It provides a substantial part of the nation's energy needs.

(iii) It is used for power generation, to supply energy to industry as well as for domestic needs. India is highly dependent on coal for meeting its commercial energy requirements

9) **(i)** It is an important and clean energy resource found in association with or without petroleum.

(ii) It is used as a source of energy as well as an industrial raw material in the petrochemical industry.

(iii) As a source of energy, it is used in vehicles as Compressed Natural Gas (CNG). For cooking purposes, it is used as liquefied petroleum gas (LPG).

(iv) It is considered an environment friendly fuel because of low carbon-dioxide emissions.

10) (i) Mineral resources are basic requirements for economic development.

(ii) Every sector of the national economy— agriculture, industry, transport, commercial and domestic — needs inputs of mineral resources.

(iii) The economic development plans implemented since independence necessarily required increasing amounts of minerals to remain operational.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

- 1) In what forms do minerals occur?
- 2) ‘Minerals are unevenly distributed in India.’ Support the statement with examples.
- 3) Why should we use renewable energy resources?
- 4) What are the uses of copper? Give distribution of copper in India.
- 5) Distinguish between Biogas and Natural Gas.

ANSWERS

Minerals generally occur in these forms:

- i. D) Igneous and metamorphic rocks: Minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins or lodes. In most cases, they are formed when minerals in liquid, molten and gaseous forms are forced upward through cavities towards the earth’s surface. They cool and solidify as they rise.

ii) In sedimentary rocks: A number of minerals occur in beds or layers. They have been formed as a result of deposition, accumulation and concentration in horizontal strata. Coal and some forms of iron ore and sedimentary minerals include gypsum, potash salt and sodium salt.

(iii) Another mode of formation involves the decomposition of surface rocks, and the removal of soluble constituents, leaving a residual mass of weathered material containing ores. Bauxite is formed in this way.

(iv) Certain minerals may occur as alluvial deposits in the sands of valley floors and the base of hills. These deposits are called ‘placer deposits’ and generally contain minerals which are not corroded by water.

(v) The ocean waters contain vast quantities of minerals, but most of these are too widely diffused to be of economic significance.

2.

- i) Minerals are unevenly distributed in various regions of India.
- ii) Peninsular rocks contain most of the reserves of coal, metallic minerals, mica and many other non-metallic minerals.
- iii) Sedimentary rocks on the western and eastern flanks of the peninsula, in Gujarat and Assam have most of the petroleum deposits.
- iv) Rajasthan with the rock systems of the peninsula, has reserves of many non-ferrous minerals.
- v) The vast alluvial plains of North India are almost devoid of economic minerals.

3.

We should use renewable energy resources because of the:

- (i) Exhaustibility of non-renewable resources.
- (ii) Long years of geological formation of non-renewable resources.
- (iii) Causes less pollution.
- (iv) Available in abundance.
- (v) Environmentally friendly.
- (vi) Strong dependence on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas is a threat to our environment.
- (vii) Rising prices of oil and gas and their potential shortages.
- (viii) Uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future.

4.

1) India is critically deficient in the reserve and production of copper.

(ii) Being malleable, ductile and a good conductor, copper is mainly used in electrical cables, electronics and chemical industries.

(iii) The Balaghat mines in Madhya Pradesh produce 52 per cent of India's copper.

(iv) The Singhbhum district of Jharkhand is also a leading producer of copper.

(v) The Khetri mines in Rajasthan are also famous for copper reserves.

5.

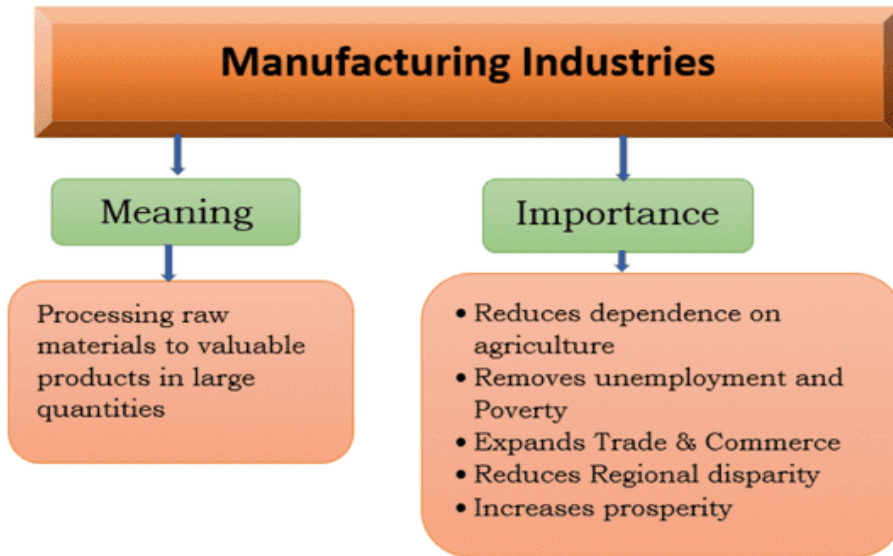
Bio Gas

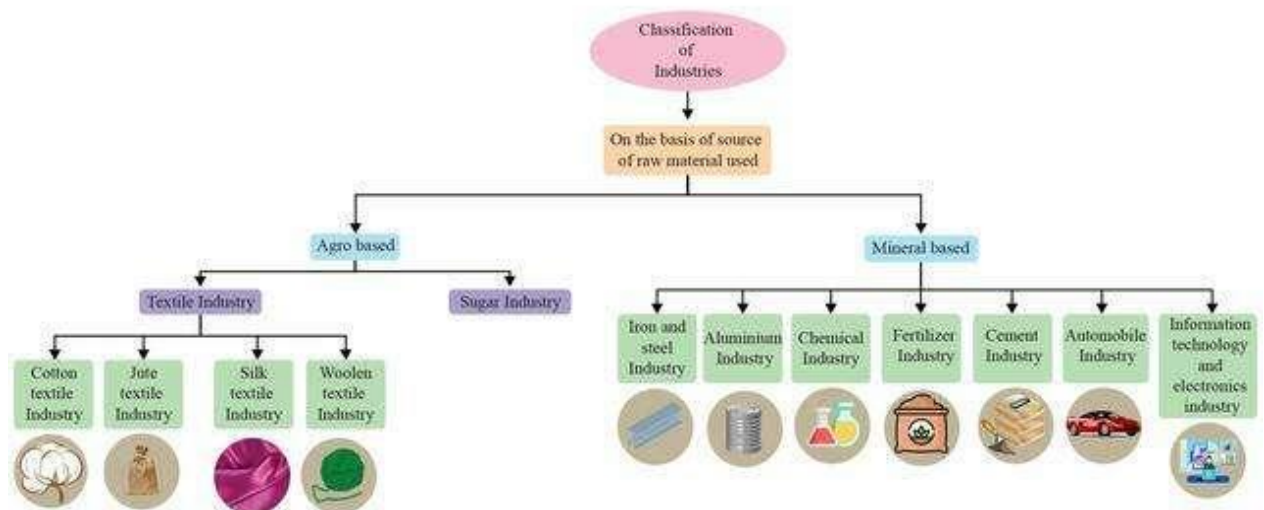
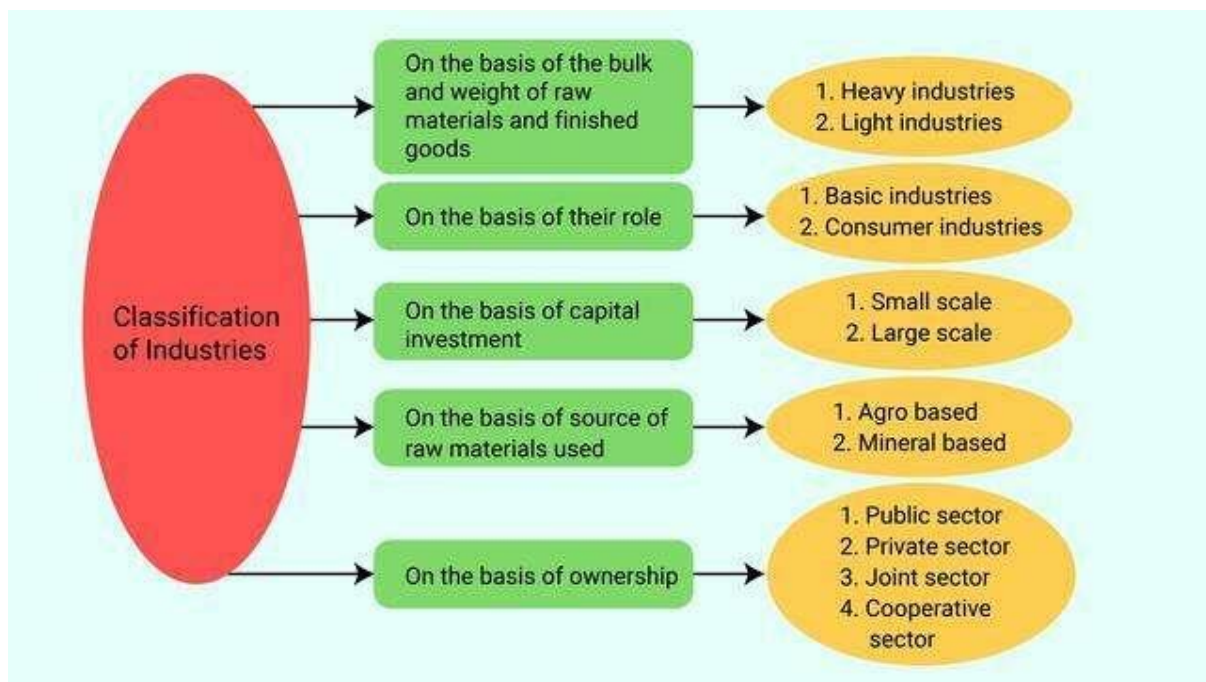
- I. Biogas is the man-made energy resource.
- II. It is prepared by using shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste.
- III. It is produced for domestic uses.
- IV. Biogas is the most efficient use of cow dung, farm waste and animal waste.

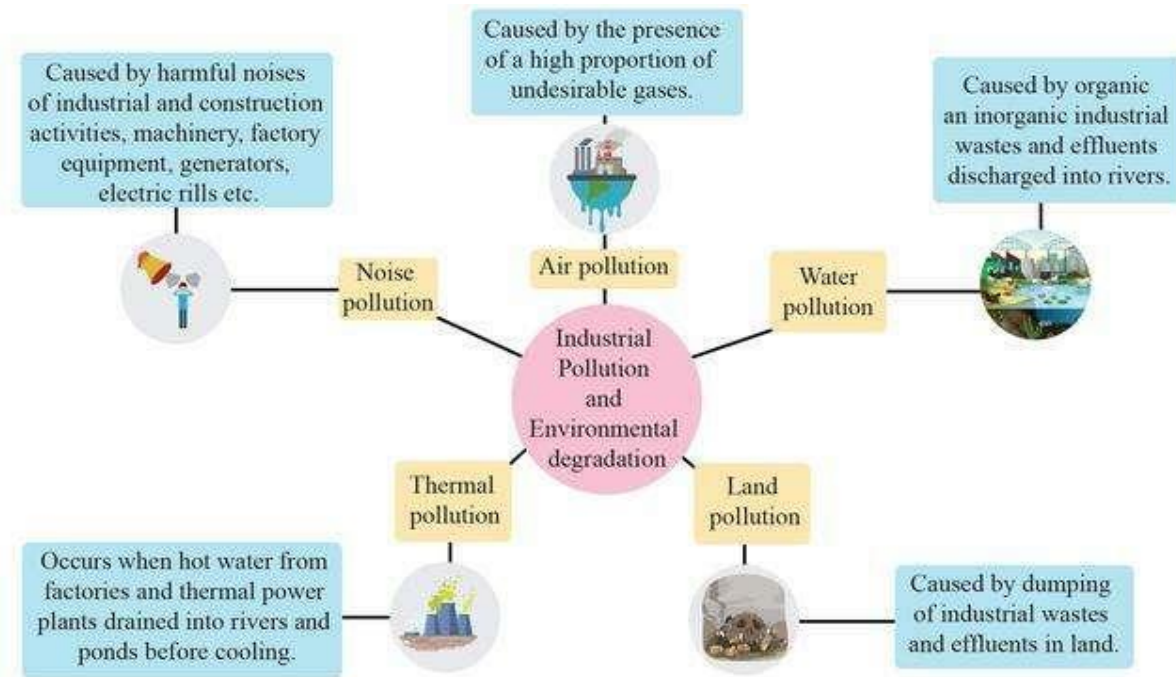
Natural Gas

- I. Natural gas is a natural resource.
- II. It is found beneath the earth usually above the oil.
- III. It is basically used in Industries as raw material.
- IV. Compressed natural gas (CNG) is used as environment friendly fuel and is gaining popularity in India.

CHAPTER 6 MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES







IMPORTANT TERMS

1. Agro-industry: Agriculture developed along industrial lines.
2. Agglomeration: A mass or collection of things; an assemblage.
3. GDP: Gross Domestic Product – the monetary total value of finished goods produced and services provided in a country during one year.
4. Urbanisation refers to the population shift from rural to urban areas, ‘the gradual increase in the proportion of people living in urban areas’, and the ways in which each society adapts to the change.
5. Industrialisation: The development of industries in a country or region on a wide scale.
6. Public Sector Industries is the part of the economy concerned with providing various governmental services. The composition of the public sector varies country wise, but in most countries, the public sector includes such services as the military, police, infrastructure (public roads, bridges, tunnels, water supply, sewers, electrical grids, telecommunications, etc.), public transport, public education, along with health care and those working for the government itself, such as elected officials.
7. Private Sector Industries is the part of the economy, sometimes referred to as the citizen sector, which is run by private individuals or groups, usually as a means of enterprise for profit, and is not controlled by the State (areas of the economy, controlled by the state being referred to as the public sector).

8. Mineral based Industries: Industries that use minerals as raw material are called mineral based industries. The iron and steel industry is the basic industry on which all other industries depend. The production and per capita consumption of steel is a measure of a country's economic development.

9. Natural Product: A natural product is a chemical compound or substance produced by a living organism—that is, found in nature. In the broadest sense, natural products include any substance produced by life.

10. Aluminium Smelting is the process of extracting aluminium from its oxide, alumina, generally by the Hall-Héroult process. Alumina is extracted from the ore 'bauxite' by means of the Bayer process at an alumina refinery. Aluminium smelting is the second most important metallurgical industry in India.

11. Fertilizer Industry or fertiliser is any material of natural or synthetic origin (other than liming materials) that is applied to soils or to plant tissues (usually leaves) to supply one or more plant nutrients essential to the growth of plants.

12. Environmental Degradation is the deterioration of the environment through depletion of resources such as air, water and soil; the destruction of ecosystems; habitat destruction; the extinction of wildlife; and pollution.

1 MARK QUESTIONS

1. The first Jute mill was set up in

- (a)Hyderabad (b) Bengaluru (c) Kolkata (d) Mumbai

2. Tools, implements, fertilisers, tractors, etc. are supplied by

- (a) government (b) industry (c) people (d) none of these

3. The industries which have heavy types of raw material are called

- (a) light industries (b) consumer industry (c) Key industry (d) none of these

4. Molasses are used to make

- (a) rum (b) rubber (c) ethanol (d) all of the above

5. Which out of the following is a mineral based industry?

- (a) Sugar (b) Tea (c) Cotton (d) Petrochemicals

6. Which is the only industry in India which is self-reliant?

- (a) Textile industry (b) Iron and steel (c) Electrical (d) Petrochemicals

7. Which country has the largest installed capacity of spindles in the world?

- (a) Japan (b) Philippines (c) China (d) India

8. Which one of the following organizations is responsible for the marketing steel for the Public Sector Undertakings?

- (a) TISCO (b) IISCO (c) BHEL (d) SAIL

9. Which one of the following industries manufactures telephones, computer etc?

- (a) Steel (b) Electronic (c) Aluminium smelting (d) Information technology

10. Oil India Ltd is a _____ type of industry on the basis of ownership?

- (a) Public sector (b) Private sector (c) Joint sector Industry (d) Cooperative sector Industry

11. Match the items of column A with that of Column B

A

B

(i) Cotton Textile

(a) Bengaluru

(ii) Jute Textile

(b) Jamshedpur

(iii) Iron and Steel

(c) Noida

(iv) Electronic goods

(d) Mumbai

(v) Software Park

(e) Hugli

(a) (i) a, (ii) b (iii) c (iv) d (v) e

(b) (i) d (ii) e (iii) b (iv) a (v) c

(c) (i) c, (ii) d (iii) b (iv) a (v) e

(d) (i) d, (ii) e (iii) c (iv) b (v) e

12. Manufacturing provides job opportunities to reduce dependence on agriculture. Identify which sector the following jobs belong to:

(1) Agriculture (i) Secondary

(2) Manufacturing (ii) Tertiary

(3) Research and Development (iii) Primary

(a) 1(i) 2(ii) 3(iii)

(b) 1(iii) 2(i) 3(ii)

(c) 2(i) 1(ii) 3(iii)

(d) 3(i) 2(ii) 3 (iii)

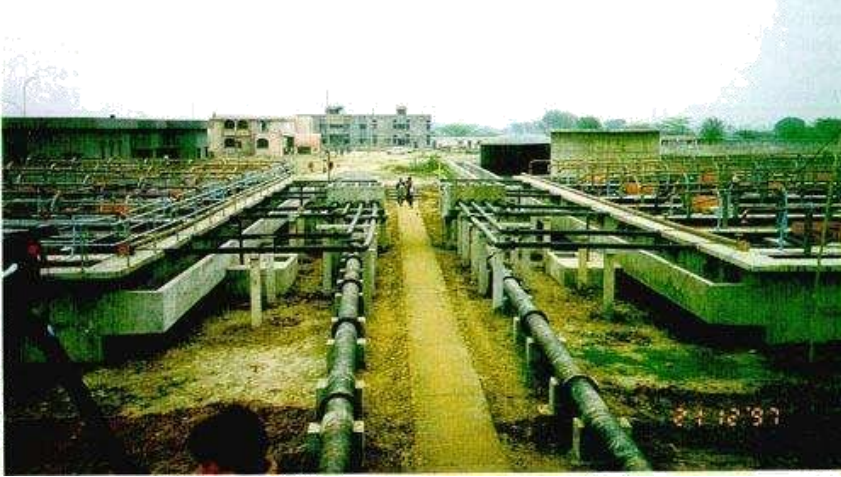
13. Observe the given image and answer the question that follow.



Which is the basic material required for garment manufacturing?

- (a)Raw fibre (b)Fabric (c)Yarn (d)Garments

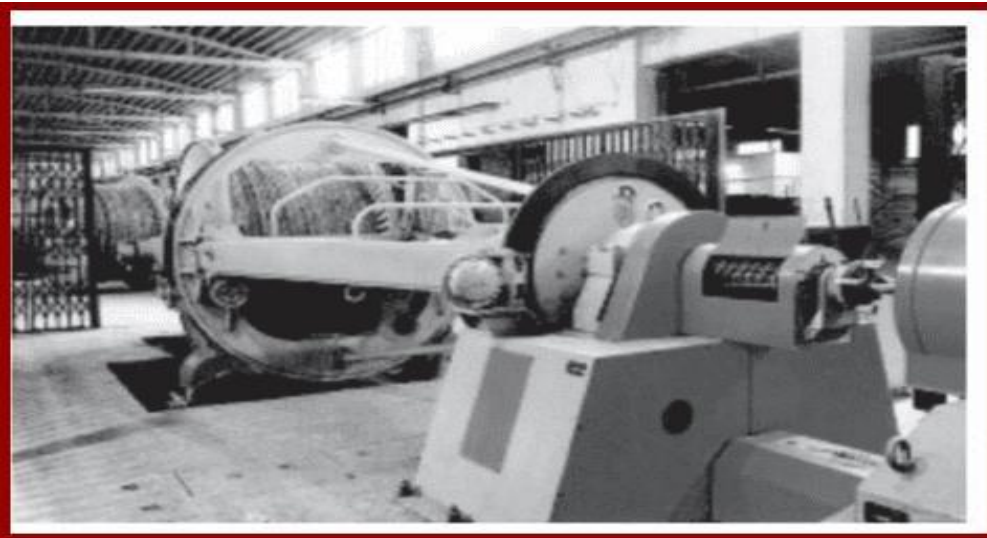
14. Study the picture and answer the question that follows -



Where is this Sewage Treatment Plant under Yamuna Action Plan situated?

- (a)Faridabad (b)Firozabad (c)Ahmedabad (d)Nasirabad

15. Study the picture and answer the question that follows-



Identify the product in this factory.

- (a) Cables (b) sewing machines (c) cement (d) computers

16. Suppose you are working in a Steel Industry, what will be the proportion of Iron Ore, coking coal and limestone you would use to produce steel?

- (a)2:1:4 (b)4:1:2 (c)4:2:1 (d)2:4:1

ASSERTION AND REASON

Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reason

(R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Options

- A. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true

17. Assertion (A): Textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy.

Reason (R): It contributes significantly to industrial production employment generation directly

18. Assertion (A): Air pollution is caused by the high proportion of presence of undesirable gases

Reason (R): Air pollution does not affect our health, and atmosphere as a whole.

19. Assertion (A): There is a tendency for the mills to shift and concentrate in the southern and western states, especially in Maharashtra.

Reason (R): Raw material is cheaper there.

20. Assertion (A): Rain water harvesting increases industrial pollution.

Reason (R): Rain water helps industry to meet water requirements.

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (2 MARKS)

- 21. Agriculture' and 'industry' are complimentary to each other." Explain
- 22. Why is least cost known as decision making factor for an ideal location of an industry?
- 23. Write the basic inputs of Iron and Steel industry
- 24. What are agglomeration economies?
- 25. Why do our industries need to be more efficient and competitive in the present day of globalization?
- 26. What was the main philosophy behind public sector industries?

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3 MARKS)

- 27. Why have the demands of jute products increased internally as well as globally? Explain any two reasons.
- 28. How are integrated steel plants different from mini steel plants?
- 29. How is the information technology industry gaining importance in India?
- 30. How can the industrial pollution of fresh water be reduced?

31. Why is iron and steel industry called a basic industry?
32. Why did Mahatma Gandhi lay emphasis on spinning yarn and weaving khadi?
33. "Production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country's development." Examine the statement.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)

34. Which factors are responsible for the decentralization of cotton textile mills in India?
35. The sugar industry is now shifting from north to south. Mention main reasons.
36. Name the factor which plays the most dominant role in the ideal Location of an industry. Explain any four reasons in support of this factor.
37. "The textile industry is the only industry that is self-reliant and complete in the value-chain? Justify this statement?
38. Explain five different ways to control environmental degradation caused by industries.

CASE BASED QUESTIONS

39. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

Industrial locations are complex in nature. These are influenced by availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc. It is rarely possible to find all these factors available at one place. Consequently, manufacturing activity tends to locate at the most appropriate place where all the factors of industrial location are either available or can be arranged at lower cost. After an industrial activity starts, urbanisation follows. Sometimes, industries are located in or near the cities. Thus, industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand. Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, labour, consultants and financial advice, etc. to the industry. Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies. Gradually, a large industrial agglomeration takes place.

- (a) On what factors are the location of the industry dependent on?
- (b) What do you understand by agglomeration economies?
- (c) How do industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand?

ANSWERS

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (d)

9. (b) 10. (c) 11.(b) 12.(b) 13. (a) 15.(a) 16(c)

17.(a) Both (A) and (R) are true. (R) is the correct explanation of (A)

Explanation: It is the only industry in the country, which is self-reliant And complete in the value chain i.e., from raw material to the highest value-added products.

18.(c) (A) is correct but (R) is wrong.

Explanation: Air pollution is caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases, such as sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide. Airborne particulate materials contain both solid and liquid particles like dust, sprays mist and smoke

Air pollution adversely affects human health, animals, plants, buildings and the atmosphere as a whole.

19. .(c) (A) is correct but (R) it wrong.

Explanation: Raw material or sugarcane has greater sugar content. That Helps get greater results and better final products.

20.(d)n(A) is wrong but (R) is correct

Explanation: Pollution occurs when waste water discharged by industry pollutes fresh water. Rain water harvesting replenishes the water which helps industries to meet water requirements

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (2 MARKS)

21. Ans) Agriculture and industry are not exclusive of each other. They Move hand in hand,

- a) The agro-based industries have given a major boost to agriculture by raising its productivity.
- b) The agro-based industries depend on agriculture for raw materials. Manufacturing industries sell their products such as fertilizers, insecticides, irrigation pumps, PVC pipes, machines and tools, etc. to the farmers.
- c) Thus, development and competitiveness of manufacturing industry has not only assisted agriculturists in increasing their production but also made production process very efficient.

22. Ans) It includes all important factors like distance from raw material sources, nearness to market, transport and communication facilities etc which motivates the industrialist in investment.

23. Ans) Coking coal, limestone and manganese

24. Ans) Many industries tend to come together to make, use of the advantages offered by the urban institutions such as banking, insurance, transport, labour. This is known as agglomeration economies

25. Ans) Our industries need to be more efficient and competitive in the present day globalization because:

a)Our manufactured goods must be at par in quality with those in the international market.

b)Only then we will be able to compete in the international market.

c)India will have to develop its industries if it wants to be internationally developed.

26. Ans. Public sector helps in eradication of unemployment and poverty. It also aimed at bringing down disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3 MARKS)

27. Ans) (1) The demand of jute products increased internally due to the Government policy of mandatory use of jute packaging.

a) The demand of jute products has also increased globally due to environment friendliness.

b) The global concern for environment friendly, biodegradable materials has opened the opportunity for jute products.

28. Ans) a) Integrated Steel Plant is larger in size than Mini Steel Plant.

b)Integrated Steel Plant handle everything in one single Complex From putting together raw material to steel making, rolling and shaping while the Mini steel

Plants use steel scrap, sponge iron and sometimes steel ingots supplied by integrated Steel Plants.

c) Integrated Steel Plants manufacture all types of steel but Mini steel Plants produce mild and alloy steel of given specification

29. Ans)

(1) Generates employment - employed over one million and expected to increase in coming years. It is encouraging to know that 30% of the people employed in this sector are women.

(2) This is a major foreign exchange earner industry.

(3) The continuing growth in the hardware and software is the key to success of IT industry India.

30. Ans)

a) To minimise use of water in industries

b) To reuse and recycle water in two or successive stages

c) To harvest rain water for meeting water requirements in industries

d) To treat water and other industrial effluents before releasing them into rivers and ponds in three stages

31. Ans) a) It is the industry which lays foundation of rapid development of other industries such as heavy engineering, defence equipment automobiles, aeroplanes etc.

b) Generates employments

c) Helps development in agriculture.

32. Ans) Weaving is done by handloom, power loom and in mills.

The hand spun khadi provides large-scale employment to weavers in their homes as a cottage industry. Mahatma Gandhi also wanted to propagate the use of the indigenous khadi material to revive the jobs of jobless weavers during the British period

33. Ans) (i) Cotton textile have a very high demand throughout the country.

(ii) Major inputs like banking, electricity, transportation is available in almost every part of the country

(iii) Textile industry is labour intensive industry and labour is easily available in India.

(iv) Textile industry requires less technological inputs and can be carried out using simple tools and machines.

(v) Generates employment in rural and urban sector.

34. Ans) (i) Iron and steel Industry is the basic industry. Since all the other industries — heavy, medium and light, depend on it for their machinery.

(ii) Steel is needed to manufacture a variety of engineering goods.

(iii) It is also needed as construction material, defence, medical, telephonic, scientific equipment and a variety of consumer goods. Therefore, production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country's development.

35. Ans)

i. The sugar contents in the cane are higher i.e. 10.5% in Maharashtra and other southern states.

ii. Climate is suitable for the cultivation of sugarcane.

iii. South has better export facilities as compared to North.

- iv. Cooperative sugar mills are more successful in management in south India.
- v. The Peninsular climate helps to extend the crushing season by two months in the south India than north India.

36. Ans) (1) Availability of raw material: The factory needs to be close to the location of raw materials if they are heavy and bulky to transport. For example, iron and steel and cement industries are located near the source of raw materials. It cuts down the cost of transportation. ‘
- (2) Labour: A large and cheap labour force is required for labour-intensive manufacturing industries. High-tech industries have to locate where suitable skilled workers are available. Power: Power supply is needed for working of the machines in a factory. Earlier industries were near to coalfields.
- (4) Capital: Money that is invested to start the business. The amount of capital will determine the size and location of the factory
- (5) Transport: A good transport network helps to reduce costs and made the movement of raw materials and finished goods easier.
- (6) Market: An accessible place to sell the products is essential.
- (7) Government policies: Industrial development is encouraged receive financial incentives and assistance from the government in the form of low rent and tax rebates.

37. Ans)

- (1) It contributes significantly to industrial production (14%).
- (2) It employs the second largest number of people , that is, 35 million persons directly.
- (3) Its share in the foreign exchange earnings is significant at about 24.6%.
- (4) It contributes 4% towards GDP.
- (5) It is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain, i.e., from raw material to its highest value-added products.

38. Ans

- (1) Careful planning and setting of industries
- (2) Better design and operation of equipment to increase efficiency and reduce noise
- (3) Proper selection of fuel and its utilisation
- (4) Prevention of smoke by using of oil or gas instead of coal in industries
- (5) Minimising use of water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages
- (6) Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements
- (7) Treating hot water and effluents before releasing them in rivers and ponds
- (8) Reduction of particulate matter in the air by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators process.

- 37. (a) It is dependent on availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc.
- (b) Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies.
- (c) Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, labour, consultants and financial advice, etc. to the industry.

MAP QUESTIONS

CHAPTER 6
MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES
(LOCATING AND LABELLING ONLY)

SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY PARKS:

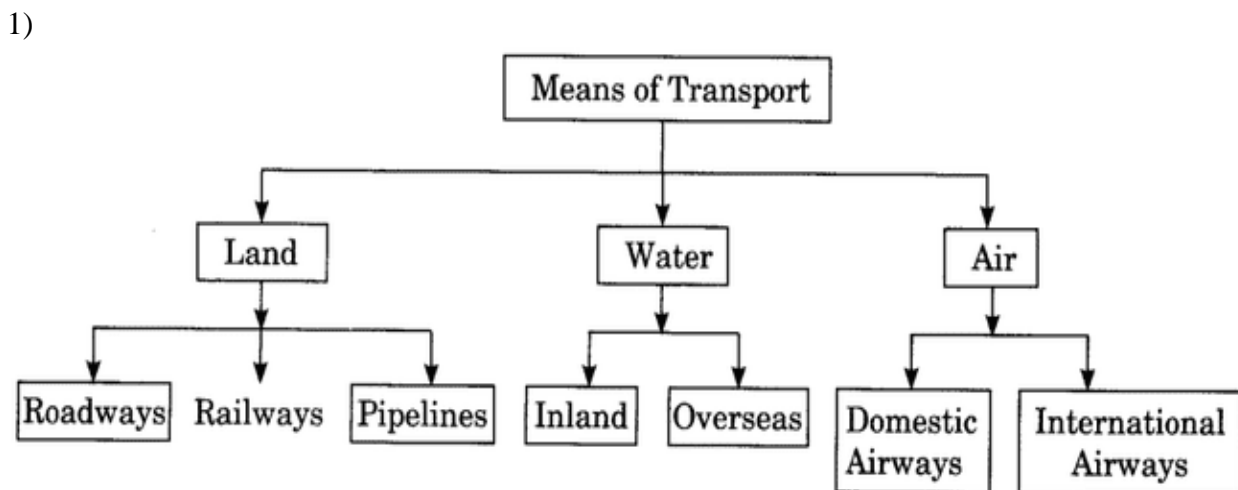
- A. NOIDA
- B. GANDHINAGAR
- C. MUMBAI
- D. PUNE
- E. HYDERABAD
- F. BENGALURU
- G. CHENNAI
- H. THIRUVANANTHAPURAM



CHAPTER 7

LIFELINES OF NATIONAL ECONOMY

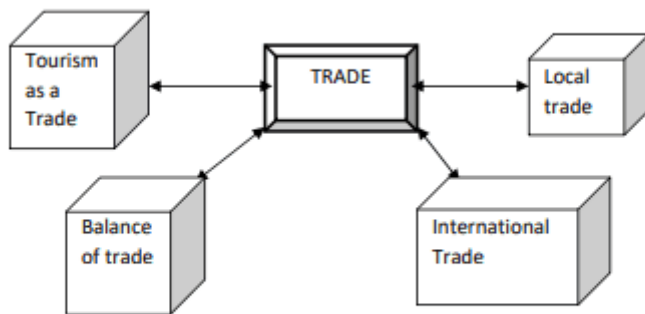
1) Flow Chart



2)



3)



II} Keywords and terms

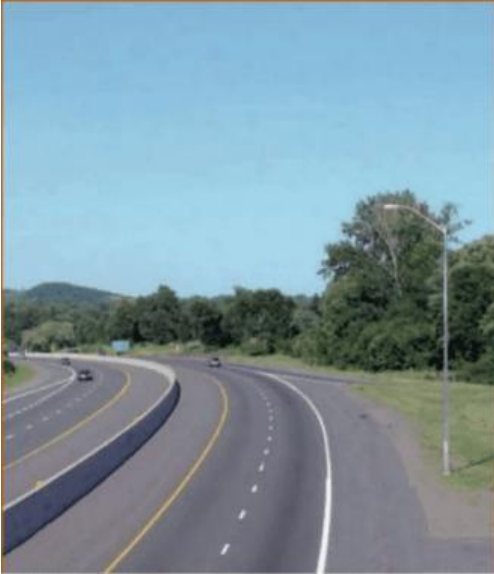
- 1) Density of roads: The length of road per 100 sq km of area.
- 2) Golden quadrilateral: National highways connecting Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata quadrilaterally is known as golden quadrilateral.
- 3) Gauge: The width between two rails at the railway lines.
- 4) Trade: Exchange of goods and services among different people, states and countries.
- 5) International trade: trade between two more countries is called international trade (foreign trade).
- 6) Balance of trade: Difference between exports and imports of a country.

III} Important Years and Events

- 1) 1853- First passenger trains started in India
- 2) 1960- Border road organisation was established
- 3) 1953- The air transport was nationalised

IV} One Mark Questions

A) Picture Based questions



1) what type road is it ?

Ans- Golden Quadrilateral super highway.



2) In which part of the country this means of transport is used commonly?

Ans- North Eastern states



3) which type of tourism is this?

Ans- Adventure tourism

B) Fill in the blanks

4) District roads are maintained by _____

Ans- Zila Parishad

5) The national highway No1 is also known as _____

Ans- Sher Shah Suri Marg

6) _____ is the cheapest mode of transport

Ans- Water transport

7) the first train in India launched from Bombay to _____

Ans- Thane

8) National waterway 1 is located in _____ river

ans- Gnaga river

9) _____ is the first seaport developed after independence on the western cost of India

Ans- Kandla

10) the state related to National waterway 3 is _____

Ans- Kerala

C) Answer the following

11) What was the major objective to develop the super highways

Ans- to reduce the time and distance between the mega cities of India

12) National highways 1(NH 1) connects which two cities?

Ans- Delhi and Amritsar

13) Which state has the highest road density in India?

Ans- Kerala

14) which mode of transport reduces trans-shipment losses and delay ?

Ans- Pipeline

15) which is the oldest artificial port of India?

Ans- Chennai

16) what is pipeline transportation?

Ans- A new arrival on the transportation map of India to transport liquids as well as solids in slurry form.

17) What is the full form of STD?

Ans- Subscriber Trunk Dialling

18) define the term tourism?

Ans- The cultural recreational and commercial visits to places of interest in a country is known as tourism.

19) Name the world's longest highway tunnel?

Ans- Atal tunnel

20) What is the length of coastline of India?

Ans- 7516.6 Km

3 Mark Questions

1) What are the problems faced by roads in India?

Ans a) Inadequate road network to meet the needs of the people.

b). About half of the roads are unmettled and this limits their usage during rainy seasons.

c) The national highways are inadequate too.

d) Moreover the roadways are highly congested in cities and most of the bridges and culverts are old and narrow

2) What are the advantages of roadways over railways?

Ans- Advantages of road ways over railways are:

Construction cost of roads is much lower than railway lines.

Roads can be constructed easily in hilly terrains and undulating topography.

Roadways act as a feeder to other modes of transport, as they provide a link between railway stations, air and sea ports.

Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances.

3) Describe 3 major super highways project in India? Explain

Ans- a) Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways: It links Delhi-Kolkata-Chennai, Mumbai and Delhi by six-lane Super Highways.

b) The North-South corridors linking Srinagar (Jammu Kashmir)to Kanyakumari (Tamil Nadu).

c) East-West Corridor linking Silcher, Assam and Porbandar Gujarat.

4) Which are three important networks of pipeline transportation in the country.

- a) From oil field in upper Assam to Kanpur (Uttar Pradesh), via Guwahati, Barauni and Allahabad.
- b) From Salaya in Gujarat to Jalandhar in Punjab, via Viramgam, Mathura, Delhi and Sonipat.
- c) Gas pipeline from Hazira in Gujarat connects Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh, via Vijaipur in Madhya Pradesh.

5) Mention any three features of Kandla Port.

Ans. a) Kandla in Kuchchh was the first port developed soon after independence to ease the volume of trade on Mumbai port, in the wake loss of Karachi port to Pakistan after the partition.

b) It caters to the convenient handling of exports and imports of highly productive granary and industrial belt stretching across the states of Jammu Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan and Gujarat.

c) This port is situated on the western side of India

6) What are the means of mass communication? Explain features of any two media.

Ans These are those means of communication through which one can communicate with several people at the same time. For example- Radio, newspaper and T.V.(Television):-

a) It is one of the largest and essential networks in the world.

b) It provides entertainment and keeps the viewers well informed about the world.

Radio:- It is the cheapest and the most effective means of communication.

c) Besides entertainment, it also provides information and promotes social education

7) Which of the following factors attract tourists to India?

Ans a) Natural beauty

b) Attractive landscapes

c) Cultural diversity

Natural beauty, landscapes, and India's cultural diversity are some tourist attractions of India.

8) Why international trade is important in Indian economy?

Ans- International trade leads to higher output, increased consumption and higher rewards for those sectors where a country has comparative advantage. International trade helps to attract foreign investment to exploit a country's comparative advantage. This can also result into investment in other sectors of the economy.

9) Case Study

a) Read the passage and answer the following(3mark)

Mass communication provides entertainment and creates awareness among people about various national programmes and policies. It includes radio, television, newspapers, magazines, books and films. All India Radio broadcasts a variety of programmes in national, regional and local languages for various categories of people, spread over different parts of the country. Door darshan, the national television channel of India, is one of the largest terrestrial networks

in the world. It broadcasts a variety of programmes from entertainment, educational to sports, etc. for people of different age groups. India publishes a large number of newspapers and periodicals annually. They are of different types depending upon their periodicity. Newspapers are published in about 100 languages and dialects.

- 1) Which radio broadcasts a variety of programmes in national, regional and local languages for various categories of people, to different parts of the India?
- 2) Which television channel of India is one of the largest terrestrial networks in the world?
- 3) What is the purpose of mass communication other than entertainment?

10) Read the following passage and answer the following (3 mark)

for a long time, trade and transport were restricted to a limited space. With the development in science and technology, the area of influence of trade and transport expanded far and wide. Today the world has been converted into a large village with the help efficient and fast-moving transport. Transport has been able to achieve this with the help of equally developed communication system therefore, transport, communication and trade are complementary to each other. Today, India is well-linked with the rest of the world despite its vast size, diversity and linguistic and social cultural plurality. Railways, airways, waterways, newspapers, radio, television, cinema, and etc. have been contributing to its social economic progress in many ways. The trades from local to international levels have added to the vitality of its economy. It has enriched our life and added substantially to growing amenities and facilities for the comforts of life.

1) The world is shrinking because advancement in _____ and _____

2) In order to expand its global trade India needs to _____

3) Which one of the followings is not an India's challenge to connect the world?

- a) complex land features
- b) Cultural and linguistic diversity
- c) Access to sea
- d) Vast area

VI} 5 Mark Questions

1) "Modern means of transport and communication serve as lifelines of our nation." Justify this statement by giving supportive arguments.

Ans- India is well linked with the rest of the world despite its vast size and diversities because of efficient means of transport and communication. They are rightly called the lifelines or arteries of a nation because:

Economic development of a country depends on the well-developed and efficient means of transport and communication. They are indispensable for movement of people, goods and services from one place to another. They have contributed to socio-economic progress in many ways by connecting far flung areas of the country. They have enriched all aspects of our lives — social, cultural, individual and economic. They promote trade, tourism and business thus adding value to the economy.

Transport and communication have made possible international trade which is essential for every economy as no country is self-sufficient in all resources. They link areas of production with consumption, i.e., agricultural farms are linked to the markets and industries. They help in the balanced regional development of a country. They play a very important role at the time of natural calamities, i.e., for providing relief measures. Deficient areas can obtain resources from the regions of surplus, thereby making the interdependence among the regions possible. They have added substantially to growing amenities and facilities for the comforts of life.

2) What are the different types of roads in India? Explain?

Ans There are six types of roads:-

1. Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways or Expressway National Highways
2. National Highways
3. State Highways
4. District Roads
5. Other Roads or Rural Roads or Village Roads
6. Border Roads

3) explain actors of Indian Tourism as a trade.

Ans-a) The arrival of foreign tourists has increased in our country over the year.

b) It contributes 21,828 crore as foreign exchange.

c) Tourism promotes national integration and international understanding.

d) More than 15 million people are directly engaged in tourism industry.

e) Tourism helps in the development of Indian handicrafts and cultural pursuits.

4) Write advantages of disadvantages of Indian railway?

Ans Advantage:

Suitable for longer journeys

Promotes tourism

Generates employment

Agricultural development

Culturally and socially important

Disadvantage:

cannot provide door to door service

Theft and damage of railway by people

construction of bridges and rails are very costly

unnecessarily pulling the chain

cannot build rails on Large rivers in Northern Plains, hilly terrains and desert regions

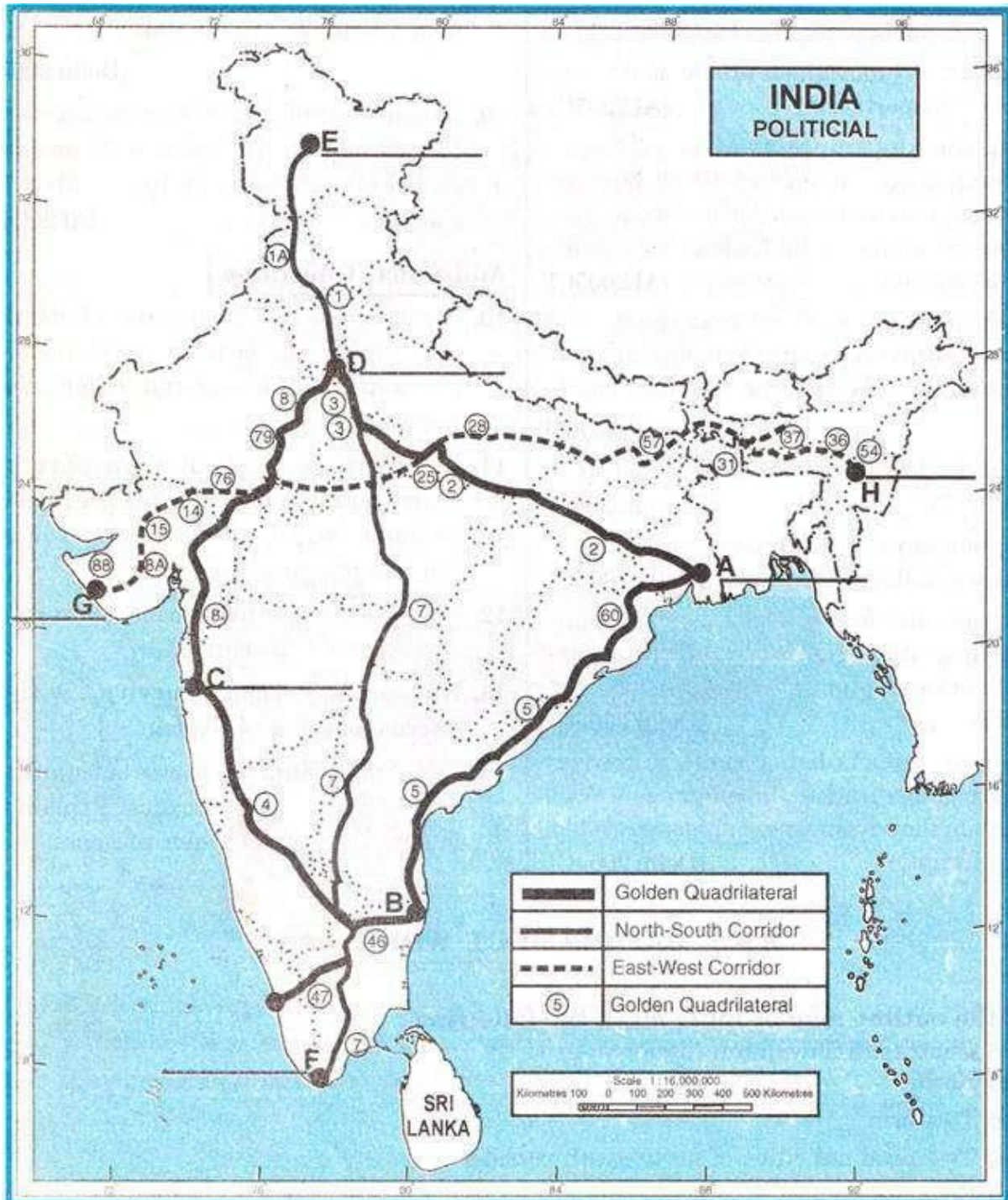
5) Write a note on the changing nature of international trade in the last fifteen years.

Ans: Trade between countries is known as international trade. International trade has undergone a vast change in the last fifteen years. Exchange of goods and commodities have been superseded by the exchange of information and knowledge. For e.g., – India has emerged as a software giant at the international level, and it is earning large foreign exchange through the export of information technology.

International trade also depends on the relationship between the countries and other external factors like duties and tariffs on the transportation of goods. In the last fifteen years, different trade blocks have emerged which have changed how international trade was conducted previously.

VII) Map

1) Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways

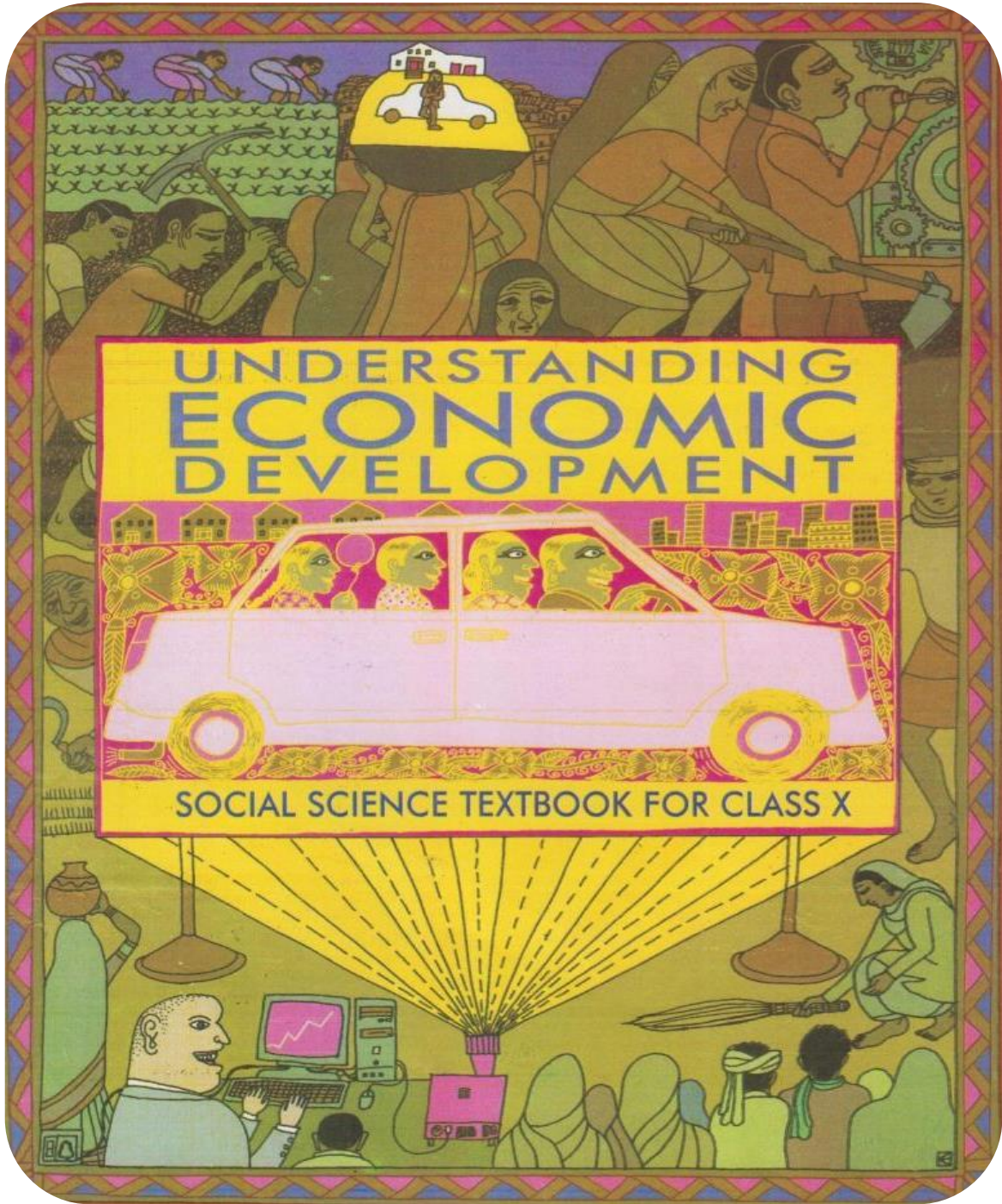


2) Important Seaports in India



3) International Airports





CHAPTER 1

DEVELOPMENT

Meaning of Development

Development applies to all round development of a country. Such as freedom, participate involvement, economic equality, security, life with dignity and good standard of living.

Different persons can have different developmental goals

What may be developed for one may not be developed for the other. It may even be destructive for the other.

INCOME AND OTHER GOALS:

Income is considered the most important component of development and it can buy material goods and services.

1. What people desire are regular work, better wages and decent price for their crops or other products that they produce. In other words, they want more income.
2. People also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect for others.
3. In some cases, these may be more important than more income or more consumption because material goods are not all that you need to live.
4. Money, or material things that one can buy with it, is one of the factors on which our life depends on non-material things mentioned above.
5. There are many things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot to our lives. These are often ignored.
6. However, it would be wrong to conclude that what cannot be measured is not important.
7. Similarly, for development people look at a mix of goals.
8. The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about better income but also about other important things in life

NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT:

1. It is very important to keep in mind that different persons could have different as well as conflicting notions of a country's development.
2. National development means thinking about fair and just path for all, whether there is a better way of doing things.

HOW TO COMPARE DIFFERENT COUNTRIES OR STATES?

1. Usually, we take one or more important characteristics of persons and compare them based on these characteristics.

2. For comparing countries, their income is considered to be one of the most important attributes.

3. Countries with higher income are more developed than others with less income.

The income of the country is the income of all the residents of the country. This gives us the total income of the country. For comparison between countries, total income is not such useful measure. Because they have different populations and comparing total income will not state the average amount earned by a person. Hence, we compare the average income which is the country divided by its total population. The average income is also called per capita income. In World Development Report brought out by the World Bank, this countries with per capita income of USD 12736 per annum and above in 2013, are called rich countries and those with per capita income of USD 1570 or less are called low-income countries. India comes in the category of low middle-income countries because its per capita income in 2013 was just US\$1570 per income.

INCOME AND OTHER CRITERIA:

Let us compare the per capita income of Maharashtra, Kerala, and Bihar. Maharashtra has the highest per capita income and Bihar is at the bottom.

So, if per capita income were to be used as the measure of development, Maharashtra will be considered the most developed state of the three.

PUBLIC FACILITIES:

Money in your pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that you may need to live well.

Income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use.

Normally, your money cannot buy the pollution-free environment or ensure that you get unadulterated medicines unless you can afford to shift to a community that already has all these things. Money may also not be able to protect you from infectious disease unless the whole of your community takes preventive steps.

Public Distribution System

Some states like Tamil Nadu have a well-functioning Public Distribution System for supply of food grains to poor people in rural areas, Whereas Jharkhand does not have an efficient system. In Tamil Nadu, 75% of the people living in rural areas shop, Whereas in Jharkhand only 8% of rural people are able to do so.

HUMAN DEVELOPMENT – Development of an individual in such a way that he can able to earn and fulfill his materialistic desire.

Human Development Report published by UNDP based on the following criteria,

- Living standard (Per capita Income)
- Health Status (life Expectancy)
- Educational levels of the people (Literacy rate and Enrolment ratio)

SUSTAINABILITY OF DEVELOPMENTS:

Since the second half of the twentieth century, a number of scientists have been warning that the present type, and levels, of development are not sustainable. Resources are replenished by nature as in the case of crops and plants. In the case of groundwater, if we use more than what is being replenished by rain then we would be overusing this resources. Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries; this issue is no longer region or nation-specific. Sustainability of developments comparatively a new area of knowledge in which scientists, economists, philosophers and other social scientists are working together.

KEYWORDS OF THE LESSON

Developed Economies: These are those economies which are characterized by high level of per capita income and high standard of living

Developing Economies: Those economies which are passing through the stages of growth and development. In such economies significance of agriculture tends to decline whereas the industrial sector grows sharply. e.g.
India, Indonesia

Economy: It is a sum total of all the economics activities like production, consumption, distribution exchange etc.

National Income: It is the total value of all the goods and services produced within a country plus net income from abroad during a year. **Public Distribution System :** A food security system established by the government of India to provide essential items at subsidised rate. Eg: rice, wheat, sugar
etc.

Production: When an activity results in valuable and useful things it is called production.

Per capita Income: It is the average income of the people of country in a definite period.

Under-Developed Economies: These are the economies which are characterized by low level of per capita income and miserable standard of living. Such economies are not able to exploit their natural resources. e.g. Nepal, Burma etc.

Infant Mortality Rate or IMR: Indicates the number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year.

Literacy Rate: Measures the proportion of literate population in the 7 and above age group.

10. Net Attendance Ratio: Is the total number of children of age group 6-10 attending school as a percentage of total number of children in the same age group.

Questions and Answers

OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

1. The total number of children attending school as a percentage of total number of children in the same age group is called

- (a) net attendance ratio (b) literacy rate
(c) gross enrolment ratio (d) level of education

Ans :

- (a) net attendance ratio

2. Per capita income hides

- (a) disparities (b) average income
(c) total population (d) none of these

Ans : (a) disparities

3. Per capita income of Kerala is higher than that of

- (a) Bihar (b) Punjab
(c) Gujarat (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) Bihar

4. Dividing the total income of country with its population, we get

I. Per-Capita income

II. National income

III. Average Income

IV. Total Income

- (a) Only III (b) I and II
(c) All of the above (d) None of these

Ans : (a) Only III

5. The per-capita income of different countries is counted in which currency?

- (a) Rupees (b) Pounds
(c) US Dollars (d) Canadian Dollars

Ans : (c) US Dollars

6. Among Haryana, Kerala and Bihar, the lowest per- capita income state is Bihar. It

shows that

- (a) Bihar has high standard of living
- (b) People are earning less in Kerala
- (c) Maharashtra has more number of rich people
- (d) On an average, people in Bihar have low income

Ans : (d)

On an average, people in Bihar have low income

7. Meaning of development is different for

- (a) different people (b) alien people
- (c) same people (d) none of these

Ans : (a) different people

8. Development of an individual refers to

- (a) mental development (b) physical development
- (c) spiritual development (d) overall development

Ans : (d)

overall development.

9. Classical view of economic development includes

- (a) per capita income (b) national Income
- (c) none of these (d) both a and b

Ans : (a) per capita income

10. Development goal for landless agricultural labor is

- (a) high prices for crops
- (b) more days of work
- (c) cheap labor
- (d) pollution free environment

Ans :

(b) more days of work

11. Per capita income of low-income countries is

- (a) < 30,000 or less (b) < 37,000 or less
- (c) < 40,000 or less (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) < 37,000 or less

Ans : (d) All of the above

12. IMR stands for

- (a) Infant Mortality Ratio
- (b) Indian Mortality Ratio
- (c) International Mortality Ratio
- (d) none of these

Ans : (a) Infant Mortality Ratio

13. People may have different developmental goals; what is development for one, may even be for the other.

- (a) destructive (b) constructive
- (c) same (d) equal

Ans : (a) destructive

14. Development criteria include

- (a) income (b) equal treatment
- (c) freedom (d) all of these

Ans : (a)

income

15. The literacy rate is highest in Kerala while the infant mortality rate is highest in Bihar. What does it show?

- (a) Most of the people in Kerala and Bihar have good living conditions.
- (b) Both Bihar and Kerala lack basic necessities of life.
- (c) The standard of living in Kerala is better than Bihar.
- (d) The standard of living in Bihar is better than Kerala.

Ans : (c)

The standard of living in Kerala is better than Bihar.

16. The Human Development Report (HDR) published by UNDP compares countries based on literacy rate, health status and

- (a) National income (b) Per-capita income
- (c) Both a and b (d) None of the above

Ans

: (b) Per-capita income

17. Full form of SED is

- (a) sustainable economic development
- (b) simple economic development
- (c) sound economic development
- (d) none of these

Ans : (a) sustainable economic development

18. A good way to measure the quality of life in countries across the world is by comparing their..... .

- (a) per capita Income
- (b) human development index
- (c) gross national income
- (d) sustainable development

Ans : (b)

human development index

Very Short Answer Type Questions

Question 1. Define the term National Income?

Answer: National income is defined as the total value of all final goods and services produced with a country plus net income from transactions like (export and import) with other countries.

Question 2. Define GDP.

Answer: GDP or Gross Domestic Product is the total value of all final goods and services produced during a particular year in a country.

Question 3. What is the main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries?

Answer: The World Bank uses average income or per capita income as a criterion for classifying different countries.

Question 4. Why is the total income of countries not used to make comparisons between them?

Answer: The total income of countries is not used to make comparisons between them, because the population of different countries is different and does not give a clear picture if comparisons are made on this basis.

Question 5. Literacy rate measures the proportion of literate population in which age group?

Answer: The age group of 7 years and above.

Question 6. Which state of India has the lowest infant mortality rate?

Answer: Kerala

Question 7. What is Human Development Index?

Answer: Human Development Index is a composite index of achievements of a nation in terms of three important variables, namely—longevity, knowledge and standard of living that determine the quality of life.

Question 8. Name the report published by UNDP which compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income. (2013)

Answer: Human Development Report

Question 9. What term is used to describe the „average number of years a person is expected to live at birth“?

Answer: Life Expectancy

Question 10. What is the advantage of per capita income? Mention any one.

Answer: It helps to compare the development of countries as per capita income tells us whether people in one country are better off than others in a different country.

Three Marks Questions

Question 1. What is per capita income? Mention any two limitations of per capita income as an indicator of development.

Answer- The total income of a country divided by its total population gives the Per Capita Income. Money cannot buy all the goods and services that are needed to live well. So income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use. For example, money can not buy a pollution-free environment or ensure that one gets unadulterated medicines, unless one can afford to shift to a community that already has all these things.

Question 2. Kerala, with lower per capita income, has a better human development ranking than Punjab. Hence, per capita income is not a useful criterion at all and should not be used to compare States. Do you agree?

Answer- Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these, joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor. Kerala ranks higher compared to Punjab even with a lower per capita income because— mortality rate is lower literacy rate is higher and total number of children attending school (Classes I- V) is higher.

Question 3. On the basis of which three indicators of HDI 2004 Sri Lanka has better rank than India?

Answer: Three indicators of HDI 2004 in which Sri Lanka has better rank than India:

Per capita income- The per capita income of Sri Lanka in US dollars was 4,390 US dollars while that of India was 3,139 US dollars.

Life expectancy at birth- The life expectancy at birth for Sri Lanka was 74, higher than that of India at 64.

Gross enrolment ratio for three levels—Sri Lanka had Gross Enrolment ratio of 69 while that of India was 60.

Question 4 : Mention any four characteristics of Development.

- i) Development is linked with the desire to improve the present condition.
- ii) Development involves thinking about the ways in which we can work towards achieving our desired goals.
- iii) There can be different development goals for different persons.
- iv) Development for one may not be development for others.

Five Marks Questions.

Question 1. Why do we use averages? Are there any limitations to their use? Illustrate with your own examples related to development.

Answer: 1. Total income is not a useful measure for comparison between countries. Since countries have different populations, comparing total income does not tell what an average person is likely to earn. Hence, we use average income which is total income of the country divided by total population.

2. The defect of average as a measure is that it does not show the distribution (dispersion) of income between the rich and the poor.

3. Two countries may have the same average income but in one country almost every family may enjoy more or less the same kind of income, whereas in the other, some may be very rich and others very poor. The disparity between rich and poor is an important feature that the average measure (per capita income) does not consider. Example: In terms of development, we can take the example of India, where the metro towns are full of high-rise buildings and shopping malls while some villages have not yet been provided with a basic necessity like electricity.

Question 2. "Money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well" Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments.

Answer: Yes, I agree with the statement because money income and material goods alone are not an adequate indicator of a good quality of life. Money cannot buy all the goods and services one needs to live well. Money cannot buy pollution free and dean environment with fresh air. It cannot protect us from infectious diseases and guarantee good health for us. Money cannot assure that medicines available in the market are not adulterated. To live well one needs non-material factors such as equal treatment, freedom, security, equal opportunity to learn, a pollution free environment, good and safe working conditions etc.

Question 3 : What do you mean by public facilities ? Why are they important?

Answer: Public facilities are the facilities provided by the government either free of cost or at very low price for the welfare of the people like schools , health centres, public transport etc.

The importance of these facilities is to make it available to everyone for use . Four major facilities are as follows;

1. Basic Education: Government provides school and other educational facilities like chair, books etc to be used by the public. But its use and performance is depended on collective response and community cooperation.
2. Basic health facilities : Government provides hospitals, Vaccine programmes to maintain basic quality of life.
3. Law and order facility/Security : It is the duty of the government to ensure law and order and provide security in order to maintain peace in the country.
4. Provide for Public Distribution System : Government opens PDS shops or ration shops through which it supplies basic food items like rice, wheat, pulses, etc at very low price /subsidised rate to the lower income groups or poor people. Other facilities are infrastructure facilities like road, irrigation projects drinking water supplies in urban areas etc.

Question 4 : “What may be the development for one may be the destruction for the other.” Explain the statement with appropriate examples.

Ans :It is true to say that what may be the development for one may be the destruction for the other. Sometimes the developmental goals of people may be conflicting in nature and prove destructive for others. For example,

- a. Construction of dam could be a development goal for the industrialist but it is a conflicting goal as it would affect the lives of the people living in that area as the local people may get displaced and their livelihood may get disrupted.
- b. If there is slum near the high rise buildings then the people of that high rise building will have the developmental goal to remove the slum from that locality which will be a conflicting goal as it would displace the slum peoQ

Question : 5 What is the main criteria used by the World Bank in classifying different countries? What are the limitations of this criteria, if any? In what respects is the criteria used by the UNDP for measuring development different from the one used by the World Bank?

Ans :

The main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries is per capita income.

Limitations of using average income for comparison:

- a. Average income hides the disparity.
- b. Average income does not tell us the distribution of income among the people.
- c. It is just a material criterion for the comparison.

The criteria used by the UNDP for measuring development is different from the one used by the World Bank on the following basis:

- a. World Bank uses PCI as a criteria for comparing the countries whereas UNDP uses PCI, health status and educational levels for the comparison.
- b. The criteria used by the World Bank is just a material criterion whereas the criteria used by the UNDP is both material and non-material criteria.

c. The criteria used by the World Bank does not give us a real picture of development as it is given by the UNDP.

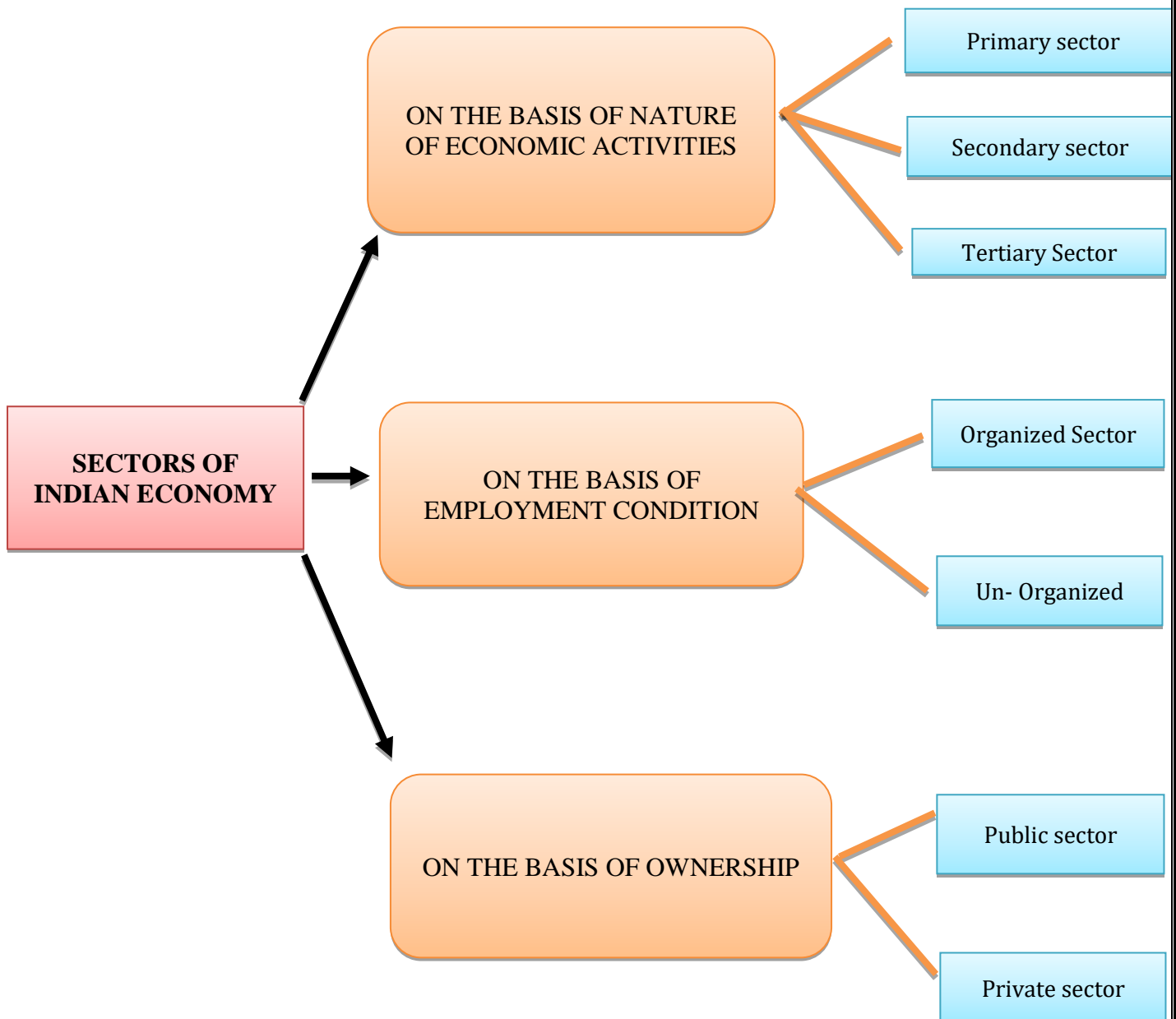
Subject Enrichment Activity

Activity 1 Make a chart on public facilities.

Activity 2 Compare the public facilities of India and Sri Lanka.

CHAPTER 2
SECTORS OF THE INDIAN ECONOMY

CLASSIFICATION OF SECTORS OF INDIAN ECONOMY



Key points:

1.Primary Sector: Activities under primary sector are defined as those that ensure goods productivity by the exploitation of natural resources.

2.Secondary Sector: Activities under secondary sector involve those in which natural goods are changed into manufactured products. It is popularly known as the industrial sector.

3.Tertiary Sector: Activities under tertiary sector include those that support the development of primary and secondary sector. It does not involve the production of goods but an aid to the produced goods.

4.Intermediate goods : Those goods which are sold by one firm to another for resale or for further processing .

5.Final goods: They have crossed the boundary line of production and are ready for use by the final users. E.g. cloth, coolers, T.V.etc.

6.GDP (Gross Domestic Product): It is the value of only final goods and services produced within the domestic territory of a country.

7.Unemployment: When the person is willing to work at the prevailing wage rate, but he/she is not getting a job it is called unemployment.

8.Seasonal Unemployment: The unemployment which takes place due to the variation in the season is called seasonal unemployment. It is mostly seen in the agricultural sector.

9.Underemployment or disguised unemployment means more people engaged in a job than needed.

10. Unorganized sector: It consists of small and scattered units which are not in the control of the government. It has low salary and unsecured jobs.

11.Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005, (MNREGA 2005): Under NREGA 2005, all those who are able to, and are in need of, work have been guaranteed 100 days of employment in a year by the government. If the government fails in its duty to provide employment, it will give unemployment allowances to the people.

ONE MARKS QUESTIONS:-

1. Agriculture, dairy farming are activities belonging to which of the following sectors?
 - A. Primary
 - B. Secondary
 - C. Tertiary
 - D. Scientific technology
2. GDP stands for Gross Domestic Product. What does it show? Pick up the correct statement given below:
 - A. It shows how big is the economy of a country in a given year in terms of its total output.
 - B. It shows what the total product of a country in a given year without counting the country's total resources.
 - C. It shows the number of people involved in production in a particular year.
 - D. It shows the total value of trade transactions of a country in a particular year.
3. Choose one correct statement from the following:
Underemployment occurs —
 - A. when people are not willing to work.
 - B. when people are working slowly.
 - C. when people are working less than what they are capable of doing.
 - D. when people are not paid for their jobs.
4. How do big private companies contribute in the development of a nation?
 - A. By increasing the demands for their products through advertisements.
 - B. By increasing their profits.
 - C. By increasing productivity of the country in the manufacturing of industrial goods.
 - D. By providing private hospital facilities for the rich.
5. Which of the following measures the proportion of children that die before the age of 1 year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year?
 - A. IMR - Infant mortality rate
 - B. Literacy rate
 - C. Net attendance ratio
 - D. Drop out ratio
6. _____ refers to the activities which are undertaken by people with the object of earning money.
 - A. Organised activities
 - B. Unorganised activities
 - C. Economic activities
 - D. Noneconomic activities
7. Who among the following fall under the organized sector?
 - A. Raghu, a daily wage labourer working in a dam site under a contractor.
 - B. Nafeesa, a doctor getting all employment benefits.
 - C. Purushothaman, a cleaning staff in a private bank.
 - D. Ammini, a tailor stitching clothes at his home.

8.NREGA (National Rural Employment Guarantee Act of 2005) has guaranteed _____ days of employment in a year in many districts of India. What are the correct number of days?

- A. 200 days
- B. 100 days
- C. 30 days
- D. 60 days

9. Employment figures of a country are based on data collected from 5-yearly survey on employment and unemployment. Which organisation conducts this survey?

- A. NSSO – National Sample Survey Organisation
- B. NREGA 2005 – National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005
- C. ILO – International Labour Organisation
- D. Census of India

10. In the past 100 years, there has been a further shift from _____ to _____ in developed countries. This has become the most important in terms of total production.

- A. secondary to tertiary sector
- B. primary to tertiary sector
- C. primary to secondary sector
- D. none of the above

11. Service sector also includes some essential services that may not directly help in the production of goods. State whether true or false.

- A. true
- B. false

12. Underemployment is hidden in contrast to some who does not have a job and is clearly visible as unemployed. It is also called _____ .

- A. Hidden employment
- B. Disguised unemployment.
- C. Unstable employment
- D. Less employment

13 Picture based question.

Kanta

Kanta works in an office. She attends her office from 9.30 a.m. to 5.30 p.m. She gets her salary regularly at the end of every month. In addition to the salary, she also gets provident fund as per the rules laid down by the government. She also gets medical and other allowances. Kanta does not go to office on Sundays. This is a paid holiday. When she joined work, she was given an appointment letter stating all the terms and conditions of work.

Kamal

Kamal is Kanta's neighbour. He is a daily wage labourer in a nearby grocery shop. He goes to the shop at 7:30 in the morning and works till 8:00 p.m. in the evening. He gets no other allowances apart from his wages. He is not paid for the days he does not work. He has therefore no leave or paid holidays. Nor was he given any formal letter saying that he has been employed in the shop. He can be asked to leave anytime by his employer.

On the basis of above picture answer the following questions

Q. Kanta is working in which sector?..

14. Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Assertion (A): The share of tertiary sector in employment has not increased in proportion to its increase in production.

Reason (R): Still more than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector.

Options:

- A. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true.

15. Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Assertion (A): Agriculture is an activity of organised sector in India.

Reason (R):Most of the workers working in agriculture are employed only during harvesting and sowing seasons.

Options:

- A. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true.

16. Match the following:

Column A	Column B
(A) Goods used up during the production process.	(i) Economic activities
(B) Goods which are ready for use	(ii) Intermediate Goods
(C) Activities which contribute to the flow of goods and services in an economy.	(iii) GDP
(D) Value of all final goods and services produced in a country during a particular year.	(iv) Final goods

- (a) A- i,B-iii,C-iv,D-I
- (b) A-iv,B-iii,C-i,D-ii
- (c) A-ii,B-iv,C-i,D-iii
- (d) A-iv.B-ii,C-I,D-iii

17. A small farmer, Lakshmi, owning about two hectares of unirrigated land dependent only on rain. All members of her family work in the plot throughout the year. Each one is doing something but no one is fully employed. Which type of employment is this an example?

- A. Seasonal employment
- B. Over employment
- C. Under employment
- D.Cyclical employment

18. If truck drivers strike and deny to transport then farmers will lose their trade and this will increase prices in urban areas. What does it shows?

19. What will happen if the government fails to provide 100 days employment under NREGA?

20. 'While calculated Gross Domestic product the value of only final goods should be included'. Give reason.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

21. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of production in the three sectors gives what is called the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. It is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year. GDP shows how big the economy is. In India, the mammoth task of measuring GDP is undertaken by a central government ministry. This Ministry, with the help of various government departments of all the Indian states and union territories, collects information relating to total volume of goods and services and their prices and then estimates the GDP. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. The secondary sector in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing that we associate with industrial activity. After primary and secondary, there is a third category of activities that falls under the tertiary sector and is different from the above two. These are activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. These activities, by themselves, do not produce a good but they are an aid or a support for the production process.

- I) Which sector has emerged as the largest producing sector in India?
- II) Life insurance is an activity of which sector?
- III) What is GDP?

22. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

This sector is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations but these are not followed. Jobs here are low-paid and often not regular. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness etc. Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave. A lot also depends on the whims of the employer. This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own doing small jobs such as selling on the street or doing repair work. Similarly, farmers work on their own and hire labourers as and when they require.

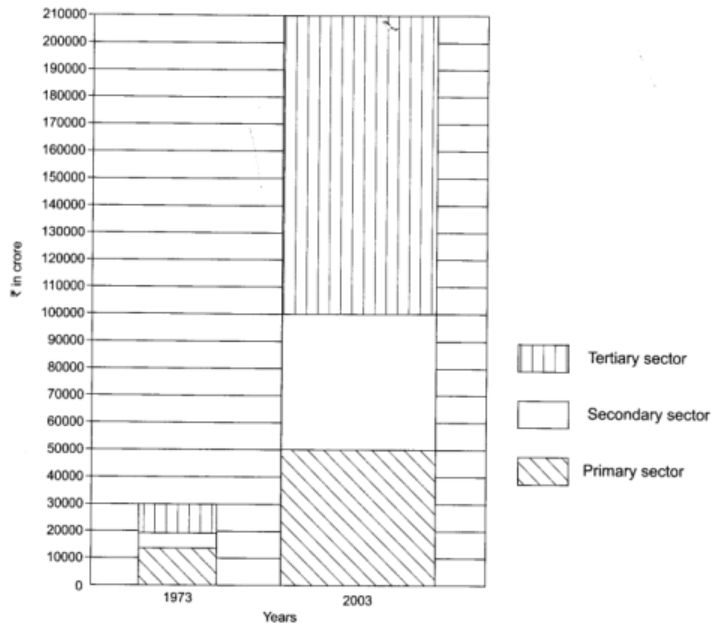
- I) Which sector are we talking about?
- II) Which of the following is applicable for a worker, who works in the above-mentioned sector?
 - A. . She gets medical allowance
 - B. She got an appointment letter stating the terms and conditions of work when she joins work.
 - C. She gets a regular salary at the end of the month.
 - D. She is not paid for leave.
- III) choose the correct meaning of the organised sector:
 - A. It covers those enterprises where the terms of employment are regular.
 - B. It is outside the control of the government.
 - C. Jobs are not regular
 - D. It provides low salaries.

23. Do you think the classification of economic activities into primary, secondary and tertiary is useful? Explain how.

24. How far is it correct to say that several services which cannot be provided by private sector, can be provided by the public sector? Explain.

25. "Economic activities, though grouped into three different categories", are highly interdependent." Discuss. Do you agree with the view that primary, secondary and tertiary sectors are dependent on each other?

26. Study the graph given below and answer the following questions :
GDP by Primary, Secondary, Tertiary Sector.



I. What does the comparison between 1973 and 2003 show ?

II. What conclusions can be drawn from the comparison ?

27. Give the meaning of tertiary sector. State any three factors that contributed to the growth of this sector.

28. Why is NREGA also called the Right to work? Explain the objectives of National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005.

29. "The problem of underemployment is not confined only to agriculture". Support the statement with examples.

30. Why didn't shift out of primary sector happen in case of employment although there has been a change in the share of the three sectors in GDP?

FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

31. "There are several things needed by the society as a whole". In the light of this statement explain as to who can provide them at a reasonable cost, the private or the public sector and why?

32. How do we create more employment in the agricultural sector?

33. Describe certain activities of public interest on which the government has to focus on priority basis.

34. Distinguish between Public sector and private sector.

35. Do you agree that agriculture is an activity of an unorganised sector in India? Give any four points.

ANSWER KEY

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

Q.NO	ANS	Q.NO	ANS
1	A	11	A
2	A	12	B
3	C	13	unorganised
4	C	14	B
5	A	15	D
6	C	16	C
7	B	17	C
8	B	18	Sectors are dependent on each other
9	B	19	Unemployment allowance will be given
10	A	20	Because the final goods already include the value of all intermediate goods

THREE MARK QUESTIONS

21. 21.I : Tertiary Sector

21.II : Tertiary Sector

21.III : The money value of all the final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year.

22.

22.I : Unorganised sector

22.II : D. She is not paid for leave.

22.III : A. It covers those enterprises where the terms of employment are regular

23.

I) Yes, classification of economic activities into primary, secondary and tertiary sector is useful as it helps in estimating the relative importance in the growth in GDP of the economy.

II) it helps in asserting that which sector contributes the most in the GDP and which sector has the scope to employ more people and increase the National Income.

III)It helps in calculating how much goods and services are produced and how many people work in each sector

IV) This type of classification helps in comparing the level of growth in different countries.

24.

(i) There are several things needed by the society as a whole like sanitation system, safe drinking water, education, etc. which the private sector will not provide at reasonable cost

(ii) There are some activities, which the government has to support. The private sector may not continue their production or business unless government encourages it. For example, selling electricity at the cost of generation may push up the costs of production of industries.

(iii) Similarly, the government in India buys wheat and rice from farmers at a 'fair price.' This it stores in its godowns and sells at a lower price to consumers through ration shops.

25.

Answer: Primary, secondary and tertiary sectors are interdependent as mentioned below :

1. When we produce goods by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. It is primary because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make.

2. The secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms manually or by machines. For example wheat is used to manufacture bread. So there is mutual dependency between primary and secondary sectors.

3. The activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors fall under the tertiary sector. These activities by themselves do not produce a good but they are an aid or a support for the production process. Transport, storage, communication and banking are some examples of tertiary activities.

26.

26.I:

---The comparison between 1973 and 2003, show that over thirty years between 1973 and 2003, production in all the three sectors has increased.

----The production has increased the most in the tertiary sector.

-----The tertiary sector has emerged as the largest producing sector in India replacing the primary sector.

26.II:

----The conclusions that can be drawn are as mentioned below

-----Tertiary sector has become the largest producing sector.

-----The primary sector i.e., agricultural sector's share in the GDP has come down during these thirty years.

-----The share of the tertiary sector in the GDP has increased and it is now maximum in 2003.

27.

Tertiary sector relates to the activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors.

The causes for tertiary sector becoming important sector in India

---Concept of welfare state and basic services

---Development of agriculture and industry

---Rise in income

----Development of information technology.

28.

Every state or region in India has potential for increasing the income and employment in that area. Recognising this, the Central Government in India has passed an act called the National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005,

Main objectives :

----to implement the Right to Work in 200 districts of India.

----to guarantee 100 days of employment in a year by the Government. In case the Government fails, it offers unemployment allowance.

----to give preference to the type of work that will help increase the production from land

29.

The problem of underemployment is not confined only to agriculture. It can also happen in other sectors.

---For example, there are thousands of casual workers in the service sector in urban areas who search for daily employment. Many of them don't find work everyday.

---We see other people of the service sector on the street pushing a cart or selling something where they may spend the whole day but earn very little. They are doing such work only due to the lack of better employment opportunities.

---The unorganised sector includes small and scattered units outside the government control. Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave.

30.

---A similar shift out of primary sector did not happen in case of employment because not enough jobs were created in the secondary and tertiary sectors.

---Even though industrial output or the production of goods went up by eight times during the period, employment in the industry went up by only 2.5 times.

---While production in the service sector rose by 11 times, employment in the service sector rose less than three times.

---As a result, more than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector, mainly in agriculture, producing only a quarter of the GDP.

FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

31. Reasons for this are:

1. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits and not welfare of the people.

2. There are several services needed by the society which the private sector cannot provide at a reasonable price. Activities like construction of roads, bridges, railways, irrigation through dams, etc., require huge amount of money which is beyond the capacity of the Private sector. Private sector charges high rates for the use of these services.

3. It is difficult for the Private sector to collect money from thousands of people who use these services.

4. The Private sector sometimes ignores regional balanced development, equality of income and development of basic industries.

5. Private sector charges include profit margins whereas the government will charge a reasonable price for services. It is the primary duty of the government to ensure the provision of public facilities with a service motto.

32.

---Loans could be given to farmers to dig wells to irrigate their land.

---Seeds and fertilizers could be subsidized.

---Dams can be built to irrigate dry areas.

---Transport facilities could be increased.

---Storage facilities could be provided.

---Industries and other service-related companies could be relocated in rural areas so that the underemployed people of the agricultural sector could find work.

---More schools could be started to educate the rural population to help them become employable, as underemployment is prevalent among farmers.

33. Education, Health and Nutrition, Transportation, Electricity

34.

Public Sector	Private Sector
Public sector organisations are owned, controlled and managed by the government or other state-run bodies.	Private sector organisations are owned, controlled and managed by individuals, groups or business entities.
The ownership of the public sector units can be by central, state or local government bodies, and this ownership is either full or partial.	The ownership of private sector units is by individuals or entities with zero interference from the government
Public sector units provide several employment benefits like job security, housing facilities, allowances and retirement benefits.	Private sector units offer benefits like higher salary packages, better chances of promotion and recognition, competitive environment and greater incentives in terms of bonus and other benefits.
Jobs within the public sector are very stable since the chances of getting sacked due to non-performance are very low.	Jobs within the private sector are not very secure since non-performance can lead to sacking. Companies can also fire people in case of cost cutting or scaling down of operations.
Some of the main areas that come under the public sector are police, military, mining, manufacturing, healthcare, education, transport, banking, etc.	Some of the main areas that come under the private sector are information technology, finance, fast moving consumer goods, construction, hospitality, pharmaceuticals, etc.

35. In the rural areas, the unorganised sector mostly comprises of landless agricultural labourers, small and marginal farmers, sharecroppers. Nearly 80 per cent of rural households in India are in small and marginal farmer category. It is an activity of an unorganised sector due to the following reasons:

- i) No fixed working hours.
- ii) No provident fund, gratuity.
- iii) Job is low-paid and often not regular.
- iv) Employment is not secure.

CHAPTER 3

MONEY AND CREDIT

I. SUMMARY:

Money as a medium of exchange

Barter System: Goods and Services were directly exchanged without the use of money. This system of exchange was termed a barter system.

Double coincidence of wants is an essential feature of barter system in which both the parties (seller and the buyer) have to agree to buy and sell each other's commodities.

Money: It acts as an intermediate in the exchange process & it is called a medium of exchange.

Modern Forms of Money

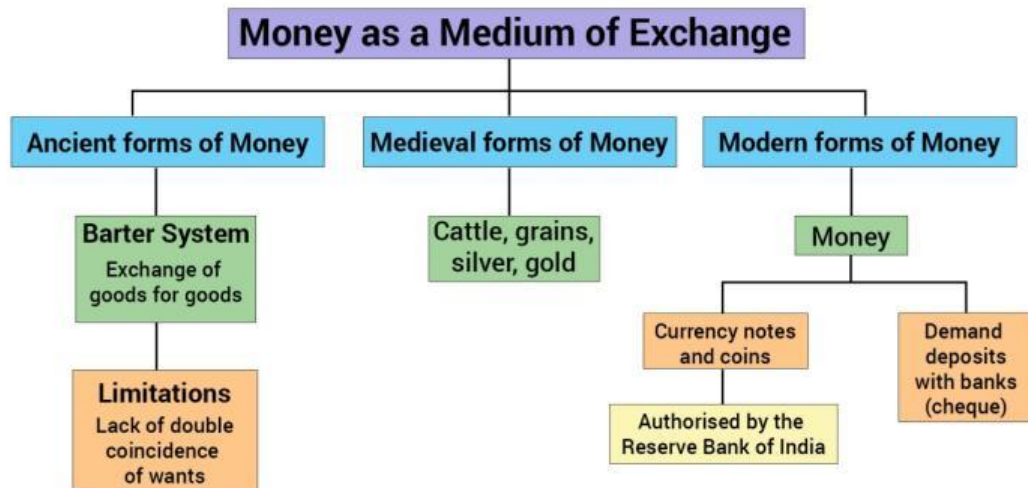
Money is something that can act as a medium of exchange in transactions.

Currency

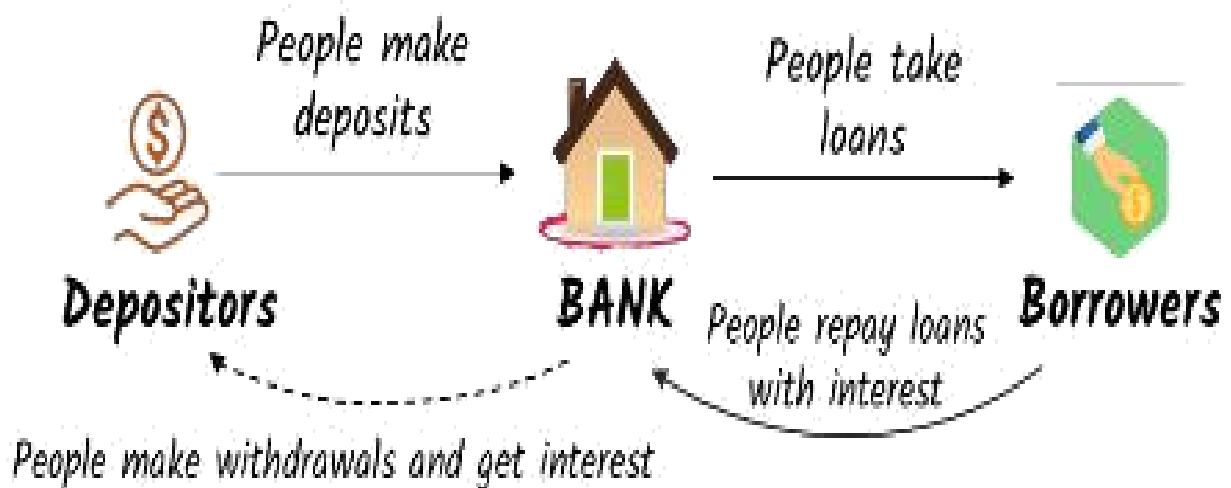
- In the modern times, paper notes and coins are used as a medium of exchange
- The Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the central government
- According to the law no one can refuse payment made in rupees to settling transactions

Deposits with Banks

- People deposit extra cash in the banks by opening a bank account in their name
- Banks accept the deposits and also pay an amount as interest on the deposit
- Deposits in the bank accounts can be withdrawn on demand are called **Demand Deposits**
- **Cheque:** A cheque is a paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount from the person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued

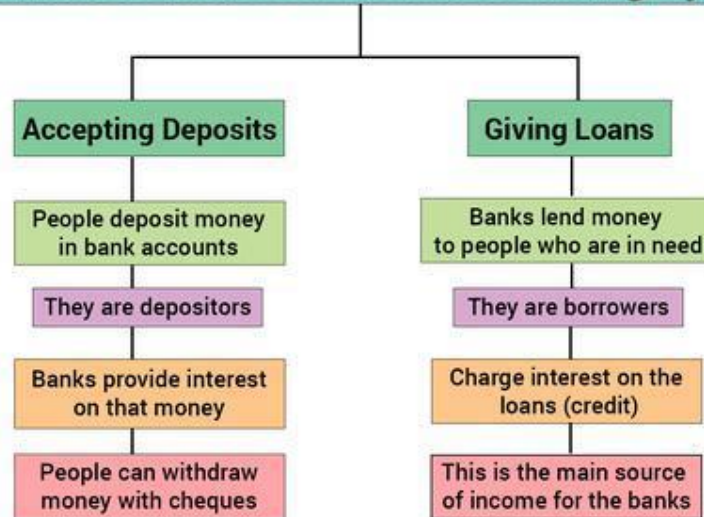


Loan Activities of Banks



- In India, the bank holds about 15% of their deposits as cash to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day
- Banks mediate between those who have extra funds (the depositors) and those who are in need of these funds (the borrowers).
- Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits. The difference between these interests is the bank's main source of income.

Two main activities of Modern Banking System



Two different credit situations

1. Credit (loan) plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money. *For example*, Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pairs of shoes. In the end, he delivered the order, made a profit, and repaid the loan.
2. In some cases, Credit pushes the borrower into a situation from which recovery is very painful. *For example*, a small farmer Swapna took a loan for crop cultivation but due to being hit by pests, her crops were destroyed. So she took another loan for spraying pesticides but the production was not enough to repay the loan. So she was caught in debt-trap.

Sources of Credit

Formal Sector Credit

Types

Banks, Cooperatives

Features

Charge low/nominal rate of interest, take collateral

Supervision

Strict control by RBI, no exploitation

Informal Sector Credit

Types

Money lenders, traders, relatives

Features

Charge high rate of interest, collateral not necessary

Supervision

No supervision, so exploitation of borrowers

Self Help Groups

It consists of 15-20 members

They can also avail loans from banks if their savings are regular

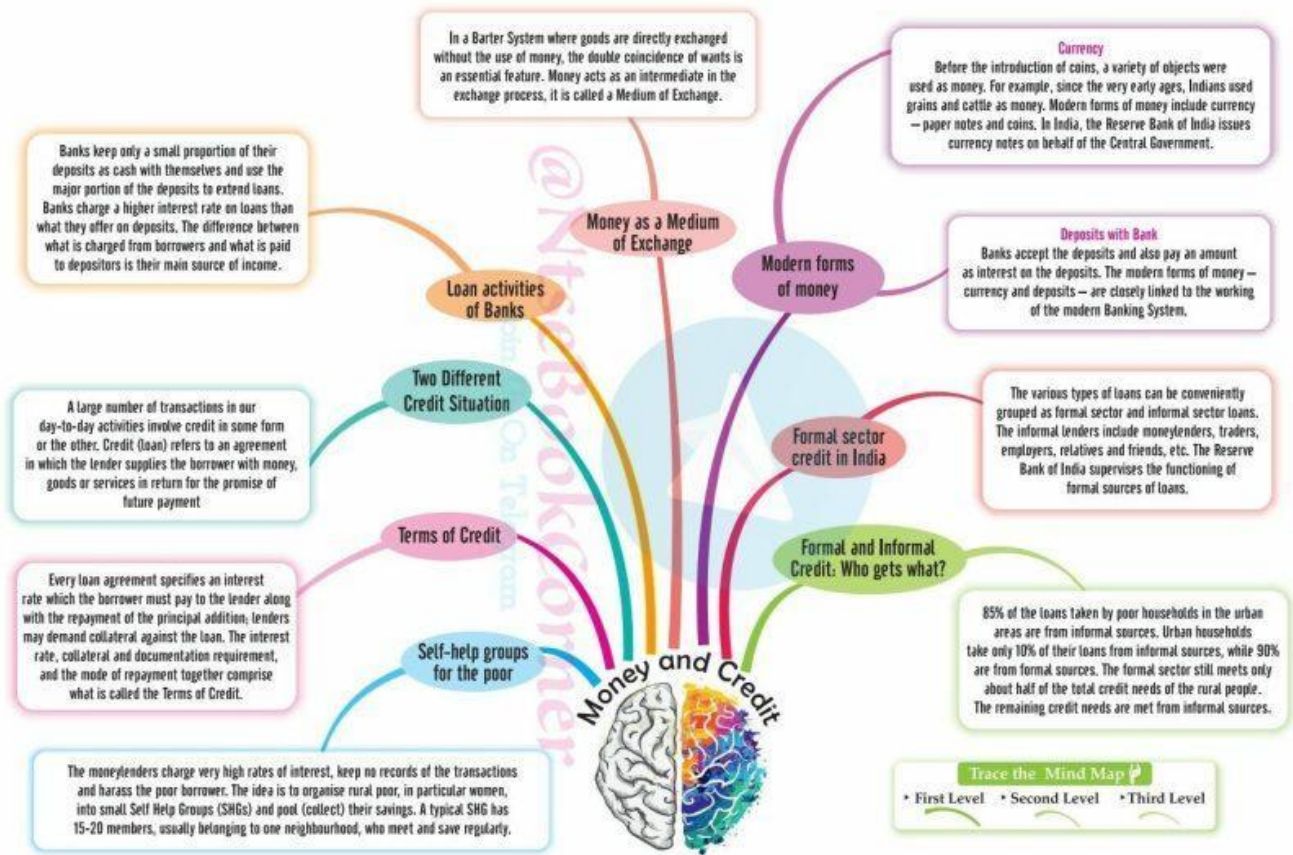
The rate of interest is also low

Decisions regarding the savings and loan activities are taken by group members

Collateral not needed to take loans

It creates self-employment opportunities for the members

11.CONCEPT MAPPING



QUESTIONS

III. MCQ

1. **A person can withdraw money from a bank by issuing a cheque. What is a cheque?**
 - (a) Loan taken by the bank.
 - (b) Loan taken by the depositor from the bank.
 - (c) Paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount.
 - (d) Paper valid to withdraw money

2. **Banks give out loans and charge on the loan amount from the borrower.**
 - (a) rent (b) wages
 - (c) interest (d) money

3. **All the banks act as mediator between----- and -----.**
 - a. rural people, urban people
 - b. literates, illiterates
 - c. people, government
 - d. depositors, borrowers

4. **Which of the following is not a feature of Self Help Groups (SHGs)?**
 - a. It consists of 15-20 members or more.
 - b. Here members pool their savings which acts as collateral.
 - c. Loans are given at nominal rate of interest.
 - d. It is an informal source of credit.

5. **Organised credit is also called**
 - a. informal credit
 - b. formal credit
 - c. cooperative credit
 - d. none of these

6. **People are involved in a variety of occupations.**

Match the following with the appropriate reason people might borrow money for:

A	B
a) Auto rickshaw driver	i) To buy a house
b) A businessman whose factory has been closed	ii) To buy a new shop for him
c) Small trader	iii) To revive his business
d) Govt. servant	iv) To buy a new vehicle.

7. Which one of the following is not a formal source of credit?

- (a) Commercial Banks
- (b) State Bank of India
- (c) Employers
- (d) Co-operatives

8. All the banks act as mediator between and

- a. rural people, urban people
- b. literates, illiterates
- c. people, government
- d. depositors, borrowers

9. Which one of the following is the appropriate meaning of collateral?

- (a) It is the sum total of money borrowed from banks.
- (b) The amount borrowed from friends.
- (c) It is an asset of the borrower used as guarantee to a lender.
- (d) The amount invested in a business.

10. Which of the following is not an advantage of self-help group?

- (a) Grant of timely loans
- (b) Reasonable interests
- (c) A platform to discuss various issues
- (d) Does not help women to become self-reliant.

11. Which one of the following is a major reason that prevents the poor from getting loans from the banks?

- (a) Lack of capital
- (b) Not affordable due to high rate of interest
- (c) Absence of collateral security
- (d) Absence of mediators

12. Which one of the following is the important characteristic of modern form of currency?

- (a) It is made from precious metal
- (b) It is made from thing of everyday use
- (c) It is authorised by the commercial banks
- (d) It is authorised by the Government of the country

13. Which one of the following is not included in the terms of credit?

- (a) Rate of Interest
- (b) Mode of payment
- (c) Rate of saving
- (d) Collateral

14. Banks use the major portion of the deposit to:

- (a) Keep reserve so that people may withdraw
- (b) Meet their routine expenses
- (c) Extend loans
- (d) Meet renovation of the bank

15. At present which form of money is increasingly used apart from paper money?

- (a) Commodity money
- (b) Metallic money
- (c) Plastic money
- (d) All the above

16. What is the main source of income of a bank?

- (a) Bank charges that the depositors pay for; keeping their money safe is the main ; source of the bank's income.
- (b) The difference between what is charged from the borrowers and paid to the depositors is the main source of bank's income.
- (c) Banks earn huge amounts of money by investing the money of the depositors in various company shares.
- (d) The Government of India gives huge amounts of money to the banks to help their smooth functioning.

IV.ASSERTION/REASON TYPE QUESTIONS:

DIRECTION : Mark the option which is most suitable :

- (a) If both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) If both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) If assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) If both assertion and reason are false.

1. Assertion : The modern currency is used as a medium of exchange; however, it does not have a use of its own.

Reason : Modern currency is easy to carry

2. Assertion : In India, no individual can refuse to accept a payment made in rupees.

Reason : Rupee is the legal tender in India.

3. Assertion : The facility of demand deposits makes it possible to settle payments without the use of cash.

Reason : Demand deposits are paper orders which make it possible to transfer money from one person's account to another person's account.

4. Assertion : Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves.

Reason : Banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.

5. Assertion : Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits.

Reason : The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income.

6. Assertion : Rohan took credit in the form of advance payment from a buyer and he delivered the goods to the buyer on time and also earned profit. The credit made Rohan better off in this situation.

Reason : Credit can never push a person into a debt trap.

7. Assertion : Credit would be useful or not depends on the risk involved in a situation.

Reason : The chance of benefitting from credit is highest in agriculture sector.

V. CASE STUDY Questions:

1. Ramu is a potter making pots, wants to exchange pots for wheat.

Luckily, he meets a farmer who has wheat and is willing to exchange it for the pots. What is this situation known as?

- i. Incidence of wants
- ii. Double coincidence of wants
- iii. Barter system of wants
- iv. None of the above

2. Sam is a merchant. He has some surplus money, he opens a bank account and deposits in it. Whenever he needs money, he can go to his bank and withdraw from there. This kind of deposit with the banks are known as:

- (a) demand deposit
- (b) term deposit
- (c) fixed deposit
- (d) surplus deposit

3. Thomas and Selvan are small farmers. Thomas has taken credit @ 1.5% per month on < 20000 from a trader while Selvan has taken credit at 8% per annum from bank on the same amount. Who is better off?

- (a) Thomas is better because he has to do no paperwork.
- (b) Selvan is better because his interest payment is less.
- (c) Thomas is better because he has not paid any collateral.
- (d) Both Thomas and Selvan are equal so no one is better off.

4. Nakul is a trader. He provides farm inputs on credit on the condition that farmers will sell their crop products to him at prices so that he could sell them at-----prices in the market.

- (a) high, medium
- (b) low, high
- (c) medium, high
- (d) high, low

5. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. For instance, we have seen that the banks maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The RBI monitors the banks in actually maintaining cash balance. Similarly, the RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small scale industries, to small borrowers, etc. Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to who, at what interest rate, etc. There is no organisation which supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector. They can lend

at whatever interest rate they choose. There is no one to stop them from using unfair means to get their money back.

1). RBI gives loans to-----

1

1. To established cultivators, small scale industries, to small borrowers, etc.
2. To small cultivators, small scale industries, to small borrowers, etc.
3. To small cultivators, large scale industries, to small borrowers, etc.
4. None of the above

2). There is no organisation which supervises the credit activities of lenders in the----- 1

1. Informal sector
2. Primary sector
3. Secondary sector
4. Tertiary sector

3). Which organisation supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India? How? 2

5. Modern forms of money include currency-paper notes and coins. Unlike the things that were used as money earlier, modern currency is not made of precious metal such as gold, silver and copper. And unlike grain and cattle, they are neither of everyday use. The modern currency is without any use of its own. Then, why is it accepted as a medium of exchange? It is accepted as a medium of exchange because the currency is authorised by the government as it legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transactions in India. No individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees. Hence, the rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange in the country. In India, the Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the central government. As per Indian law, no other individual or organisation is allowed to issue currency. Moreover, the law legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in selling transactions in India. No individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees. Hence, the rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.

1. Who issues the currency notes in India? Which is our currency used nowadays? 1

(i) The State Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the district government. Nowadays paper notes and coins are used as currency in our country.

(ii) The Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the state government. Nowadays paper notes and coins are used as currency in our country.

(iii) The Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central government. Nowadays paper notes and coins are used as currency in our country.

The Rural Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central government. Nowadays only coins are used as currency in our country.

2. **What is accepted as the medium of exchange in India?** 1
- (i) Dollar is accepted as the medium of exchange in India.
 - (ii) Rupee is accepted as the medium of exchange in India.
 - (iii) Euro is accepted as the medium of exchange in India.
 - (iv) Dinar is accepted as the medium of exchange in India.
 - (v)
3. **What does the Indian Law say about the currency?** 2

VI. VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS 2 MARKS EACH

1. State the role of Reserve Bank of India.
2. Which are the modern forms of money?
3. How do the demand deposits share the essential features of money ?
4. What is debt-trap?
5. Which authority does supervise the functioning of formal sources of loans and how?
6. What is meaning of Barter system? Why is double coincidence of wants is an essential feature of a Barter system?
7. Why is modern currency accepted as a medium of exchange without any use of its own ? Point out the reasons.
8. Why should credit at reasonable rates from the banks and cooperatives be available for all ?
9. Why is it necessary for the banks and cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in rural areas?
10. How do banks play an important role in the economy of India?
11. Why are transactions made in money?
12. Why is money called a medium of exchange?
13. Why are deposits with banks are called demand deposits?

VII. SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS- 3 MARKS

1. What do you mean by 'Barter system'?
2. What is meant by double coincidence of wants? What is its inherent problem?
3. What is money? Why is modern money/ currency accepted as a medium of exchange?
4. Why do banks ask for collateral while giving credit to a borrower?
5. What comprises 'terms of credit'?
6. "Supervision of the functioning of formal sources of loans is necessary". Why?

7. "There is a great need to expand formal sources of credit in rural India."

Examine the statement.

8. Why are most of the poor households deprived from the formal sector of loans?

9. What do you understand by demand deposits?

10. (a) "Cheap and affordable credit is essential for poor households both in rural and urban areas." In the light of the above statement explain the social and economic values attached to it.

OR

(b) "Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development." Assess the statement.

OR

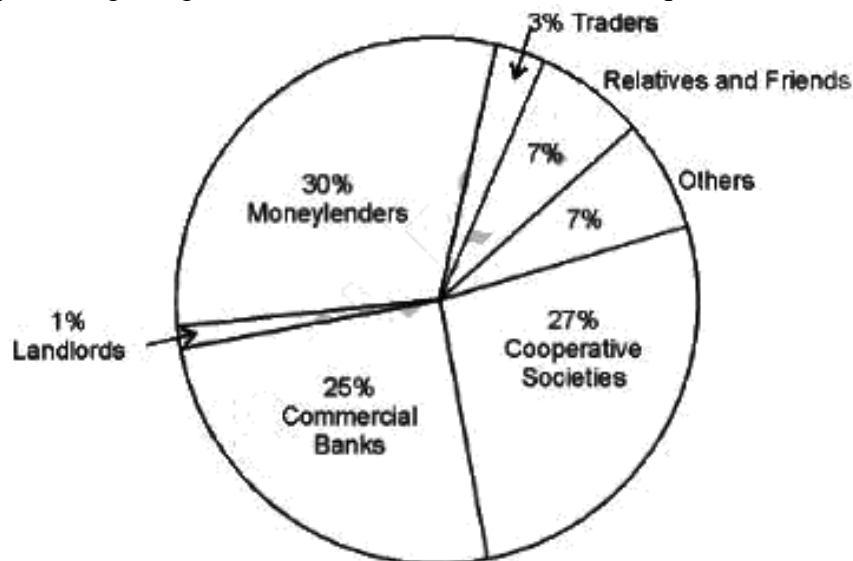
(c) 'Credit has its own unique role for development'. Justify the statement with arguments.

a. Why is it necessary for the banks and cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in rural areas? Explain.

b. Why do we need to expand formal sources of credit in India?

OR

d) Study the diagram given below and answer the THREE questions that follows:



Sources of credit for Rural Households in India in 2003.

1. Which are the two major sources of credit?

2. Which one of them is the most dominant source of credit for rural households?

3. Why are most of the rural households depend on informal sources of credit?

VIII. LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS 5 MARKS

1. What is the difference between formal sector loans and informal sector loans? Give two examples of each.

Or

Mention three points of difference between the formal sector and informal sector loans.

2. What are formal sources of credit? Why do we need to expand formal sources of credit in India?

Or

Why do we need to expand formal source or credit in India? Explain any four reasons.

Or

Describe two reasons why banks and cooperative societies must increase their lending in rural areas. Give three suggestions for how it can be achieved.

Give two reasons.

4. "RBI plays a crucial role in controlling formal sector loan." Explain.

Or

In what ways does the Reserve Bank of India supervise the functioning of banks?

5. How do SHG's act to provide a platform for women to address their various social issues?

6. Self-Help Groups enjoy a lot of freedom in their functioning. Explain.

7. Self-Help Groups can help in solving the problem of credit in rural areas. Explain.

Or

In what ways do Self-Help Groups help the rural sector of the economy?

8. Describe the organization, working and importance of Self-Help Groups. Or What are the Self-Help Groups? How do they work? Explain.

Or

What is meant by Self Help Group? Explain its working.

9. Why are informal sources of credit preferred in rural areas? Give five reasons.

10. Why are credit arrangements not fair for all sections of society? Give three reasons. Suggest two remedies for the problem.

Or

Why is the share of formal sector credit higher for the richer households compared to the poorer households? Give any three reasons responsible for this.

11. In situations with high risks, credit might create further problems for the borrower. Explain.

ANSWERS

ANSWERS -III. MCQ

1. (c) Paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount.
2. (c) interest
3. (d) depositors, borrowers
4. (d) It is an informal source of credit.
5. (b) formal credit
- 6.

A	B
a) Auto rickshaw driver	iv) To buy a new vehicle.
b) A businessman whose factory has been closed	iii) To revive his business
c) Small trader	ii) To buy a new shop for him
d) Govt. servant	I) To buy a house

7. (c) Employers
8. (d) depositors, borrowers
9. (c) It is an asset of the borrower used as guarantee to a lender.
10. (d) Does not help women to become self-reliant.
11. (c) Absence of collateral security
12. (d) It is authorised by the Government of the country
13. (c) Rate of saving
14. (c) Extend loans
15. (c) Plastic money
16. (b) The difference between what is charged from the borrowers and paid to the depositors is the main source of bank's income.

IV. ANSWERS- ASSERTION/REASON

1. **Ans :** (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

The modern currency is used as a medium of exchange because it is accepted and authorized as a medium of exchange by a country's government.

2. **Ans :** (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

The law legalizes the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transactions in India.

3. **Ans :** (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

The facility of cheques against demand deposits makes it possible to directly settle payments without the use of cash. Since demand deposits are accepted widely as a means of payment, along with currency, they constitute money in the modern economy.

4. **Ans :** (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves because they use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans as there is a huge demand for loans for various economic activities.

5. **Ans :** (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

Banks in India hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash as the remaining deposits are used to provide loans. The interest charged on loans is higher than the interest paid on deposits and the difference between the two interest rates is the major source of income for banks.

6. **Ans :** (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

The credit made Rohan better off in this situation, however, Rohan would have been worse off if he had failed to deliver the goods on time or he had made a loss in the production process. The latter two situations may have caused Rohan to fall in a debt trap.

7. **Ans :** (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

Whether credit would be useful or not depends on the risks in the situation and whether there is some support, in case of loss.

V. ANSWERS -CASE STUDY

1. (b) Double coincidence of wants
2. (a) demand deposit
3. (b) Selvan is better because his interest payment is less.
4. (b) low, high
- 5.1. None of the above

2. Informal sector
3. The **Reserve Bank of India** supervises the functioning of formal sources of credit in India. It is the central bank of India.

It supervises the functioning of banks in the following ways :

The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. Banks in India these days, hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.

RBI ensures that the banks give loans not just to profit-making business and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, small borrowers, etc.

Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rates, etc.

- 6.1. (3) The Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central government. Nowadays paper notes and coins are used as currency in our country.
2. (2) Rupee is accepted as the medium of exchange in India.
3. As per Indian law, no other individual or organisation is allowed to issue currency. Moreover, the law legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transactions in India.

VI. ANSWER -. Very Short Answer Questions 2 MARKS EACH

1. (i) In India, the Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central Government.
(ii) The RBI supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.
(iii) The RBI monitors the banks in actually maintaining cash balance.
(iv) The RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators.
(v) Any other relevant point.

(Any two points)

2. The modern forms of money comprises:
currency — paper notes and coins.
Unlike the things that were used as money earlier, modern currency is not made of precious metals such as gold, silver, and copper.

And unlike grain and cattle, they are neither of everyday use.

The modern currency is without any use of its own.
3. The demand deposits share the essential features of money:
The facility of cheques against demand deposits make it possible to directly settle payments without the use of cash.

Since demand deposits are accepted widely as a means of payment, along with currency, they constitute money in the modern economy.
4. Debt-trap - When a borrower particularly in rural area fails to repay the loan due to the failure of the crop, he is unable to repay the loan and is left worse off. This situation is commonly called debt-trap. Credit in this case pushes the borrower into a situation from which recovery is very painful.

5.
 1. Reserve Bank of India.
 2. The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain the cash balance. It also sees that the banks give loans to all rich as well as poor.
6. Meaning of Barter system: A system in which goods are directly exchanged without the use of money is called barter system.
 Double coincidence of wants means when both the parties – seller and purchaser – agree to sell and buy each other’s commodities. It implies that what a person desires to sell is exactly what the other wishes to buy. No money is used in such an arrangement. Therefore it is an essential feature of barter system.
7. **Modern currency is accepted as a medium of exchange without any use of its own due to reasons as :**
 - In India, the Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the central government.
 - As per Indian law, no other individual or organisation is allowed to issue currency.
 - The law legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transactions in India.
 - No individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees. Hence the rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.
 - (Any other relevant point).
 - (Any two points)
8. Credit at reasonable interest rates should be available for all so that they may increase their income and help in the over all development of the country.
 1. High interest rate do little to increase the income of the borrowers.
 2. It is necessary that the banks and cooperatives increase their lending particularly in rural areas, so that the dependence of the people on informal sources of credit reduces.
 3. In addition to this more credit should be given to the poor to get maximum benefit from the cheaper loans.
 4. This will help in increasing their income as well as standard of living.
 5. Any other relevant point
(Any two points)
9.
 - (i) Banks and cooperative societies can help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans.
 - (ii) This will empower people in a variety of ways. They could grow crops, do business, set up small- scale industries etc. They could set up new industries or trade in goods.
 - (iii) Loans from informal lenders carry a very high interest rate and do little to increase the income of the borrowers. Thus, it is necessary that banks and cooperatives increase their lending particularly in the rural areas, so that the dependence on informal sources of credit reduces.
 Cheap and affordable credit is also important for the country’s development.

 (Any two points)
10.
 - (a) (i) Banks provide people the facility to deposit their surplus money by opening a bank account in their name. Banks also pay an amount as interest on the deposits. In this way, people’s money is safe with the banks and it earns an amount as interest. Thus, banks add to the income of the family.
 - (ii) Banks use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans to the needy. There is a huge demand for loans for various economic activities. Banks, thus, mediate between those who have surplus money and those who are in need of this money.

(iii) Banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, to small borrowers, etc. Thus, they empower these people and help indirectly in the country's development.

(iv) The rate of interest that banks demand from the borrowers is always cheap and affordable. This helps people to improve their condition. Banks also give loans to industrialists. These industrialists use these loans to expand their industries. In this way, they contribute in country's development.

(v) By employing a large number of people banks solve the problem of unemployment to a great extent.

(Any two points)

- 11.. A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want.

Thus everyone prefers to receive payments in money and then exchange the money for things that they want.

12. In an economy where money is in use, money by providing the crucial intermediate step eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants. Since money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process, it is called a medium of exchange

13. Depositors have the provision to withdraw the money as and when they require. Since the deposits in the bank accounts can be withdrawn on demand, these deposits are called demand deposits.

VII. ANSWERS -SHORT ANSWER TYPE QNS(3 MARKS)

1. Barter system refers to the system of exchange of goods and services. It is the system by which one commodity or product is exchanged for was introduced, people were practising barter system. [write any one example]
2. Double coincidence of wants is a situation when both parties have agreed to sell and buy each other's products or commodities.
It can only work when both the persons are ready to exchange each other's goods.
3. Money is a medium of exchange in transactions. A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want.
Modem money currency is accepted as a medium of exchange because;
 - it is certified for a particular denomination (For example, ₹ 10, ₹ 20, ₹ 100, ₹ 1,000).
 - it is issued by the Central Bank of the country
 - it is authorized by the government of the country.
4. Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns such as land, building, vehicle, livestock, land documents, deposits with banks etc. This stands as a security against the money borrowed from the bank. In case the borrower fails to repay the loan to the bank, the lender has the right to sell the asset or collateral.

5. Rate of interest, collateral security, documentation requirements and mode of repayment together comprise terms of credit. This varies from bank to bank and borrower to borrower.
6. Supervision of the functioning of formal sources of loans is necessary because banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom they are lending and at what interest rate etc.
7. There is great need to expand formal sources of credit in rural India because: In the informal sector there is no organisation to supervise the credit activities of lenders. They lend at whatever interest rate they choose. No one can stop rural money-lenders from using unfair means to get their money back.
8. Most of the poor households are deprived from the formal sector loans because of lack of proper documents and absence of collateral.
9. Banks accept the surplus money from the people as deposits and pay interest for that. People have the provision to withdraw their money as and when they require. Since money can be withdrawn on demand, these deposits are known as demand deposits. Its features are: Features:
 - A demand deposit has the essential characteristic of money. It can be used as a medium of exchange.
 - The facility of cheques against demand deposits makes it possible to make payments, without using cash.
 - Since demand deposits are accepted widely as a means of payment along with currency, they constitute money in the modern economy.
10. (a) Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth

and economic development. Credit is in great demand for various kinds of economic activities—big or small investments, to set up business, buying cars, houses, etc.

- In rural areas credit helps in the development of agriculture by providing funds to farmers to buy seeds, fertilizers, expensive pesticides.
- Manufacturers need credit for buying raw material or to meet ongoing expenditure of production. Credit helps in the purchase of plant, machinery, equipment, etc.
- Some people may need to borrow for personal or family needs like marriage, hospitalisation etc.

Thus, cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development.

OR

10(b) Banks and Cooperatives can help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans. This will help people to grow crops, do business, set up small-scale industries or trade in goods and also help indirectly in the country's development. They should do so, so that relatively poor people do not have to depend on informal sources of credit like the money-lenders.

OR

10(c). There is no organisation that supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector. They lend at whatever interest rate they choose.

- No one can stop rural money-lenders from using unfair means to get their money back.
- Informal lenders charge a very high rate of interest on loans and as a result a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers and farmers are used to pay the loans.
- The amount to be repaid is often greater than income, and farmers and other borrowers in villages fall in a debt trap.

Thus, it is necessary that banks and co-operatives increase their lending, particularly in rural areas, so that dependence on informal sources of credit ends.

OR

10d). 1. formal and informal sources of credit.

2. Informal lenders

3. i) Money lenders do not ask for collateral

Complicated paper work or documentation is not involved

VIII. ANSWERS -LONG ANSWER TYPE QNS(5 MARKS)

1. Formal Sector Loans:

- (1)Comparatively rate of interest charged is lower than that of the informal sector loans.
- (2) RBI supervises their function of giving loans.
- (3) Collateral is required to obtain credit.
- (4) Rich urban households depend largely on formal sources of credit.
- (5) Examples: Banks and Co-operatives.

Informal Sector Loans:

- (1) Higher interest rates on loan are charged.
- (2) No organization is there to supervise its lending activities.
- (3) They are ready to give loans without collateral.
- (4) Poor households largely depend on informal sources.
- (5) Examples : Traders, employers, money-lenders, relatives, friends, etc.

2. (1) **The formal source of credit** includes a loan from banks and co-operatives.
(2) We need to expand formal sources of credit in India for the following reasons :

(i) Formal sources of credit are less risky and they charge a low rate of interest.

(ii) The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. It monitors the banks in actually maintaining a cash balance.

(iii) RBI ensures that loans are given not only to the profit-making businessmen and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, small borrowers, etc.

(iv) Compared to the formal lenders, most of the informal lenders charge higher interest rates. Thus, the cost to the borrower becomes much higher that leads to less income. Also, the borrowers may become victim to debt-trap. So, formal sector loans help reduce dependence on informal sources of credit.

(v) Due to the high interest rates of the informal source of credit, people who might wish to start an enterprise by borrowing, may not do so because of the high cost of borrowing.

(vi) Cheap and affordable credit by the formal sector is crucial for the country's development.

(3) (i) The bank should open its branches in villages.

(ii) The RBI should give guidelines to the bank to make loan procedure simpler.

(iii) Public awareness of the banks and cooperatives should be increased.

3. (1) When the credit pushes the borrower into a situation from which the recovery is very painful, it is called **debt-trap**. For example, in the case of crop failure small or marginal farmers have to sell a portion of his/her land to repay the loan.

(2) The debt-trap is rampant in rural areas because of the following reasons :
 - (i) Farmers take loans for crop production, equipment, fertilizers, etc. If crop failure happens due to any reason, they become unable to pay back the loan.
 - (ii) There is usually an absence of any kind of support to the farmers in case of crop failure. So, they are clearly much worse off than before.

4. (1) The **Reserve Bank of India** supervises the functioning of formal sources of credit in India. It is the central bank of India.

(2) It supervises the functioning of banks in the following ways :
 - (i) The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. Banks in India these days, hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.
 - (ii) RBI ensures that the banks give loans not just to profit-making business and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, small borrowers, etc.
 - (iii) Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rates, etc.

5. **SHGs act** to provide a platform for women to address their various social issues in the following ways:
 - (1) A Self-Help Group is an organization of rural poor, particularly women who pool their savings.
 - (2) The SHG encourages its members for savings and enables them to take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs. In this way, it addresses their economic issue that is the base of many social issues.
 - (3) SHGs are the building blocks of the organization of the rural poor. Not only does it help women to become financially self-reliant, but the regular meetings of the group also provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as

health, nutrition, domestic violence, etc.

(4) The SHG provides self-employment opportunities to its members by providing them loans for meeting working capital needs, for housing materials, for acquiring assets like a sewing machine, handlooms, cattle, etc.

(5) The group charges interest on these loans but this is still less than what the money-lenders charge.

6. (1) In **Self-Help Groups**, there is no provision of a certain number of members or a certain amount to deposit. Members are free to their number and amount to deposit in the group.
(3) Most of the important decision regarding the savings and loan activities are taken by the group members. The group decides as regards the loans to be granted—the purpose, amount, interest to be charged, repayment schedule, etc.
(4) Also, it is the group which is responsible for the repayment of the loan. In any case of non-repayment of the loan by anyone, the member is followed up seriously by other members in the group.
(5) The SHGs help borrowers overcome the problem of lack of collateral and documentation requirement. Besides, the regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence, etc.
7. (1) The absence of collateral is one of the major reasons which prevent the poor from getting bank loans. Whereas, there is no need for collateral or difficult paperwork to take loans from **SHGs**.
(2) SHGs have a lower interest rate than that of moneylenders or traders. They can get timely loans for a variety of purposes.
(3) It creates employment opportunities for the members who are rural poor, particularly women.
(4) It encourages regular savings of the rural poor.
(5) SHGs help rural women not only to become financially self-reliant but also, the regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence, etc.
8. (1) **SHGs** are the groups created by the needy persons themselves, especially women to fulfil their credit and loan needs. A typical SHG has 15-20 members, who meet and save regularly.
(2) Saving of per member varies from 25 to Z 100 or more depending on the ability of the people to save.
(3) Members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs.
(4) The group charges interest on these loans but this is still less than what the money-lenders charge.
(5) If the group is regular in savings, it becomes eligible for availing loan from the bank. The loan is sanctioned in the name of the group and is meant to create self-employment opportunities for the members.

- 9.** (1) There is no need for collateral such as land; building, vehicles, deposits with banks. The rural poor people are unable to provide collateral.
(2) Also, there is no need for complicated paperwork which the rural poor are not capable of providing.
These moneylenders, traders and rich landlords continue to extend loans to defaulters even if the previous loan is unpaid.
(4) They are hesitant and unsure about the functioning of the banks.
(5) They may not have access to banks in their villages.
(6) The procedure for giving credit is often very simple.
- 10.** (1) Undoubtedly, credit arrangements are not very fair for all sections of society. The share of formal sector credit is higher for the richer households as compared to the poorer households. This has the following reasons:
(i) Poverty affects poor households' capacity to borrow. Formal sector credit requires proper documents and collateral as security against loans. Collateral is an asset. So, poor people lack in providing such things which affect their capacity to borrow.
(ii) The poor people do not repay
(iii) The people in villages may not have access to banks in their village. Also, they are R. loan on time because of the various day-to-day needs. - hesitant and unsure about the functioning of the banks.
(2) (i) More credit facilities should be made available in rural areas by opening more banks there.
(ii) The procedure of giving loans should be made easier and simpler.

CHAPTER 4

GLOBALIZATION AND THE INDIAN ECONOMY

Key Terms

Globalisation is defined as the integration between countries through foreign trade and foreign investments by multinational corporations (MNCs).

Fair globalisation creates opportunities for all and also ensures that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.

Investment: - the money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called investment.

Foreign investment - Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment

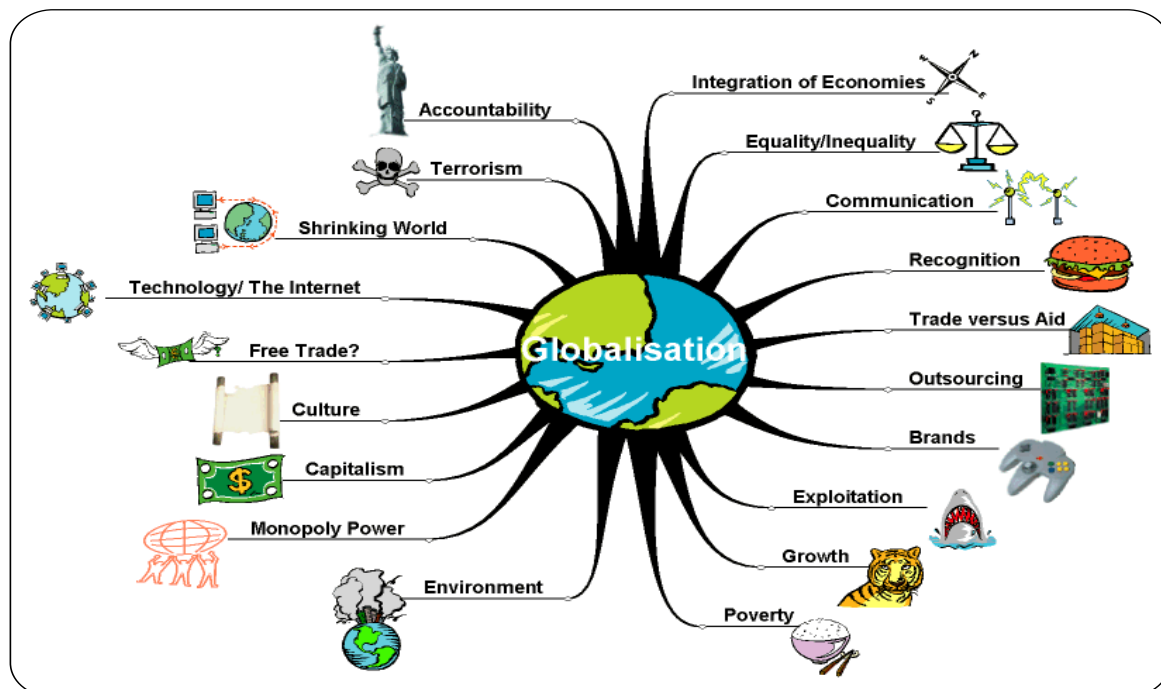
Liberalisation - Removing the barriers or restrictions set by the government is known as liberalisation.

Trade barrier - Barriers or restrictions that are imposed by the government on free import and export activities are called trade barriers.

WTO - World Trade Organisation

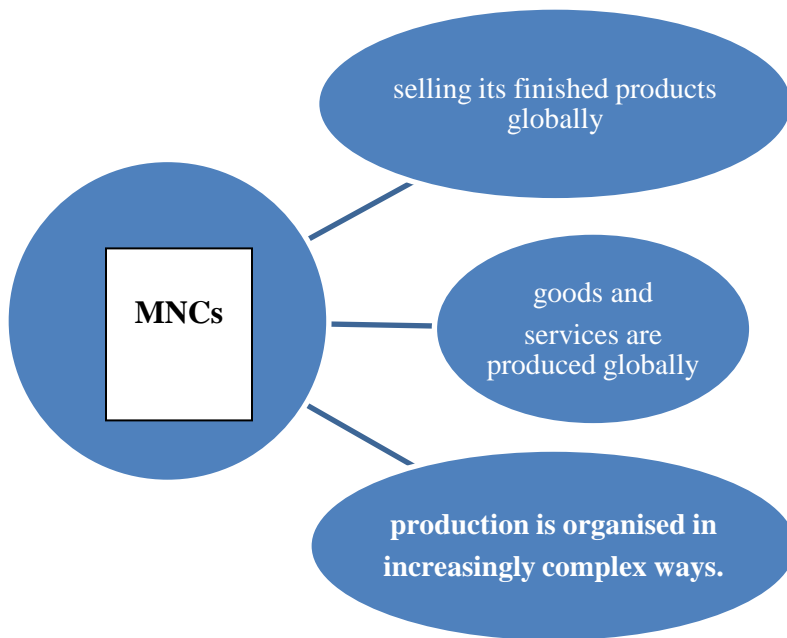
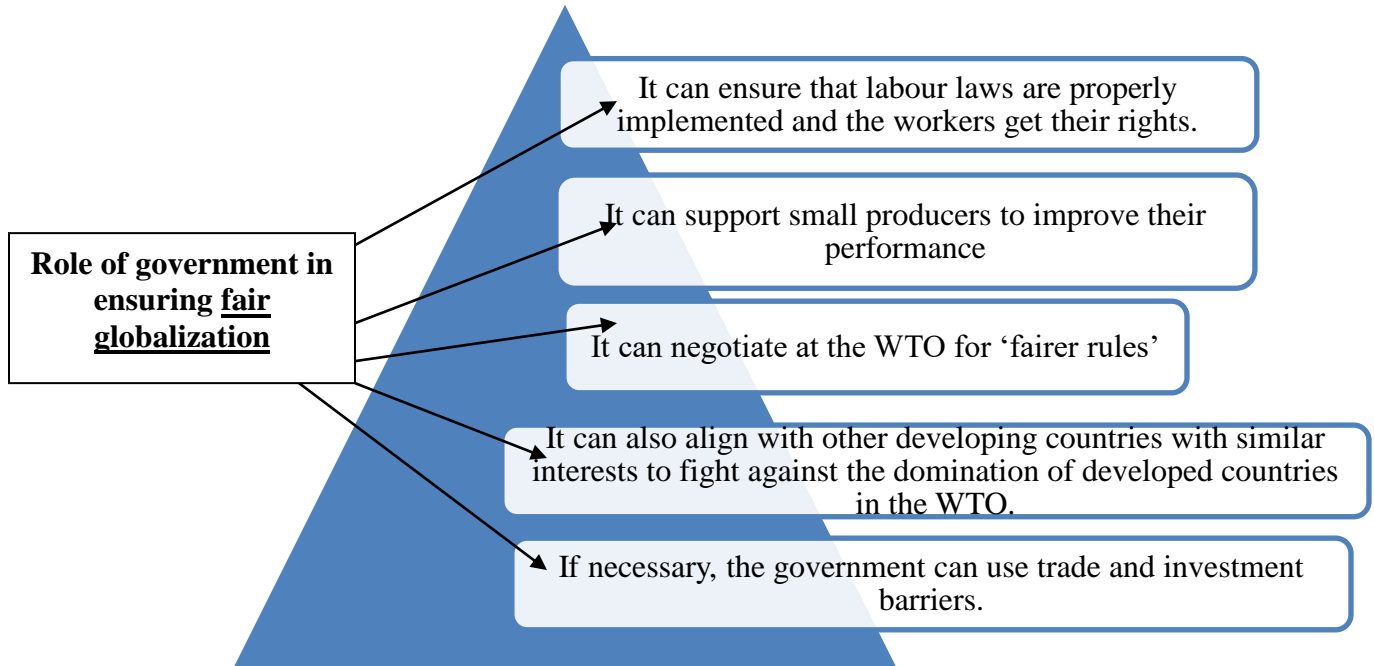
SEZs or Special Economic Zones are industrial zones being set up by the Central and State Governments in different parts of the country

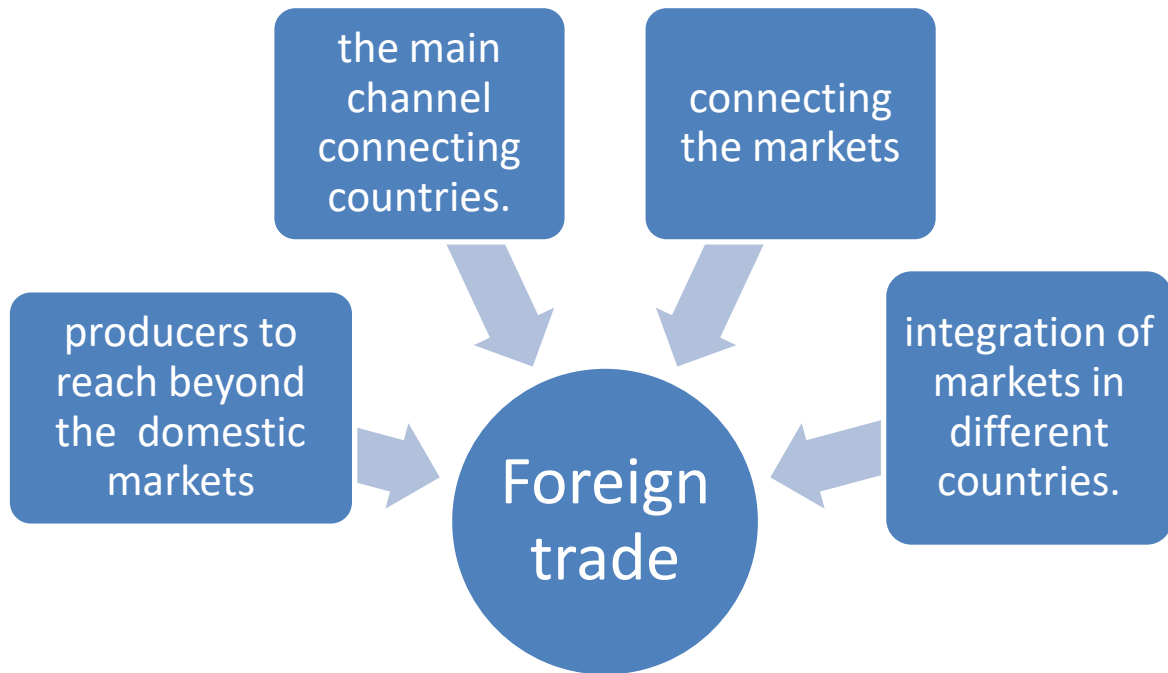
EFFECTS OF GLOBALIZATION



The Struggle for a Fair Globalisation

Fair globalisation creates opportunities for all and also ensures that the benefits of globalisation are shared better. The government can play a major role in making this possible.





FACTORS THAT HAVE ENABLED GLOBALISATION

Rapid improvement in technology

improvements in transportation technology

Liberalization of foreign investment policies

Pressure from international organizations



WTO or the World Trade Organization is an organization which deals with the rules of trade among the nations.

➤ WTO is one such organization whose aim is to liberalize international trade.

Short Answer Type Questions

01. What is Globalisation?

Ans. Globalisation means opening up the economy to facilitate its integration with the world economy.

02. Define Economic reforms of new Economic Policy 1991.

Ans. Economic policy adopted by the Government of India since July, 1991 is termed as new economic policy or economic reforms.

03. Define Privatisation.

Ans. Privatisation means reduced government intervention and increased private investment in production activities.

04. What is meant by Liberalisation?

Ans. Liberalisation means removing unnecessary trade restrictions and making the economy more competitive.

05. What is outsourcing?

Ans. Outsourcing means going out to a source outside the company to buy regular service that formerly used to be provided departmentally and internally just as legal advice, computer service, security, advertisement and accounting etc.

06. What is meant by modernisation of the Economy?

Ans. The new economic policy accords top priority to modern techniques and technologies. It also promotes computers and electronics industries. It has made the Indian industries dynamic.

08. How many countries are currently the members of the World Trade Organisation (WTO)?

Ans. It has 153 member countries as on 23 July, 2008.

09. In which year, the government started to remove barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment.

Ans. In 1991

10. Why are the Chinese Toys popular in the world?

Ans. Chinese Toys are comparatively cheaper and have new designs. That is why they are popular in the world.

11. Why are the MNCs making investments in India?

Ans. In India labour cost is comparatively very low, that is why many MNCs are making investments in India

12. Name the organisation which lay emphasis on liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment in India.

Ans. World Trade Organisation (WTO)

13. When was the UNO established?

Ans. The UNO was established on 24 October, 1945.

14. When was the WTO established?

Ans. The WTO was established on 1st January, 1995.

15. Where is the main Head Office of WTO?

Ans. Geneva-Switzerland.

Objective Type Questions

1. Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is called:
(a) Liberalisation (b) Investment (c) Favourable trade (d) Free trade
2. Rapid integration or interconnection between countries is known as:
(a) Privatisation (b) Globalisation (c) Liberalisation (d) Socialisation
3. Globalisation has led to improvement in living conditions:
(a) of all the people (b) of people in the developed countries
(c) of workers in the developing countries (d) none of the above.
4. Which one of the following Indian industries has been hit hard by globalisation?
(a) Information Technology (IT) (b) Toy making (c) Jute (d) Cement
5. World Trade Organisation (WTO) was started at the initiative of which one of the following group of countries?
(a) Rich countries (b) Poor countries (c) Developed countries (d) Developing countries
6. Which of the following organisations lays stress on liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment?
(a) International Labour Organisation (b) International Monetary Fund
(c) World Health Organisation (d) World Trade Organisation
7. Investments made by MNCs are termed as:
(a) Indigenous investment (b) Foreign investment (c) Entrepreneur's investment (d) None of the above
8. Which of the following is not a feature of a Multi-National Company?
(a) It owns/controls production in more than one nation.
(b) It sets up factories where it is close to the markets.
(c) It organises production in complex ways. (d) It employs labour only from its own country.
9. Tax on imports is an example of:
(a) Terms of Trade (b) Collateral (c) Trade Barriers (d) Foreign Trade
10. Which one of the following is not characteristic of 'Special Economic Zone'?'
(a) They do not have to pay taxes for long period.
(b) Government has allowed flexibility in labour laws.
(c) They have world class facilities.
(d) They do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of five years.
11. Companies who set up production units in the Special Economic Zones (SEZs) do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of:
(a) 2 years (b) 5 years (c) 4 years (d) 10 years
12. It refers to the globalisation which creates opportunities for all and ensures that its benefits are better shared.
(a) Privatisation (b) Special Economic Zones (SEZs)
(c) World Trade Organisation (WTO) (d) Fair globalisation

13. An MNC is a company that owns or controls production in
 (a) one country (b) more than one country (c) only developing countries
 (d) only developed countries
14. The process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries through free trade, free mobility of capital and labour is called
 (a) Foreign trade (b) Liberalisation(c) Globalisation(d) Privatisation
15. What was the main channel connecting country in the past?
 (a) Labour (b) Religion (c) Technology (d) Trade
16. Globalisation has created new opportunities of:
 (a) Employment (b) emerging multinationals(c) providing services(d) all of the above
17. One major government initiative to attract foreign companies to invest in India is:
 (a) To raise the standard of education(b) to promote unemployment in the public sector
 (c) To build special economic zones(d) both (a) and (c)
18. Globalisation has posed major challenges for:
 (a) Big producers (b) small producers(c) rural poor(d) none of these
19. With the growing competition, most employers these days prefer to employ workers:
 (a) Flexibly (b) quickly(c) selectively(d) none of these
20. Globalisation opportunities for paid work for women has denied them:
 (a) Good health(b) good education(c) permanent job(d) none of these
21. Fair globalisation would mean:
 (a) Fair opportunities for all(b) fair benefits for all(c) more support to small producers
 (d) all of the above
22. Government can make globalisation more 'fair' by:
 (a) Increasing competition (b) increasing employment(c) implementing the labour laws
 (d) Imposing trade barriers
23. What are the Functions of Foreign Trade?
 a) Opens-up the world market for the producers.
 B) Reduces the producers' dependency on the domestic markets.
 C) Increases the choice of goods for buyers.
 D) Integrates various nations and paves the way for cultural and other contacts e) All the above
24. What are the Reasons for Globalisation ?
 a) Improved means of communication technology
 b) Increasing trade and commerce among nations
 c) Improved means of transportation
 d) Greater mobility of people in search of jobs and better education e) all the above
25. What are the Modes of Foreign Investment?
 a) Establishment of factories and offices solely by the MNC in some other country using its own capital.
 b) Establishment of production units by an MNC in joint-venture with some local company.
 C) Buying local companies and then expanding production.
 D) Placing orders with small local producers.E) all the above

Source Based Questions

Large MNCs in the garment industry in Europe and America order their products from Indian exporters. These large MNCs with worldwide network look for the cheapest goods in order to maximise their profits. To get these large orders, Indian garment exporters try hard to cut their

own costs. As cost of raw materials cannot be reduced, exporters try to cut labour costs. Where earlier a factory used to employ workers on a permanent basis, now they employ workers only on a temporary basis so that they do not have to pay workers for the whole year. Workers also have to put in very long working hours and work night shifts on a regular basis during the peak season. Wages are low and workers are forced to work overtime to make both ends meet.

1. What are the various ways in which MNCs set up their production in other countries?
2. What are the ways in which the local companies manage to get orders from MNCs?
3. Before globalization what was the nature of jobs in the Indian companies?
4. What is the real motto of MNCs worldwide?

Long Answers

1. How has information and communication technology stimulated globalisation? Explain with example.

The factors that have enabled globalisation are as given below :

1. Technology :

- In the past fifty years, several improvements in technology have taken place.
- For example, in transportation technology, containers are used for the transportation of goods which are placed in containers that can be loaded intact on to ships, railways, planes and trucks. Containers have led to huge reduction in port handling costs and increased the speed with which exports can reach markets.
- Similarly, the cost of air transport has fallen. This has enabled much greater volumes of goods being transported by airlines.

(2) Information technology:

- Telecommunication facilities – telegraph, mobile phones, fax – are used to contact one another around the world and to communicate from remote areas
- This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.
- Internet enables to send instant electronic mail and talk across the world at negligible costs.
- Now a news magazine published for London readers can be designed and printed in Delhi.
- The designing is done on a computer.
- After printing, the magazines are sent by air to London.
- Even the payment of money for designing and printing from a bank in London to a bank in Delhi is done instantly through the Internet e., e-banking.

(3) Liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment policy :

- Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is liberalisation. Under liberalisation goods can be imported and exported easily.

- Foreign companies are allowed to set up factories and offices in other countries.
- Thus liberalisation has enabled MNCs to increase their investments in other countries as India.
- As a result of greater foreign investment and greater foreign trade, there is greater integration of production and markets across countries.

2. “Globalisation and competition among producers has been of advantage to the consumers.”
Give arguments in support of this statement.

Globalisation and competition among producers has been of advantage to the consumers in the ways as mentioned below :

- Now there is more choice for the consumers in the markets. For example in the field of toys, the markets are flooded with Chinese toys which are cheaper and of better quality than Indian toys. People now have a choice between Indian toys and Chinese toys.
- The consumers now have products of better quality.
- The prices of various products have come down due to competition among the producers/manufacturers.
- Globalisation has led to improvement in the standard of living of people.

3. Describe the major problems created by the globalisation for a larger number of small producers and workers.

Or

Describe the effects of globalisation on small producers and workers.

Small producers such as producing batteries, capacitors, toys have been hit hard due to competition with the MNCs. They could not compete on the issue of price and quality. As a result of it, their production decreased and many units were closed. Many workers became jobless. Many employers prefer to employ workers on temporary basis which means workers’ jobs are no longer secure. Women are denied their fair share of benefits. Workers have to put in very long working hours without any overtime.

4. Describe the steps that may be taken make globalisation more ‘fair’.

- Labour laws should be implemented properly to avoid exploitation of the workers.
- The government should protect the interest of the small producers by using trade and investment barriers till they are in a position to compete with large producers or MNCs.
- The government should negotiate at the WTO for “fairer rules”.
- The government should align with other developing countries to fight against the domination of developed countries.

5. What do you mean by liberalisation of foreign trade?

- (i) Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is known as liberalisation.
- (ii) With the liberalisation of trade, businesses are allowed to make decisions freely about what they wish to import or export.
- (iii) The government imposes lesser restrictions than before and is therefore, said to be more liberal.

6. What is the role of WTO in international trade?

- (i) WTO's aim is to liberalise international trade.
- (ii) It establishes rules regarding international trade and sees that these rules are obeyed.
- (iii) 164 countries of the world are its members currently.
- (iv) It is seen that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers. On the other hand, WTO rules have forced developing countries to remove trade barriers.

7. What are MNCs?

- (i) An MNC is a company that owns or controls production in more than one nation.
- (ii) These companies set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can get cheap labour and other resources.
- (iii) This is done to ensure that the cost of production remains low and MNCs can earn greater profits.

8. How is foreign trade interlinking markets of different countries? Explain with example.

Foreign trade has interlinked markets of different countries.

- (i) Foreign trade has been the main channel connecting countries.
- (ii) Foreign trade creates an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets.
- (iii) Producers can sell their produce in local and foreign market.
- (iv) It is one way of expanding the choice of goods.
- (v) Choice of goods in the markets rises.
- (vi) Prices of similar goods in the two markets tend to become equal.
- (vii) Close competition with each other.

9. What is the impact of globalisation on the consumers of India?

- (i) Globalisation and greater competition among producers—both local and foreign have been of advantage to consumers, particularly the well-off sections in the urban areas.
- (ii) There is a greater choice before these consumers who now enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products.
- (iii) As a result, these people today enjoy much higher standards of living than was possible earlier.

10. Chinese toys have taken over the Indian toy market due to globalization and promotion of International trade leading to huge losses to Indian toy manufacturers. Why?

We cannot deny the fact that Chinese toys have taken over the Indian toy market due to promotion of international trade and globalisation leading to huge losses to the Indian toy manufactures.

- (a) With lifting of trade barriers, import and export of foreign goods have become easier and markets of native countries are flooded with foreign products.

(b) Prices of foreign products especially the Chinese items like toys are cheap and have a great variety to attract customers.

(c) Technology has made its mark. Foreign goods increase the revenue for the native countries. Moreover, free trade and marketing needs to be accepted for country's economic growth.

Social Science

DEMOCRATIC POLITICS-II

Textbook in Political Science for Class X



CHAPTER 1

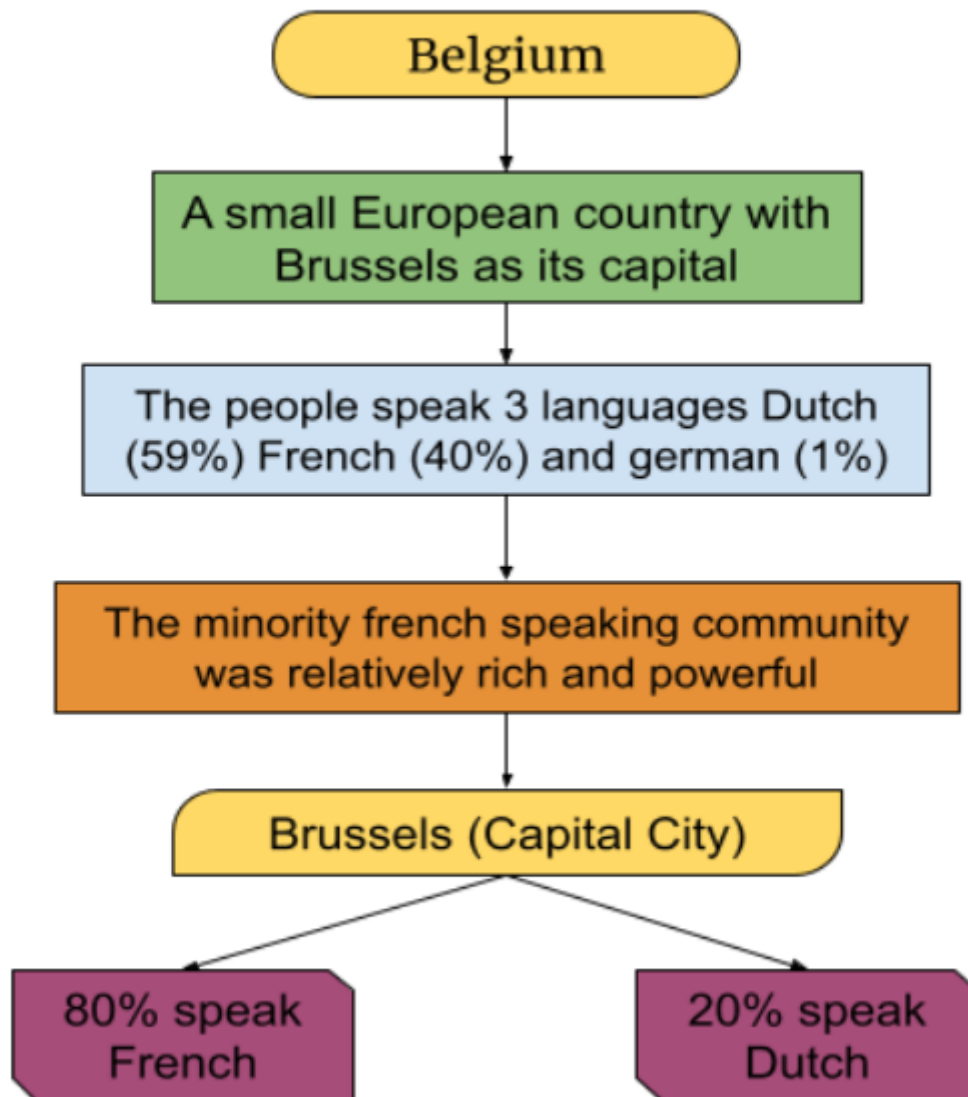
POWER SHARING

KEY WORDS AND TERMS.

1. MAJORITY: A belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants, by disregarding the wishes and needs of the minority.
2. ETHNIC: A social division based on shared culture. People belonging to the same ethnic group believe in their common descent because of similarities of physical type or of culture of both. They need not always have the same religion or nationality.
3. MINORITY: The smaller number or part, especially a number or part representing less than half of the whole.
4. COALITION GOVERNMENT: A government formed by the union of two or more political parties.
5. NATIVE: A person born in a specified place or associated with a place by birth, whether subsequently resident there or not.
6. COMMUNITY: A group of people living in the same place or having a particular characteristic in common.
7. ACCOMMODATION: A convenient arrangement; a settlement or compromise.
8. CIVIL WAR: A violent conflict between opposing groups within a country that becomes so intense that it appears like a war.
9. POWER SHARING: A policy agreed between political parties or within a coalition to share responsibility for decision-making and political action.
10. PRUDENTIAL: Based on prudence, or on careful calculation of gains and losses. Prudential decisions are usually contrasted with decisions based purely on moral considerations.
11. COMMUNITY GOVERNMENT: A social group of any size whose members reside in a specific locality, share government, and often have a common cultural and historical heritage.
12. PRESSURE GROUPS: A group that tries to influence public policy in the interest of a particular cause.

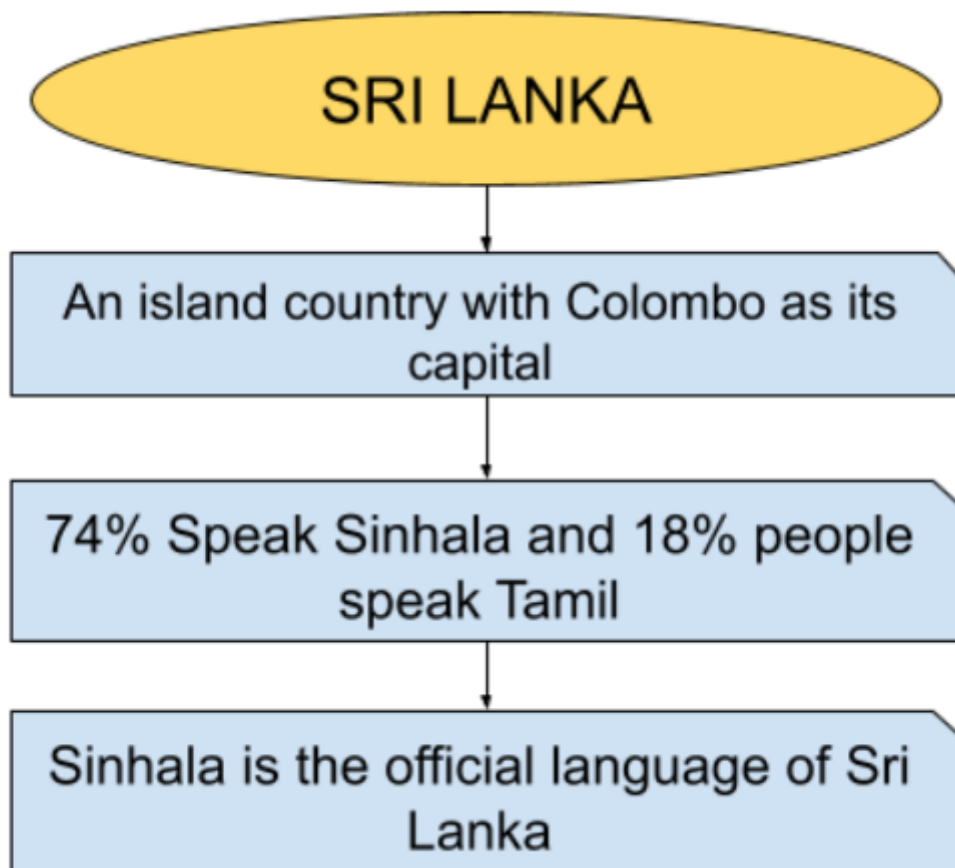
BELGIUM

- A SMALL EUROPEAN COUNTRY with Brussels as its capital.
- The people speak three languages: Dutch (59%), French (40%) and German (1%)
- It has borders with FRANCE, the NETHERLANDS, GERMANY, and LUXEMBOURG
- The minority French speaking community was relatively rich and powerful.
- BRUSSELS: 80% French speaking and 20% Dutch speaking.



SRI LANKA

- AN ISLAND COUNTRY with Colombo as its capital.
- 74% people speak Sinhala and 18% people speak Tamil.
- Sinhala is the official language of Sri Lanka.



MAJORITYANISM IN SRI LANKA

- Sri Lanka was independent in 1948.
- Sinhala community dominate the government.
- 1956 act recognise Sinhala as the only official language.
- The state shall protect and foster Buddhism.
- Political organisation formed – (Tamil Eelam).

MAJORITARIANISM IN SRI LANKA

Sri Lanka independent in 1948

Sinhala community dominate the country

1956 Act recognise Sinhala as the only official language

The state shall protect and foster Buddhism

Sri Lankan Tamil felt discrimination

Political organisation formed - (Tamil Eelam)

Distrust Increased

Turned to Civil War

ACCOMMODATION IN BELGIUM

- Belgium followed a **community government**, which was elected by people belonging to one language community – **Dutch, German and French speaking**.
- Between **1970 and 1993**, the constitution of Belgium was amended **four** times.

Accommodation in Belgium

Belgium followed a community government, which is elected by people belonging to one language community- Dutch, German and French speaking

Between 1970 and 1993 , the constitution of Belgium was ammended four times

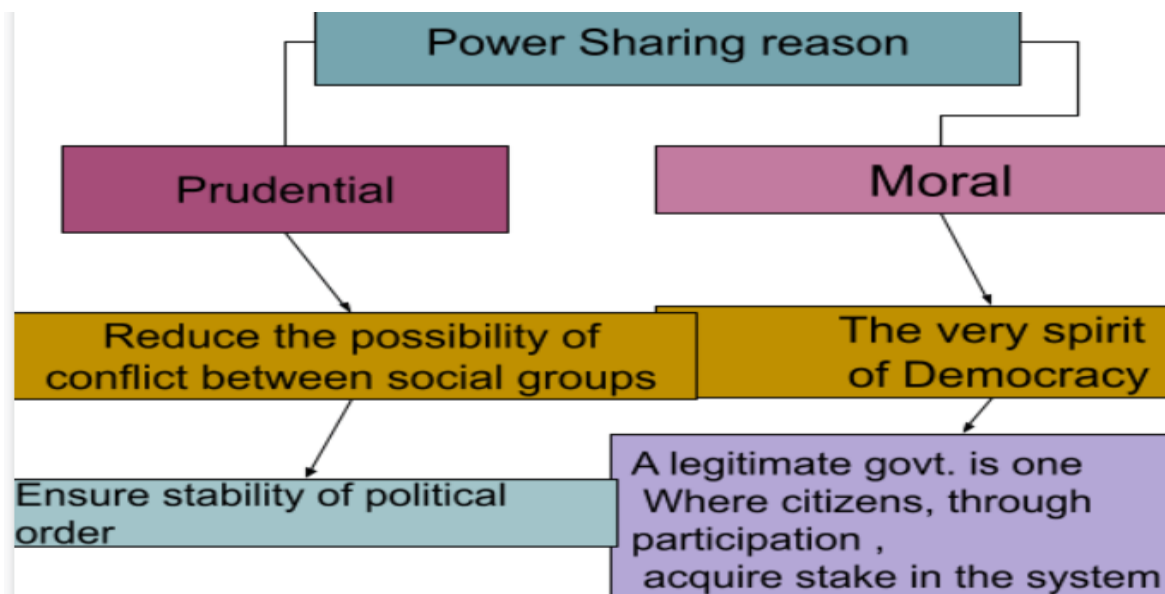
Power Sharing Reason

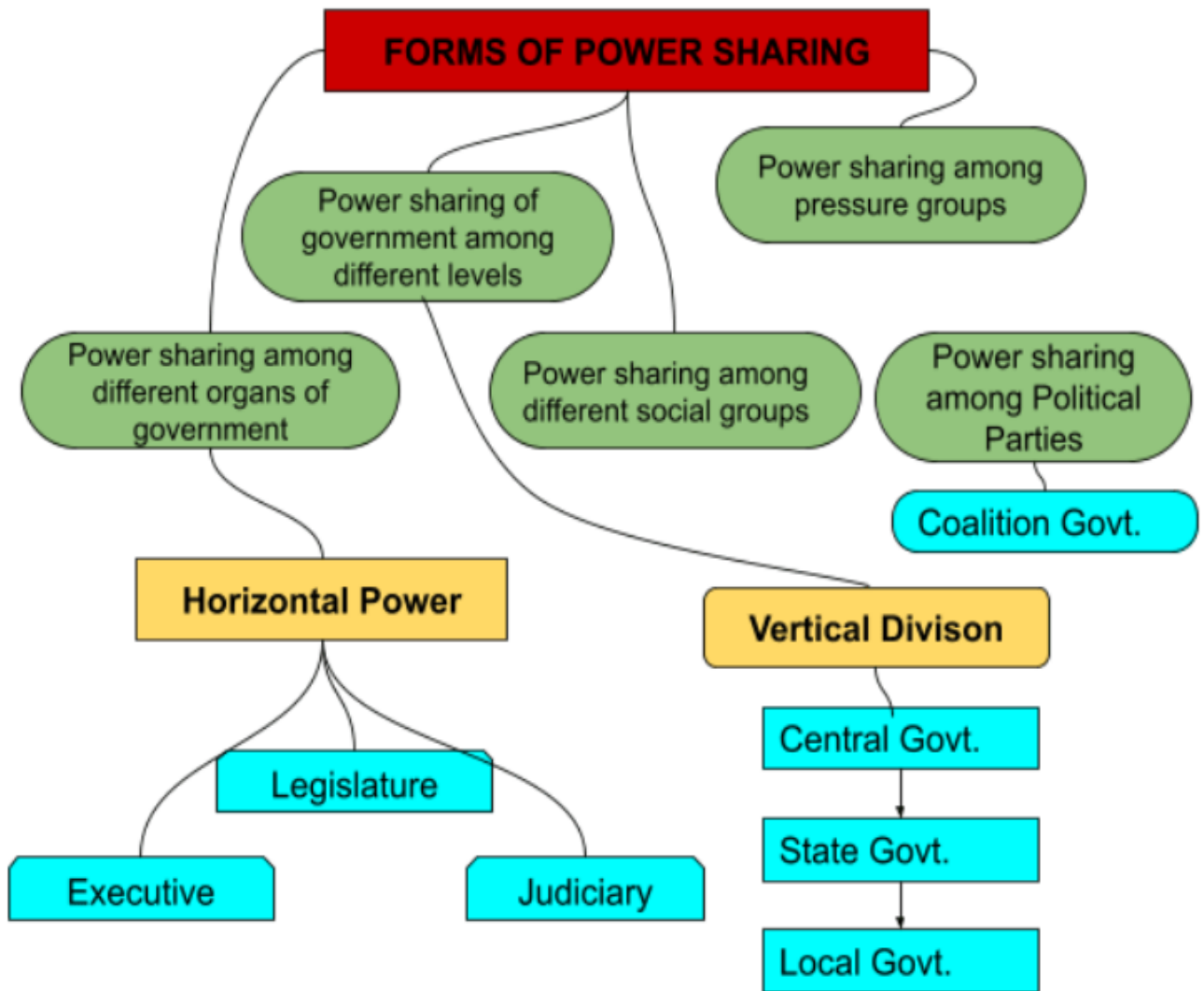
Prudential:

- Reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.
- Ensure stability of Political order.

Moral:

- The spirit of democracy.
- A Legitimate government is one where citizens, through participation, acquire stake in the system





POWER SHARING

1. Identify the picture



- A. European Union parliament in Belgium
- B. Indian Parliament
- C. Parliament of Sri Lanka
- D. None of these

- 2 Which one of the following countries adopted majoritarianism in their Constitution?
- A. Belgium
 - B. India
 - C. Germany
 - D. Sri Lanka

- 3 Consider the following statements on power sharing and select the answer using the codes given below:
- I. It is the very spirit of democracy.
 - II. It reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups
 - III. It brings transparency in the governance.
 - IV. It brings socio-political competition among parties.
- Options:
- A. I, II & III
 - B. II, III & IV
 - C. I, III & IV
 - D. I, II & IV

- 4 Match list I with list II and select the correct answer using the codes below in the lists

	List 1	List 2
1	Sri Lanka as an Independent nation	a.1950s and 1960s
2	Belgium constitution amended	b.1948
3	Tension between Dutch speaking and French speaking communities	c.1970-1993
4	Sinhala as the only official language	d.1956

- A. 1.b, 2.c, 3. d ,4. a
- B. 1.c, 2.b, 3. d ,4. a
- C. 1.c, 2.a, 3. b ,4. d
- D. 1.b,2.c, 3. a ,4. D

- 5 Look at the given Sri Lanka map and mention the colour of the region where Sri-Lankan Tamils lived?



- A. Orange colour region
B. Yellow colour region
C. Dark brown colour region
D. Dotted region
6. An intelligent sharing of power among legislature, executive and judiciary is very important to the design of -----
A. Democracy
B. Political parties
C. Ethnic groups
D. Majoritarianism
- 7 The population of Sri Lanka is divided into _____.
A. Sinhala 59 % and Tamil 40%.
B. Sinhala 68 % and Tamil 28%.
C. Sinhala 74 % and Tamil 18%.
D. Sinhala 80 % and Tamil 20%
- 8 Which one of the following communities is not related to Sri Lanka?
A. Indian Tamil
B. Sri Lankan Tamils
C. Sinhalese
D. German

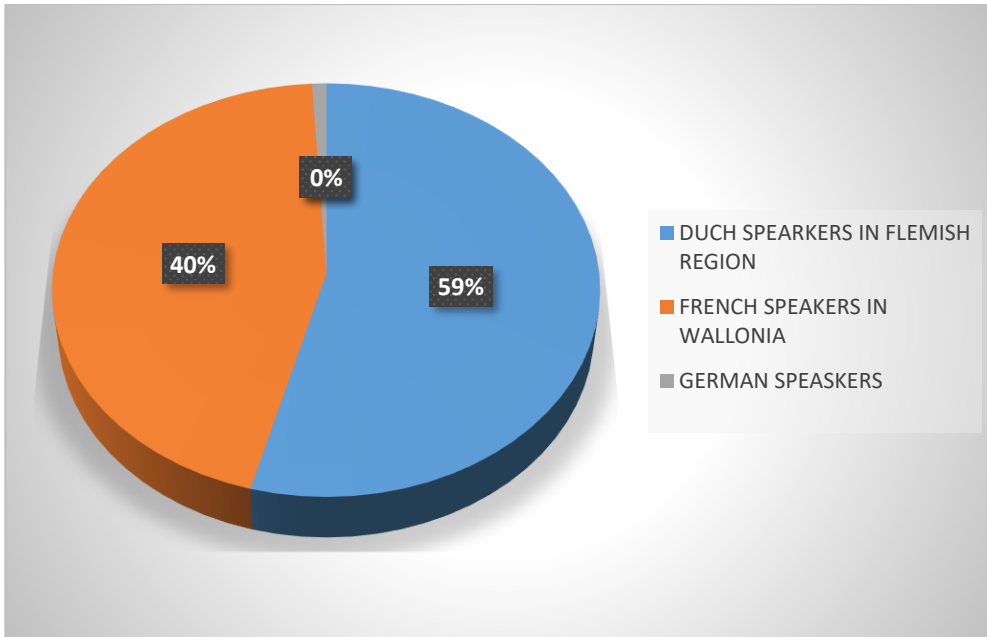
9 Match the following items given in Column A with those in Column B

Column A	Column B
I. Ethnic	1 Power shared among different organs of Government
II Vertical division of powers.	2. Power shared among different levels of Government
III. Community government	3.A social division based shared culture
IV.Horizontal distribution of powers.	4. Power shared by different social groups

Choose the correct answer from the option given below:

- A. I-3, II-2, III-4, IV-1
 - B. I-3, II-4, III-1, IV-2
 - C. I-4, II-1, III-3, IV-2
 - D. I-4, II-2, III-1, IV-3
- 10 Belgium has borders with the Netherlands, France, Luxembourg and-----
- A. Sri Lanka
 - B. Rome
 - C. Germany
 - D. Lebanon
- 11 Which one of the following systems of power sharing is called checks and balances?
- A. Horizontal distribution of powers
 - B. Federal division of powers
 - C. Vertical power sharing
 - D. Power shared among different levels of government
- 12 In which continent is Belgium located?
- 13 The term Eelam stands for

14



The above pie chart shows the ethnic composition of Belgium. Analyse the pie chart and state the correct statement.

- (a) Majority of the Belgians are German speakers
 - (b) The majority community in Belgium were Dutch speakers with more power
 - (c) The majority Dutch speakers were less powerful than the minority French speakers
 - (d) None of these
- 15 In Sri Lanka most of the Sinhala speaking people are _____, while most of the Tamils are _____ or _____
- A. Buddhists, Hindus, Muslims
 - B. Hindus, Buddhists, Muslims
 - C. Muslims, Buddhists, Hindus
 - D. Hindus, Muslims, Buddhist
- 16 What does the given picture represent? Choose the correct one.



- A. It refers to German Engineering
- B. It refers to problems of running a coalition government of Germany.

- C. It refers to problems of education
- D. It refers to problems of ordinary people

- 17 When European countries came together to form the European Union was chosen as the headquarters.
- A. Belgium
 - B. Germany
 - C. Netherlands
 - D. Brussels
- 18 The people whose forefathers came from India to Sri Lanka as plantation workers during the colonial period are called.....

- A. Sri Lankan Tamils
- B. Indian Tamils
- C. Tamil Indians
- D. Indian Sri Lankans

- 19 In Belgium.....

- A. The State Governments are not subordinate to the Central Government
- B. The State Governments are subordinate to the Central Government
- C. The State Governments have no say before the central Government
- D. The Central Government is subordinate to the State Governments.

Identify the two languages written below(Notice that place names and directions in two languages)



- A. French and German
 - B. French and Dutch
 - C. French and Sinhala
 - D. None of these
- 20
- 21 What is the significance of years 1970-1993 for Belgium?

State whether True or False

22 Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948.

23 Power sharing does not align with the principle of democracy.

ASSERTION AND REASONING

CHAPTER-POWER SHARING

Two statements are given in the question below as Assertion (A) and Reasoning (R). Read the statements and choose the appropriate option.

Options

- A. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true

1 Assertion(A):Power sharing is good for democracy.
Reason(R):It leads to ethical tension

2 Assertion(A): The minority French –speaking community was relatively rich and powerful in Belgium.
Reason(R): Paris is the capital city of France

3 Assertion(A):In 1956 an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language of Sri Lanka.
Reason(R): The government of Sri Lanka wanted to establish the supremacy of Sinhala community.

4 Assertion(A): In Belgium, the leaders realized that the unity of the country is possible by respecting the feelings and interest of Sri-Lankan people.
Reason(R): The social disparity led to tensions between Dutch and French speaking communities during 1950's and 1960's.

5 Assertion(A):Power sharing among different organs of government such as the legislature executive and judiciary is known as horizontal distribution of power.
Reason(R): It allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers.

CASE BASED QUESTIONS

In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil. The governments followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs. A new constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism. All these government measures, coming one after the other, gradually increased the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils. They felt that none of the major political parties led by the Buddhist

Sinhala leaders were sensitive to their language and culture. They felt that the constitution and government policies denied them equal political rights, discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities and ignored their interests. As a result, the relations between the Sinhala and Tamil communities strained over time. The Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs. But their demand for more autonomy to provinces populated by the Tamils was repeatedly denied. By 1980s several political organisations were formed demanding an independent Tamil Eelam in northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka.

1. What is the moral reason behind power sharing?

- A. It gives absolute power to the government
- B. It gives absolute power to the people.
- C. It is the very spirit of democracy
- D. It ensures development.

2. Which is the official language of Sri-Lanka?

- A. Hindi
- B. Tamil
- C. Sinhala
- D. None of these

3. Sri-Lanka emerged as an independent country in----

- A. 1956
- B. 1948
- C. 1947
- D. 1951

4. Sri-Lanka is an island nation, just a few kilometres off the southern coast of

- A. Tamil Nadu
- B. Kerala
- C. Goa
- D. Karnataka

5. Population of Sri-Lankan Tamils is concentrated in- regions of Sri-Lanka.

- A. North and East
- B. North and south
- C. North and West
- D. South and west

2 “In the city of Beirut there lived a man called Khalil. His parents came from different communities. His father was an Orthodox Christian and mother a Sunni Muslim. This was not so uncommon in this modern, cosmopolitan city. People from various communities that lived in Lebanon came to live in its capital, Beirut. They lived together, intermingled, yet fought a bitter civil war among themselves. One of Khalil’s uncles was killed in that war. At the end of this civil war, Lebanon’s leaders came together and agreed to some basic rules for power sharing among different communities. As per these

rules, the country's President must belong to the Maronite sect of Catholic Christians. The Prime Minister must be from the Sunni Muslim community. The post of Deputy Prime Minister is fixed for Orthodox Christian sect and that of the Speaker for Shi'a Muslims. Under this pact, the Christians agreed not to seek French protection and the Muslims agreed not to seek unification with the neighbouring state of Syria. When the Christians and Muslims came to this agreement, they were nearly equal in population. Both sides have continued to respect this agreement though now the Muslims are in clear majority.

Khalil does not like this system one bit. He is a popular man with political ambition. But under the present system the top position is out of his reach. He does not practise either his father's or his mother's religion and does not wish to be known by either. He cannot understand why Lebanon can't be like any other 'normal' democracy. "Just hold an election, allow everyone to contest and whoever wins maximum votes becomes the president, no matter which community he comes from. Why can't we do that, like in other democracies of the world?" he asks. His elders, who have seen the bloodshed of the civil war, tell him that the present system is the best guarantee for peace..."

The story was not finished, but they had reached the TV tower where they stopped every day. Vetal wrapped up quickly and posed his customary question to Vikram: "If you had the power to rewrite the rules in Lebanon, what would you do? Would you adopt the 'regular' rules followed everywhere, as Khalil suggests? Or stick to the old rules? Or do something else?" Vetal did not forget to remind Vikram of their basic pact: "If you have an answer in mind and yet do not speak up, your mobike will freeze, and so will you".

1. As per the agreed basic rule the President of the country must belong to which community?

- A. Sunni Muslims
- B. Shia Muslims
- C. Maronite sect of Catholic Christians
- D. Orthodox Christians

2. How does Power sharing occur in a democratic country like India?

- A. By voting (universal adult franchise)
- B. By majoritarian rule
- C. By certain basic rules as in Lebanon
- D. All of the above

3. What is the capital city of Lebanon?

- A. Meerut
- B. Beirut
- C. Syria
- D. Paris

4. Which type of Government does Lebanon have?

- A. Democratic Government
- B. Primary Government
- C. Community Government
- D. Coalition Government

5. Under the pact from which country did Christians in Lebanon agree not to seek Protection from and which country did Lebanon Muslims agree not to seek Unification with?

- A. France and Belgium
- B. Syria and Brazil
- C. Brazil and Belgium
- D. France and Syria

3 The Belgian leaders took a different path. They recognized the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. Between 1970 and 1993, they amended their constitution four times to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country. The arrangement they worked out is different from any other country and is very innovative. • Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the central government. Some special laws require the support of majority of members from each linguistic group. Thus, no single community can make decisions unilaterally. • Many powers of the central government have been given to state governments of the two regions of the country. The state governments are not subordinate to the Central Government. • Brussels has a separate government in which both the communities have equal representation. The French speaking people accepted equal representation in Brussels because the Dutch-speaking community has accepted equal representation in the Central Government. • Apart from the Central and the State Government, there is a third kind of government. This ‘community government’ is elected by people belonging to one language community – Dutch, French and German-speaking – no matter where they live. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational, and language-related issues.

1. How many times did the Belgian Government amend their constitution during the period 1970-1993?

- A. 3
- B. 5
- C. 2
- D. 4

2. The constitution of Belgium prescribes that the number of Dutch and French speaking ministers in the central government

- A. Shall be equal
- B. Dutch speaking shall be more
- C. French speaking will be more
- D. None of the above

3. Who elects the community government in Belgium?

- A. People belonging to one language community only.
- B. By the leaders of Belgium.
- C. The citizens of Luxembourg.
- D. The community leaders of Belgium.

4. In what all areas do the community government has power?

- A. Cultural affairs

- B. Education
- C. Language related issues
- D. All of these

5. Brussels has a separate government in which

- A. Both the communities have equal representation
- B. Both the communities have different representation
- C. French speakers have more representation
- D. Community government have more representation

4 Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary. Let us call this horizontal distribution of power because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. Such a separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power. Each organ checks the others. This results in a balance of power among various institutions. Last year, we studied that in a democracy, even though ministers and government officials exercise power, they are responsible to the Parliament or State Assemblies. Similarly, although judges are appointed by the executive, they can check the functioning of executive or laws made by the legislatures. This arrangement is called a system of checks and balances. Power can be shared among governments at different levels – a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial or regional level. Such a general government for the entire country is usually called federal government. In India, we refer to it as the Central or Union Government. The governments at the provincial or regional level are called by different names in different countries.

1. Indian parliament consists of-----

- A. Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha
- B. Executive and Judiciary
- C. Legislature and Judiciary
- D. Lok Sabha and Judiciary.

2. A general government for the entire country in India is called

- A. Central government
- B. State government
- C. Regional government
- D. Federal government

3. How many members are nominated to the upper house of the parliament by the President of India?

- A. 22
- B. 18
- C. 12
- D. 32

4. Who can check the functioning of executive or laws made by the legislatures?

- A. Ministers
- B. Judges
- C. Governor
- D. None of these

5. The provincial or regional Government in India is known as-----

- A. Union Government
- B. Self-Government
- C. State Government
- D. All of these

1 **3 MARKS**

How Belgian government solved its ethnic Problem ?

The Path of accommodation adopted in Belgium.

- a). Dutch and French speaking ministers shall be equal in the central govt.
- b). Many Powers of the central government have been given to state government . The state government are not subordinate to the central government .
- c). Brussels has a separate government t in which both the communities have equal representation.
- d). There is a third kind of government called community government elected by the people belonging to Dutch, French and German no matter where they live

2 **2. Describe three demands of Sri Lankan Tamils. How did they struggle for their independence?**

- a). Recognition of Tamil as an official language.
- b). Regional autonomy
- c). Equal opportunity in securing jobs and education.

They formed several political organizations, but when the government tried to suppress their activities by force, this led to civil war

3 **Describe the diverse composition of Sri Lanka.**

The Sinhala community forms the majority of population 74% with Tamils who are mostly 18% concentrated in the north and east of the country.

- a). Tamil natives of the country are called Sri Lankan Tamil are 13%.
- b). Tamils who are brought as indentured labourers from India by British colonists to work in estate plantation are called Indian Tamils 5%.
- c). There are about 7% percent Christians, who are both Tamils and Sinhala.

4 **Give reason for which power sharing is desirable?**

- a). Power sharing is desirable because it reduce the possibility of conflict.
- b). It ensures the stability of political order.
- c). It strengthens the unity of the country

5 **What is meant by a system of “Checks and Balances”?**

The Horizontal division of power is referred to as a system of “checks and balances”. Under this, power is shared among different organs of government—the legislature, executive and judiciary.

It allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. This system ensures that a check is maintained on the other organs that exist and there remains a balance when power is shared

6 Why has the idea of power sharing emerged?

The idea of power sharing has emerged in opposition to the notions of undivided political power. For a long time, it was believed that all powers of a government must reside in one person or group of persons located at one place. It was felt that if the power to decide is dispersed, it would not be possible to take quick decisions and to enforce them. But these notions have changed with the emergence of democracy.

7 Why was the minority French speaking community relatively rich and powerful?

(a) French speakers got the benefit of economic development.

(b) They were well-qualified and educated.

☉ Because of their qualifications and education, they were well-settled and thus, rich and powerful

8 Define the term Ethnic and brief about the ethnic composition of Belgium.

Ethnic means a social division based on shared culture and common descent. People belonging to an ethnic group may not necessarily share the same religion or nationality.

Belgium is a small country in Europe, having a population of a little over one crore. Its ethnic composition is as follows-

- 59 percent of the country's total population lives in the Flemish region and speak Dutch language.
- Another 40 percent of people live in the Wallonia region and speak French. The remaining one percent of the Belgians speak German.
- In the Belgian capital, Brussels, 80 percent of the population is French-speaking and 20 percent is Dutch-speaking.

9 "Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy." Justify the statement with suitable points.

Power sharing helps to reduce the possibilities of conflicts between various ethnic groups living in a society.

It helps in ensuring political stability, since a country can be run by all the communities without giving preference to any majority community.

It also reduces violence and linguistic problems. In India, there is diversity in language but our constitution gives equal weightage to all the languages.

Power sharing is actually being called the true spirit of democracy. It helps in bringing political, economic, social and cultural stability to the nation.

10 What measures were adopted by the democratically elected government of Sri Lanka to establish Sinhala Supremacy?

- (i) In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise 'Sinhala' as the only official language; thus disregarding Tamil.
- (ii) The governments followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- (iii) A new constitution specified that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism

5 MARKS

1 **What is majoritarianism? How has it increased the feelings of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils? Explain with examples.**

Majoritarianism is a concept which signifies a belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants. In this type of rule, the majority community disregards the wishes and needs of the minority community.

The majoritarian concept has increased the strong feelings of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils after a series of majoritarian measures adopted by the democratically-elected government in Sri Lanka after its independence in 1948 to establish Sinhala Supremacy.

- In 1956, an act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil.
- The Government followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- A new constitution advocated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.

2 **What are the different forms of power sharing in modern democracies? Give an example of each of these..**

1. Power shared among different organs of the government:

- (i) In it power is shared among legislature, executive and Judiciary.
- (ii) It is also called horizontal distribution of power because all these organs are placed at the same level.
- (iii) Such a separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited powers.
- (iv) Each organs checks the offers, which results in the balance of power among various institution.

2. Power shared among Governments at different levels.

- (i) There is a Government for the entire country, such a Government is called federal Government
- (ii) In India we refer to it as Central or Union Government
- (iii) The Government at provincial or regional level is called state Government in India.
- (iv) In India Government is divided at the central level, state level and local level.
- (v) It is called vertical division of power as power is divided among higher and lower levels of Governments.

3. Power shared among different social groups:

- (i) This type of arrangement is made to give space in the Government and administration

to diverse social groups who otherwise feel alienated from the Government.

(ii) This method is used to give minority communities a fair share in power.

(iii) In India, we have the system of reserved constituencies in the assemblies and the Parliament of one country.

(iv) Community Government in Belgium is a good example.

4. Power shared among political parties, pressure groups and moments

(i) In a democracy, the citizen must have freedom to choose among various contenders for power.

(ii) When there is competition, it ensures that power does not remain in one hand.

(iii) In the long run, power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups. This type of Government is called 'Coalition Government'.

(iv) Many interest groups like traders, businessmen, farmers, industrial workers, also have a share in governmental power either way, through participation and influencing decision making process.

3 Explain the main reasons why power sharing is important in a democracy.

(i) **Prudential Reasons:** These lay emphasis on better outcomes of power sharing.

(a) Power sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between the social groups.

Thus, it ensures the stability of political order.

(b) Its absence results into imposition of will by majority community, which undermines the unity of the nation.

(ii) **Moral Reasons:** These stress on power sharing as a valuable act because

(a) It is the very spirit of democracy.

(b) A democratic rule involves it with those affected by its exercise and who have to live with its effects.

(c) A legitimate government is the one where citizens acquire a role in the system through Participation

4 Bring out main sharp contrasts between Belgium and Sri Lankan democracies.

Sri Lanka and Belgium are both democratic countries yet have a very diverse social set-up. Both the countries have adopted very different approaches when it comes to power sharing.

(a) Belgium produced an ideal example of democratic system. It adopted the policy of accommodation

(b) of social and ethnic divisions. On the other hand, Sri Lanka also adopted a democratic system but followed majoritarian policies.

(b) Under the Belgium model of democracy, power was shared among two ethnic groups. Sri Lanka favoured the interests of the majority Sinhala community.

© In Belgium, both the groups had equal share in working of government but in Sri Lanka the minority community was isolated.

(d) To maintain political stability and unity, equal representation was provided to both the groups. Apart from that, community government of both the ethnic groups also existed at the local level. Sri Lanka, however, had no such arrangement.

(e) Belgium constitution was amended four times before arriving at a final draft to prevent civil strife. In Sri Lanka, majoritarianism led to civil war for twenty long years

5 Explain the power sharing arrangement among the different political parties, pressure groups and movements.

- (a). In a democracy power is also shared among the different political parties, pressure groups and movements.
- (b). Democracy provides the citizens a choice to choose their rulers. This choice is provided by the various political parties, who contest elections to win. Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one
- (c). In the long run power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups.
- (d). Sometimes this kind of sharing can be direct, when two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections. If their alliance is elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power.
- (e). In a democracy, various pressure groups and movements also remain active. They will also have a share in governmental power, either through participation in governmental committees or bringing influence on the decision making process.

ANSWER KEY OF POWER SHARING

1	A. European Union parliament in Belgium	
2	D. Sri Lanka	
3	A. I, II & III	
4	D1.b,2.c, 3. a ,4. D	
5	A. Orange colour region	
6	A. Democracy	
7	C. Sinhala 74 % and Tamil 18%.	
8	D. German	
9	A. I-3, II-2, III-4, IV-1	
10	C. Germany	
11	A. Horizontal distribution of powers	
12	Europe	
13	State	
14	C The majority Dutch speakers were less powerful than the minority French speakers	
15	A. Buddhists, Hindus, Muslims	
16	B It refers to problems of running a coalition government of Germany	
17	D. Brussels	
18	B. Indian Tamils	
19	A. The State Governments are not subordinate to the Central Government	
20	B French and Dutch	

21	The constitution was amended four times State whether True or False	
22	True	
23	False	
	Assertion and Reason	
1	Ans. C	
2	Ans. B	
3	Ans. A	
4	Ans. D	
5	Ans. A	
	Case studies	
1	1. C.It is the very spirit of democracy 2. C Sinhala 3. B.1948 4. A. Tamil Nadu 5. A. North and East	
2	1C. Maronite sect of Catholic Christians 2A By voting 3 B. Beirut 4 C. Community Government 5 D. France and Syria	
3	1 D. 4 2 A. Shall be equal 3 A. People belonging to one language community only. 4 D. All of these 5 A. both the communities have equal representation	
4	1 A. Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha 2 A. Central government 3 C. 12 4 B. Judges 5. C. State Government	

CHAPTER 2

FEDERALISM

KEY WORDS AND TERMS

Federalism- Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.

Unitary system- Under the unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government

Jurisdiction-- The area over which someone has legal authority

Coming together Federations- Independent States coming together on their own to form a bigger unit, so that by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity they can increase their security.

Holding together federations- A large country decides to divide its power between the constituent States and the national government.

Union list- Union List includes subjects of national importance

State list- contains subjects of State and local importance.

Concurrent List- includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments

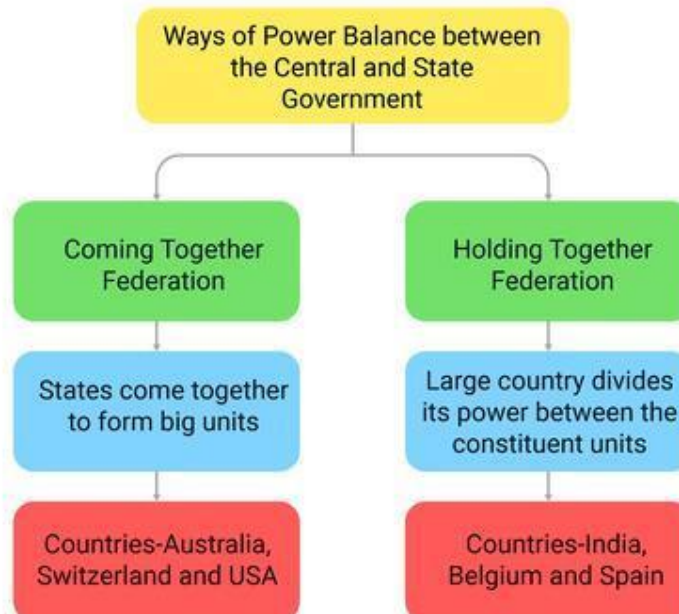
Residuary List-- include all subjects that came up after the constitution was made and they do not fall in any of the three lists

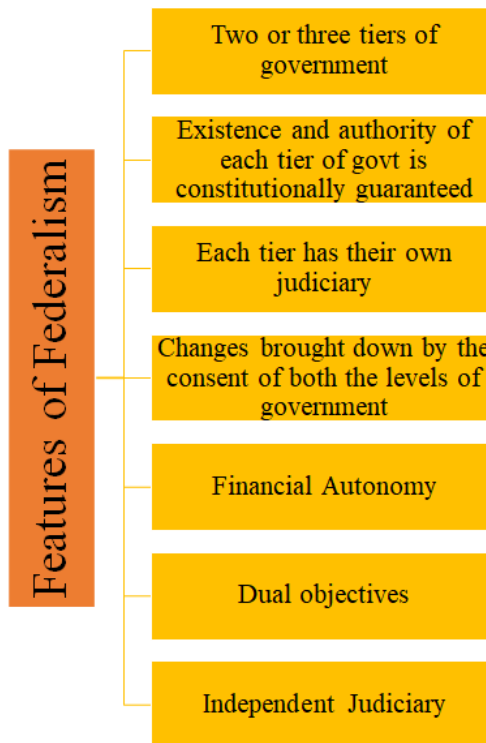
The Union Territories- Constituent units of the Indian Union which enjoy very little power and these are areas which are too small to become an independent State.

Coalition government –When two or more political parties come together and form a government it is called a coalition government.

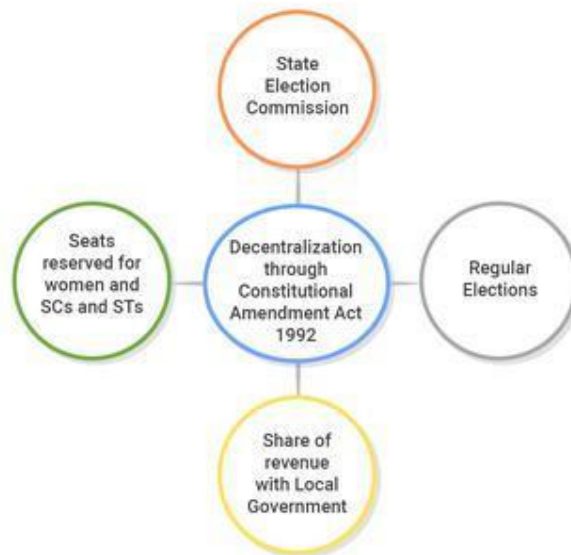
Decentralisation- When power is taken away from Central and State governments and given to local government, it is called decentralisation

CONCEPT MAPS





DECENTRALISATION IN INDIA



ONE MARK QUESTIONS

Q1. Define Federalism?

Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country

Q2. Where do the jurisdictions of different levels of governments specified in Indian Federal system?

The jurisdictions of the respective levels or tiers of government are specified in the constitution

Q3. What are the dual objectives of federal system?

1. To safeguard and promote unity of the country,
2. To accommodate regional diversity.

Q4. Mention the two essential aspects of an ideal federal system

1. Mutual trust
2. Agreement to live together.

Q5. Give examples of Coming together Federations

The USA, Switzerland and Australia.

Q6. Give examples of Holding together Federations

India, Spain and Belgium

Q7. How did the political culture of Coalition government help in the betterment of democratic politics of India?

The political culture of Coalition government led to a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of State Governments.

Q8. What type of a governmental arrangement exists in Belgium now?

Federal system

Q9. What type of a governmental arrangement exists in Sri Lanka now?

Unitary system

Q10. How does financial autonomy ensured in a Federal system?

Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified in the Constitution to ensure financial autonomy

Q11. Indian Constitution does not use the term Federation, even though we work on the same principles. Which term has been used to indicate our system?

India, a Union of States

Q12. What is meant by Jurisdiction?

The area over which someone has legal authority

Q13. Which list of the Indian Constitution, Residuary powers is included in?

Residuary powers

Q14. Name the states in India which enjoy special powers under Article 371 of the Indian Constitution.

Assam

Nagaland

Arunachal Pradesh

Mizoram

Q15. States in India such as Assam and Mizoram enjoy special powers under Article 371 of the Indian Constitution. Why?

Due to their peculiar social and Historical circumstances

Q16. Suppose the Government of Maharashtra is forming a special police Battalion for Rural safety. Can the Central government order the state government to withdraw the plan as this involves a lot of money expenditure? Justify your answer.

No, Police and law and order is a subject in the state list and only the state government can make laws based on that subject.

Q17. The Central Government passed a law banning Electric fencing of agricultural fields near forests .At the same time the state government passes a law allowing farmers to erect Electric Fencing with the special permission from the Village officer. Which law will prevail? Why?

The Central Law will prevail because Prevention of cruelty against animals is a subject in the concurrent list and if two laws conflict with each other the law made by the Central government will prevail if it belongs to the concurrent list.

Q18. Which level of government can make laws on matters related to Artificial intelligence?

The Union Government

Q19. Which level of government is more powerful in India?

The Union Government

Q20. Some States in India like Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand were created not on the basis of language. On what basis these were created?

These states were created to recognise differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography

Q21. Which governmental agency conducts elections to local self governments in India?

The State Election Commission

Q22. What is the term used to mention rural local self governments in India?

Rural local government is popularly known by the name Panchayati raj.

Q23. Point out one feature in the practice of federation in India that is different from that of Belgium.

In Belgium Community Government is there, but in India such type of provision is not there.

Q24. Give any two problems associated with the functioning of the Panchayati Raj system in India?

1. While elections are held regularly, gram sabhas are not held regularly.
2. Most state governments have not transferred significant powers to the local governments

Q25. Identify three states in India which have been carved out of bigger states.

Jharkhand, Uttarakhand, Chhattisgarh

Q26. The following cartoon depicts the negative aspects of coalition government at the centre. Identify any two negative aspects.

Perils of Running a Coalition Government



1. The Regional parties exert undue pressure on central government to protect regional interest at the cost national interest.
2. This pressure politics may weaken the central government

3 MARKS QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the different levels of government in India Federal system?

Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country. A federation has two or more levels of government.

1. The central government- This is the government for the entire country and is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest.
2. State government- This is the government at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the day-to-day administering of their state.

Both these levels of governments enjoy their power independent of the other.

2. The local government- This is the government at local level to meet the local needs and to ensure democratic participation at the grass root level.

Q2.What is meant by unitary system?

1. Under the unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government.
- 2.The central government can pass on orders to the provincial or the local government.
3. Generally small countries with less diversity adopt unitary system.

Q3. Explain the terms of relationship between central government and state government in Federal system.

1. In a federal system, the central government cannot order the state government to do something.
2. State government has powers of its own for which it is not answerable to the central government.
3. Both these governments are separately answerable to the people.

Q4.Explain the Union list of the Indian Constitution

1. Union List of the Indian constitution includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, and communications currency. Etc.
2. They are included in this list because we need a uniform policy on these matters throughout the country.
3. The Union Government alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the Union List.

Q5. Explain the State list of the Indian Constitution

1. State List of the Indian constitution contains subjects of State and local importance such as police, trade, commerce, agriculture irrigation. Etc.
2. The State Governments alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the State List.
3. State list contains less number of subjects compared to Union list

Q6. Explain the Concurrent list of the Indian Constitution

1. Concurrent List includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments, such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, and adoption

Succession etc

2. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in this list.

3. If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail.

Q7. What is meant by Residuary Subjects?

1. Residuary Subjects include all subjects that do not fall in any of the three lists (The Union list, The State list, The Concurrent list)
2. Subjects like computer software that came up after the constitution was made are included in this list.
3. According to our constitution, the Union Government has the power to legislate on these 'residuary' subjects.

Q8. The Constitutional division of powers envisages a more powerful Central government. Why?

- 1.1. Union List of the Indian constitution includes more number of subjects and more important subjects.
2. Subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communications, and currency. Etc. are included in the Union list
3. The Constitution provides an upper hand to Union government in the case of Concurrent list. If the laws made by central and state government conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail
4. According to our constitution, the Union Government has the power to legislate on these 'residuary' subjects.

Q9. Why it is not easy to make changes to this power sharing arrangement in India?

1. The Parliament cannot on its own change the power sharing arrangement.
2. Any change to it has to be first passed by both the Houses of Parliament with at least two-thirds majority.
3. Then it has to be ratified by the legislatures of at least half of the total States.

Q10. What is the role of Judiciary in a Federation?

1. The judiciary plays an important role in overseeing the implementation of constitutional provisions and procedures in a Federal system.
2. In case of any dispute about the division of powers, the High Courts and the Supreme Court make a decision.
3. The Judiciary has to be independent and impartial to ensure mutual trust between different levels of government and to uphold the spirit of Federalism

Q11. If the Federal experiment has succeeded in India, it is not merely because of the clearly laid out constitutional provisions. Do you agree with the statement? Justify your answer.

1. Well defined and clear constitutional provisions have a major role in the success of Federal system but that is not enough.
2. The real success of Federalism can be attributed to the nature of democratic politics of our country
3. Respect for diversity and desire for living together became shared ideals in our country

Q12. Explain Local government bodies in urban areas .

1. Municipalities are set up in towns in cities and municipal corporations are set up in big cities
2. Both municipalities and municipal corporations are controlled by elected representatives.
3. Municipal chairperson is the political head of the municipality the Mayor is of the municipal corporation

SOURCE BASED QUESTION

Read the following extract and answer the questions

A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 percent of Indians. There were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages. States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State. Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes would be stopped in 1965. However, many non- Hindi speaking States demanded that the use of English should continue. In Tamil Nadu, this movement took a violent form. The Central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes. Many critics think that this solution favoured the English-speaking elites. Promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of the Government of India. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in.

Q1. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes would be stopped in 1965. But even now all official communication are given in English also. Why?

Q2. Suppose the Central Government orders all the state governments that the medium of instruction in schools should be Hindi. Is it constitutionally valid? Justify your answer.

Q3. It was proved that Sri Lanka lacked the political wisdom of adopting a proper Language policy as the country had to face a civil war on the issue of language. What was the main feature of Sri Lankan language policy?

A1- Many non- Hindi speaking States demanded that the use of English should continue. The Central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes.

A2- No, Central Government cannot impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language.

A3- Sinhala language was given the status of the one and only official language of Sri Lanka disregarding Tamil.

5 MARKS QUESTIONS

Q1. What are the key features of federalism?

1 There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.

2 Different tiers of government govern the same citizens, but each tier has its own Jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.

3 The jurisdictions of the respective levels or tiers of government are specified in the constitution. So the existence and authority of each tier of government is constitutionally guaranteed.

4 The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by one level of government. Such changes require the consent of both the levels of government.

5 Courts have the power to interpret the constitution and the powers of different levels of government.

6 Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.

Q2. Distinguish between Coming together Federation and Holding together Federation.

Coming together Federations

1. There are two kinds of routes through which federations have been formed.

2. The first route involves independent States coming together on their own to form a bigger unit, so that by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity they can increase their security.

3. This type is known as coming together federation.

4. In this category of federations, all the constituent States usually have equal power and are strong.

Ex. The USA, Switzerland and Australia.

Holding together federations

1. The second route is where a large country decides to divide its power between the constituent States and the national government.

2. They are known as holding together federations

Ex. India, Spain and Belgium

3. In this second category, the central government tends to be more powerful than the States.

Q3. What factors make India a Federation?

1. The Constitution originally provided for a two-tier system of government, the Union Government and the State governments.

2. Later, a third tier of federalism was added in the form of Panchayats and Municipalities.

3. These different tiers enjoy separate jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.

4. The Constitution divides of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments in three lists i.e. the union list. the state list and the concurrent list.

5. An independent and impartial judiciary exists to interpret the constitution and settles disputes.

Q 4. How is Federalism practiced in India?

1. Linguistic States

1. The creation of linguistic States was the first and a major test for democratic politics in India

2. All the states except a few have been formed of the people who speak the same language.

3. These states are known as Linguistic States.

2. Language Policy

1. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution.
2. States too have their own official languages and government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State.

3. Centre –state relations

1. Till 1990 the same party ruled both at the Centre and in most of the States.
2. Since no single party got a clear majority in the Lok Sabha, the major national parties had to enter into an alliance with many parties including several regional parties to form a government at the Centre.
3. This led to a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of State Governments

Q5. The existence of the Union Territories is a peculiar feature of Indian Federal system. Explain

1. There are some units of the Indian Union which enjoy very little power.
2. These are areas which are too small to become an independent State but which could not be merged with any of the existing States
3. There are historical, political and geographical reasons for their existence.
4. These areas are called Union Territories.
5. These territories do not have the powers of a State.
6. The Central Government has special powers in running these areas.

Q 6. The creation of linguistic States was the first and a major test for democratic politics in our country. Explain

1. One major challenge India faced after independence was the creation of states and finally linguistic states were created as federal units.
2. It was ensured that people who spoke the same language lived in the same State.
3. Some States were created not on the basis of language but to recognise differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography.
4. These include States like Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand.
5. The formation of linguistic States has actually made the country more united and time has proved that it was the most suitable way to divide the country into constituent units.
6. It has also made administration easier.

Q 7.Explain the Language policy of independent India

1. Our Constitution does not give the status of national language to any one language.
2. There are 22 official languages, including Hindi and English recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution.
3. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages.
4. The states too have their own official languages and that is their regional language.
5. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes would stop in 1965 but many non Hindi speaking States demanded that the use of English should continue.
6. Promotion of Hindi continues to be the policy the Government of India.
7. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language.

Q8.Compare and contrast the Centre-State relations in India before and after 1990

before 1990

1. The history centre-state relations of India can be divided into two stages-the period before and after 1990
2. Till 1990 the same party ruled both at the Centre and in most of the States.
3. This meant that the State governments did not exercise their rights as autonomous federal units.
4. In those days, the Central Government would often misuse the Constitution to dismiss the State governments.
5. This undermined the spirit of federalism.

All this changed significantly after 1990.

1. This period saw the rise of regional political parties in many States of the country.
2. This was also the beginning of the era of Coalition governments at the Centre.
3. Since no single party got a clear majority in the Lok Sabha, the major national parties had to enter into an alliance with many parties including several regional parties to form a government at the Centre.
4. This led to a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of State Governments.

5. This trend was supported by a major judgement of the Supreme Court that made it difficult for the Central Government to dismiss state governments

Q9.What is the rationale for decentralisation of power?/Why is decentralisation necessary?

1. A vast country like India cannot be run only through two-tiers of governments.
2. Many of the States are internally very diverse and India needs another tier of government, below the State governments.
3. The basic idea behind decentralisation is that there are a large number of problems and issues which are best settled at the local level.
4. People have better knowledge of problems in their localities.
5. They also have better ideas on where to spend money and how to manage things more efficiently.
6. At the local level it is possible for the people to directly participate in decision making.
7. This helps to inculcate a habit of democratic participation from the grass root level.

Q10.What are the steps or efforts taken in India for decentralisation? /What are the clauses or provisions of the Decentralisation Amendment Act of 1992

1. A major step towards decentralisation was taken in 1992.
2. The Constitution was amended to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful and effective.
3. Now it is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
4. Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes.
5. At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women.
6. An independent institution called the State Election Commission has been created in each State to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
7. The State governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.

Q11.How is the rural local government constituted ?/How does the rural local government function?

1. Rural local government is popularly known by the name panchayati raj. The nature of its constitution varies from State to State.

2. Each village has a gram panchayat with elected ward members, often called panch, and a president or sarpanch .
3. The panchayat works under the overall supervision of the gram sabha which includes all the voters in the village.
4. It has to meet at least twice or thrice in a year to approve the annual budget of the gram panchayat and to review the performance of the gram panchayat.
5. A few gram panchayats are grouped together to form what is usually called a panchayat samiti or block or mandal.
6. The members of this representative body are elected by all the panchyat members in that area.
7. All the panchayat samitis or mandals in a district constitute the zilla (district) parishad.

Q12.Critically examine the system of decentralisation/the functioning of the Panchayati raj system in India.

1. This system of local government is the largest experiment in democracy conducted anywhere in the world.
2. Constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen democracy in our country.
3. It has increased women's representation and voice in our democracy.

At the same time, there are many problems.

1. While elections are held regularly, gram sabhas are not held regularly.
2. Most state governments have not transferred significant powers to the local governments.
3. They were not given adequate resources for the proper functioning

CHAPTER 4

GENDER, RELIGION AND CASTE

SOCIAL DIVISION OF LABOUR: A system in which all works inside the home is either done by the women of the family or organised by them through domestic helpers.

FEMINIST: A woman or a man who believes in equal rights and opportunities for women and men.

PATRIARCHY: Rule by father this concept is used to refer to a system that values men more and gives them power over women.

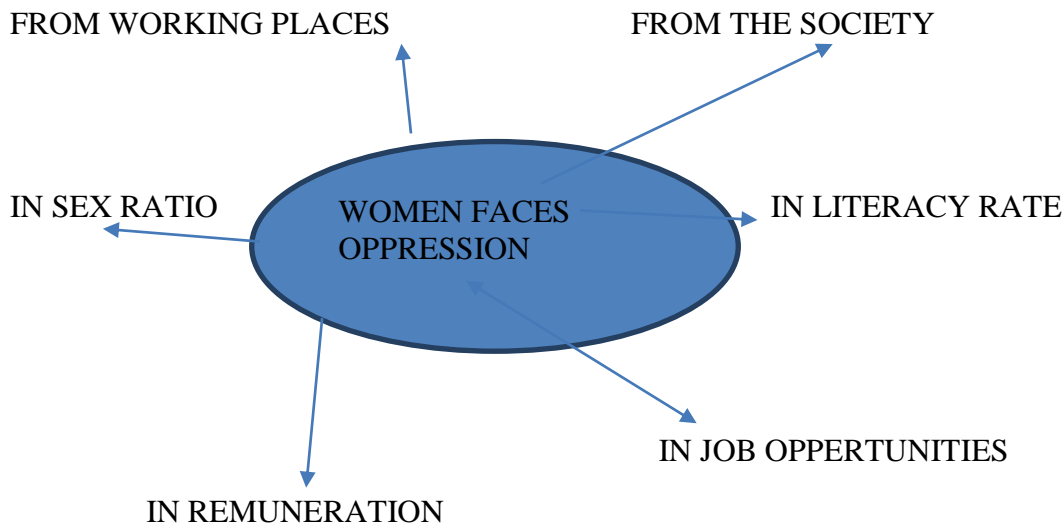
FAMILY LAWS: Those laws that deal with family related matters such as marriage, divorce, adoption, inheritance etc. In our country different family laws apply to different religions.

URBANISATION: Shift of population from rural areas to urban areas.

OCCUPATIONAL MOBILITY: Shift from one occupation to another. When a new generation takes up occupations other than those practiced by the ancestors.

CASTE HIERARCHY: A ladder like formation in which all the caste groups are placed from the highest to the lowest castes.

GENDER INEQUALITY



ELECTED GENDER EQUALITY THROUGH POLITICAL REPRESENTATION

LEGAL PROVISIONS TO HAVE A FAIR PROPORTION OF WOMEN IN ELECTED BODIES

1/3 SEATS RESERVED FOR WOMEN IN PANCHAYATI RAJ INSTITUTION

SIMILAR REPRESENTATION FOR WOMEN IN RAJYA SABHA AND LOK SABHA

RELIGION COMMUNALISM AND POLITICS

Religious differences may not be universal as gender division. Religious divisions are often expressed in politics.

Gandhiji believed that religion can never be separated from politics. According to Gandhiji politics must be guided by ethics drawn from all religions.

Government must take special steps to protect religious minorities as they are mostly victims of communal riots in our country.

Family laws of all religions discriminate against women.

COMMUNALISM

Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the basis of social community. Communalism is based on the ideology that followers of a particular religion must belong to one community. It is believed that people who follow different religions cannot belong to the same social community.

Extreme belief in communalism is based on the idea that people belong to different religions cannot enjoy equal rights.

COMMUNALISM RESULTS IN

- STEREO TYPES OF RELIGIOUS COMMUNITIES
- MAJORITY DOMINANCE
- DEMAND FOR SEPARATE STATES
- COMMUNAL VIOLENCE
- RIOTS MASSACRE
- BELIEF IN SUPERIORITY OF ONE'S RELIGION OVER OTHER RELIGION

SECULAR STATE

- **INDIA IS A SECULAR COUNTRY**
- **NO OFFICIAL RELIGION FOR INDIA**
- **CONSTITUTION GUARENTEES FREEDOM OF RELIGION**
- **PROHIBITS DISCRIMINATION**
- **BANS & UNTOUCHABILITY**

CASTE IN POLITICS

It is based on the idea that caste is the sole basis of social community
Candidates will be selected according to the caste composition of the area.
Many political parties may put up candidates from the same caste.

POLITICS IN CASTE

Politics influences casts by bringing them into the political arena.
It gives advantages to Dalits and OBCs ,
Sometimes this will led to social conflicts,tension,violence and civil war.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Who said that religion can never be separated from politics?

- a. Dr. Ambedkar
- b. Pt. Nehru
- c. Mahatma Gandhi
- d. None of these

ans. MAHATMA GANDHI

2. Laws representing family matters such as marriage, divorce etc. are known as

- a. Civil laws
- b. Criminal laws
- c. Family laws
- d. None of the above

Ans. FAMILY LAWS

3. The system in which father is known as the head of the family

- a. Monarchy
- b. Patriarchy
- c. Hierarchy
- d. None of the above

Ans. PATRIARCHY

4. What is Feminism?

Ans. Feminism means the empowerment of women and giving women equal status in the society as men.

5. What is communal politics?

Ans. The use of religion for political purpose where one religion is shown as superior to other religions.

6. The leader who did not work who did not for the caste problem in India was

- (a) Matma Gandhi
- (b) Jyothiba Phule
- (c) B.G. Tilak
- (d) Dr Ambedkar

Ans. B.G. Tilak

7. Gender division in society is based on

- (a) social expectations
- (b) stereotypes
- (c) both (a) and (b)
- (d) None of these

Ans. both (a) and (b)

8. The Scheduled Tribes are often referred to as

- (a) Scavengers
- (b) Dalits
- (c) adivasis
- (d) Outcastes

Ans. adivasis

9. What is the provision of equal wages Act

Ans. Equal wages should be paid for equal work.

10. The basic idea behind communalism is _____.

Ans; Religion is the main basis of social community.

Define the following

11. Secular state: State that provides equal status to all religions.

12. Occupational mobility: Shift from one occupation to another, usually when a new generation takes up occupations other than those practiced by ancestors.

13. What does caste hierarchy mean?

It is a ladder like formation in which all the caste groups are placed from the highest to the lowest castes.

14. The constitution makers viewed _____ as the major challenges to democracy in India.

Ans. Communalism

15. In which country the participation of women in public life is very high.

Ans. Sweden

16. Mention any 2 reasons for the breaking down of caste hierarchy in India.

Ans; Increase in literate rate and education

Occupational mobility

17. Periyar Naikar wanted to establish a society in which _____ are absent.

Ans. caste inequalities

18.The equal remuneration Act was established in _____.

Ans. 1976

19.In India seats are reserved for women in

a.Lok sabha

b.State legislative assemblies

c.Panchayati Raj bodies

ans. Panchayati Raj bodies.

20.Which of the following country doesn't has an official state language

a.INDIA

b.ENGLAND

c.SRI LANKA

d.ALL THE ABOVE

ans: India

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

1.Communalism poses a great threat to the Indian Democracy?

Ans.

It leads to violence and riots

Human rights are threatened by communalism

Destroys the secular values of the country

Communalism will disintegrate nation.

2.What are the positive impacts of caste politics?

Ans.

Expression in caste difference in politics gives many disadvantaged communities

the space to demand their share of power.

It helped Dalits and OBCs to gain better access to decision making.

Political agencies has been demanding for an end to discrimination against particular castes,for more dignity and more access to land,resources and oppertunities.

3.Write about the constitutional provisions that makes India a secular country.

There is no official religion for India.

Constitution does not give special status to any religion.

The constitution grants the right to practice and propagate and practice any religion.

Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion.

State is having the right to intervene in the matters of religion inorder to ensure equality within religious communities.

4.What are the major demands of feminist movements?

Equal right to women as men in all spheres of life.

Voting rights

Enhancement in political and legal status of women.

Improvement in educational and career opportunity.

5.Caste alone cannot determine Indian elections?

No parliamentary constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste.

No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or a community.

The voters attachment to his party and the party ideology can be stronger than his attachment to his caste group.

FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

1.What are the factors which promote communalism?

Believing that one religion is superior to those of other religions.

When demands of one religious groups are formed in opposition to other.

When state power is used to establish domination of one religious group over other.

2.Explain the factors which are responsible for breaking down the old notions of caste hierarchy?

Economic development ,urbanisation,growth rate of education and literacy,occupational mobility and weakening of the position of land lords in the villages results in the breaking

Down of old notions of csate hierarchy.

The Constitution of India prohibited any caste based discrimination and laid the foundations of policies to reverse the injustices of the caste system.

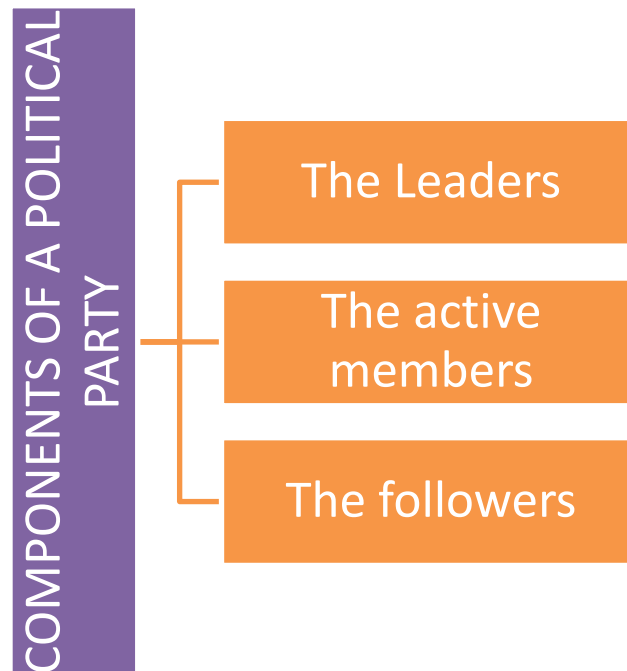
Spread of education has brought awareness among people,and broadened their out look.

Caste system weakened due to the efforts of political leaders and social reformers like Jyotiba Phule,B.R. Ambedkar P.R.Naiker .

CHAPTER 6

POLITICAL PARTIES

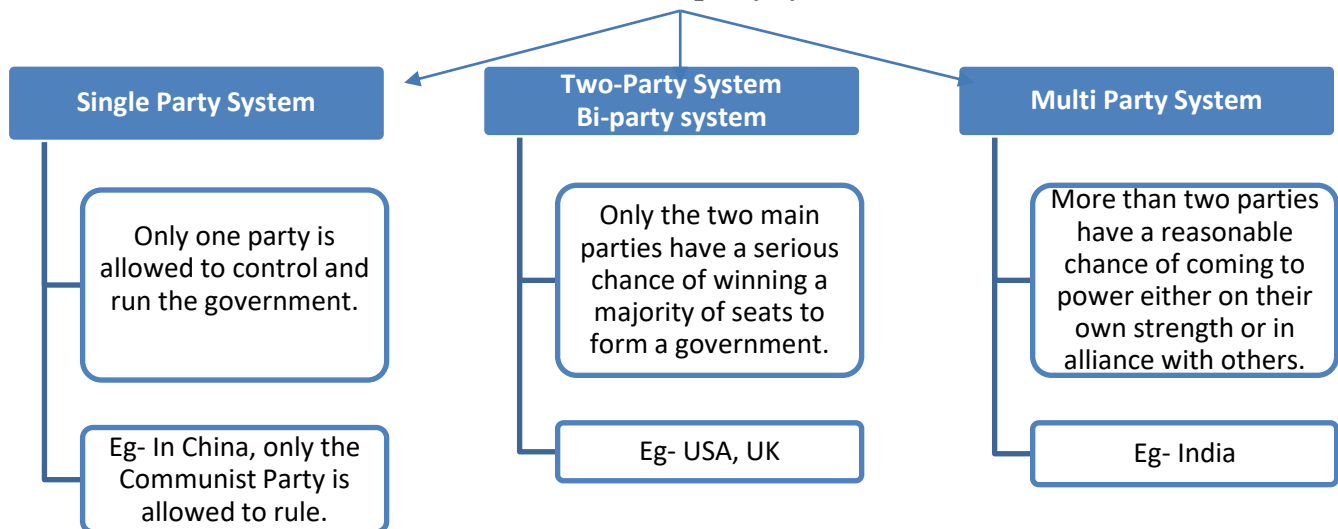
I BASIC CONCEPTS



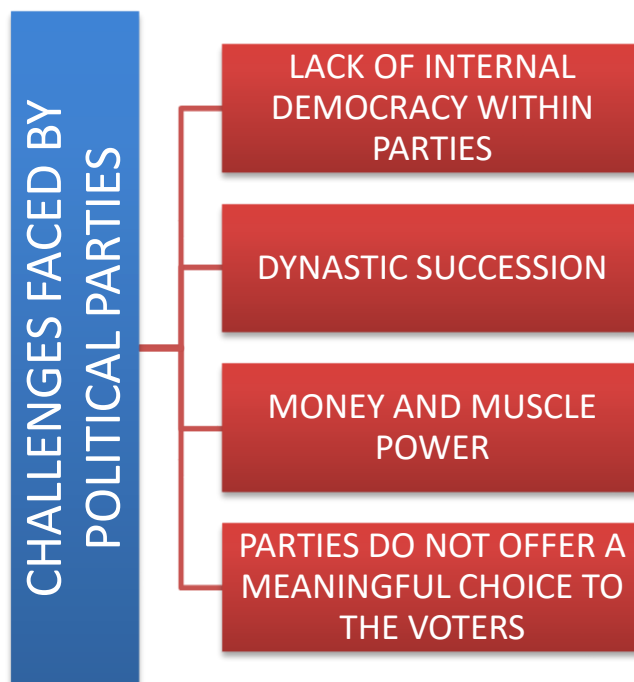
Necessity of Political Parties

- WITHOUT POLITICAL PARTIES-
- Every candidate in the elections will be independent. No one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes.
- Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituency for what they do in the locality. But no one will be responsible for how the country will be run.
- There will be no agency to gather and present different views on various issues to the government.
- There will be no mechanism to support the government, make policies and justify or oppose them.

Classification of party system







II KEY TERMS

Affidavit : A signed document submitted to an officer , where a person makes a sworn statement regarding her personal information.

Alliance: When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance or a front.

Bi-party system: Bi-party system is a type of system in which power alternates between two parties only. The party that gets the majority forms the government and the other party forms opposition.

Coalition government: A coalition government is generally formed in a multi-party system, when no single party wins a clear majority in the election and the government is formed by two or more parties coming together.

Defection: Changing party allegiance from the party on which a person got elected (to a legislative body) to a different party.

Election: An election is a formal group decision-making process by which a population chooses an individual to hold public office.

One-party system: One-party system is a political system in which only one party controls and runs the government.

Multi-party system: It is a system in which several parties compete for power and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming into power either on their own or in alliance with others.

Opposition : The political party or a group of parties that is a part of the Legislature , but not a part of the government.

Political party : A political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government.

Partisan: A person who is strongly committed to a party,group or faction

Partisanship : A tendency to take a side and in ability to take a balanced view on an issue.

National party: A party that secures at least 6% of the total votes in Lok Sabha elections or wins four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognized as a national party.

Regional party: All parties, other than the six national parties, are classified as state parties by the Election Commission of India. They are also called regional parties.

Ruling party: Political party that runs government.

State party: A party that secures at least six percent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognised as a State party.

III. ONE MARK QUESTION

1. What is a signed document submitted to an officer regarding his/her personal information?
 - (a) Affidavit
 - (b) Declaration
 - (c) Agreement
 - (d) Appeal
2. How many recognised national parties are there in India?
 - (a) Five
 - (b) Six
 - (c) Seven
 - (d) Eight
3. Political parties are allotted symbols by_____?
 - a) The government of India
 - b) The constitution of India
 - c) The party leaders
 - d) The Election Commission
4. Bahujan Samaj party was founded by_____
 - a) B R Ambedkar
 - b) Kanshi Ram
 - c) Mamta Banerjee
 - d) Syama prasad
5. Which country is an example of a Multi-Party System?
 - a) India
 - b) United Kingdom
 - c) USA
 - d) China
6. Define Political party.
7. Define Defection.
8. Define multiparty system.
9. State the meaning of Partisan
10. Define National party
11. Give 2 countries with two party system.
12. Name the oldest party in India.
13. Observe the symbols and identify the political party



14. What are the 3 components of a political party?
15. Name any 2 state parties in India.

16. Name the political party that seeks to represent and secure power for Dalits, OBC, Adivasis and religious minorities?
17. 'Rashtriya Lok Dal' is the regional party of ----- state?
18. State any one function of political party.
19. Universal Adult Suffrage stands for Right to -----
20. ----- is the recently recognised National party of India.
21. Fill in the blanks based on types of Party system
The United States of America and the United Kingdom are examples of _____(a)_____. If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a _____(b)_____. We cannot consider _____(c)_____ as a good option because this is not a democratic option.

ANSWERS

1. Affidavit 2. Eight 3. The Election commission 4. Kanshi Ram 5. India
6. Political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and to hold power in the government.
7. Changing party allegiance from the party on which a person got elected (to a legislative body) to a different party.
8. It is a system in which several parties compete for power and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming into power either on their own or in alliance with others.
9. A person who is strongly committed to a party, group or faction.
10. A party that secures at least 6% of the total votes in Lok Sabha elections or wins four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognized as a national party.
11. USA and UK
12. Indian National Congress.
13. All India Trinamool Congress and Nationalist Congress Party.
14. The leaders, the active members and the followers.
15. Biju Janata Dal, Sikkim Democratic Front.
16. Bahujan Samaj Party.
17. Uttar Pradesh.
18. Parties contest elections, Parties put forward different policies and programmes, Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country (any 1)
19. Right to Vote.
20. National People's Party.
21. (a) Bi-party system. (b) Multi-party system (c) One party system

IV.3 MARK QUESTIONS

1. **What is a Political party? Describe the 3 components of a political party.**

Ans) Political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government.

Three components of political parties are:

- a) The leaders –The leaders contest elections and if they win, perform the administrative jobs.
- b) The active members –The members attend party meetings are close to the party leaders.
- c) The followers- they are the dedicated workers of the party.

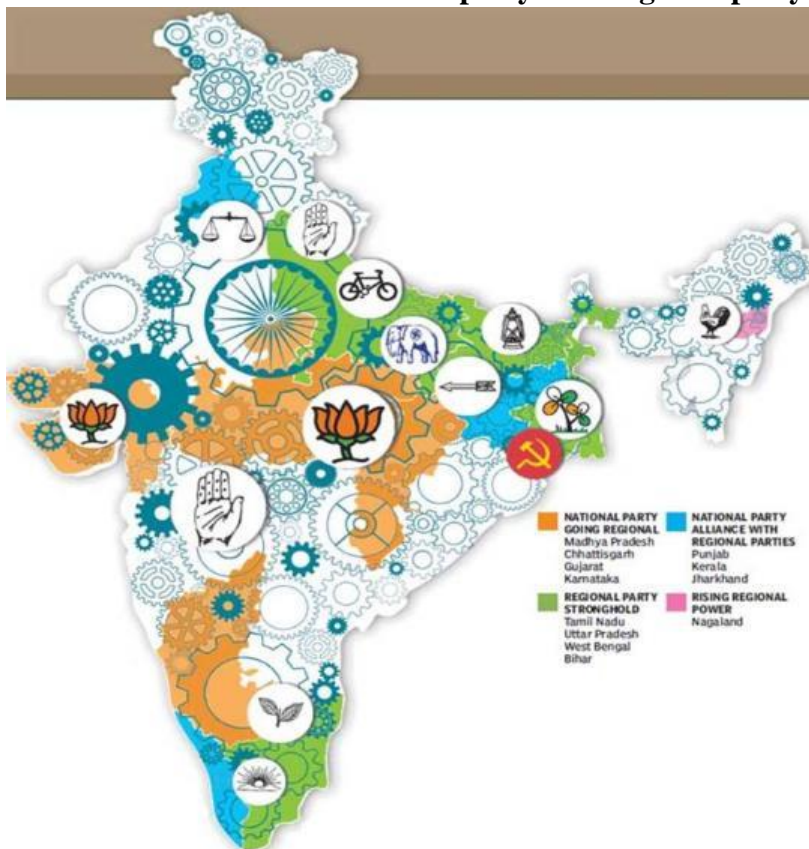
2. **Analyse any 3 challenges faced by political parties.**

Ans) Lack of Internal democracy-The first challenge faced by political party is lack of internal democracy within parties. All over the world there is a tendency in political parties towards the concentration of power in one or few leaders at the top. Parties do not keep membership registers, do not hold organisational meetings, and do not conduct internal elections regularly.

Dynastic Succession- members. In many parties, the top positions are always controlled by members of one family. This is unfair to other members of that party.

Use of money and muscle power- Since parties are focussed only on winning elections, they tend to use short-cuts to win elections. They tend to nominate those candidates who have or can raise lots of money. In some cases, parties support criminals who can win elections.

3. **Observe the map and identify any 2 National Party and 2 Regional parties. State the differences between National party and Regional party.**



NATIONAL PARTY	REGIONAL PARTY
Have influence all over the country	Influence limited particular region/state
Deals with national problems	More concerned about regional level problems
Have their presence in many states	Usually limited to their own region
Eg; BJP,INC	Eg; TDP,DMK

4. In what way is an Alliance different from a coalition government?

ALLIANCE	COALITION
When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance	when no single party wins a clear majority in the election and the government is formed by two or more parties coming together.

5. Explain any 3 differences between ruling and opposition parties.

Ruling party	Opposition Party
It forms and runs the government	The political party or a group of parties that is a part of the Legislature , but not a part of the government
It plays a decisive role in making laws for the country	It criticises the government for its wrong policies and programmes
It puts forward different policies and programmes	It criticises the government for its failures

6. What is a Multi-party system?Why India has adopted a multi-party system?

If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multiparty system. India has evolved a multiparty system, it is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties.

7. What is the role of Opposition party in a democracy?

Ans) Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power.Role played by opposition is;

- It gives its own opinion which may oppose the ruling party.
- Mobilises opposition to the Government
- It puts its different views in the parliament and criticise the government for its failures or wrong policies.

8. READ THE PASSAGE GIVEN BELOW AND ANSWER THE FOLLOWING

The Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing parties. This was done because many elected representatives were indulging in DEFECTION in order to become ministers or for cash rewards. Now the law says that if any MLA or MP changes parties, he or she will lose the seat in the legislature. This new law has helped bring defection down. At the same time this has made any dissent even more difficult. MPs and MLAs have to accept whatever the party leaders decide.

- What is Defection?
- What measures have been taken to curb it?

Ans) a) Changing party allegiance from the party on which a person got elected (to a legislative body) to a different party is known as defection.

b) The Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing parties the law says that if any MLA or MP changes parties, he or she will lose the seat in the legislature. This new law has helped bring defection down.

9. **Suggest any 3 measures to reform financial position of political parties in India.**

- a) it is mandatory for every candidate who contests elections to file an AFFIDAVIT giving details of his property and criminal cases pending against him.
- b) There should be state funding of elections. The government should give parties money to support their election expenses.
- c) The financial accounts of every political party should be made public. These accounts should be examined by government auditors.

10. **State any 3 functions of the Election Commission of India.**

Ans) a) Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission.

b) While the Commission treats all parties equally, it offers some special facilities to large and established parties .

c) The Election Commission lays down detailed criteria of the proportion of votes and seats that a party must get in order to be a recognised party, state party and National party.

5 MARK QUESTIONS.

1. Describe the role of 5 of political parties in Indian democracy.

Answer

- ✓ Parties contest elections. In most democracies, elections are fought mainly among the candidates put up by political parties. In India, top party leaders choose candidates for contesting elections.
- ✓ Parties put forward different policies and programmes and the voters choose from them. Each of us may have different opinions and views on what policies are suitable for the society. In a democracy, a large number of similar opinions have to be grouped together to provide a direction in which policies can be formulated by the governments. This is what the parties do.
- ✓ Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country. Formally, laws are debated and passed in the legislature. But since most of the members belong to a party, they go by the direction of the party leadership, irrespective of their personal opinions.
- ✓ Parties form and run governments. Parties recruit leaders, train them and then make them ministers to run the government in the way they want.
- ✓ Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power, by voicing different views and criticising government for its failures or wrong policies.
- ✓ Parties shape public opinion. They raise and highlight issues. Parties sometimes also launch movements for the resolution of problems faced by people

2. What are the major challenges which the political parties face in the present era? Explain.

ANSWER

- **LACK OF INTERNAL DEMOCRACY**-The first challenge is lack of internal democracy within parties. Parties do not keep membership registers, do not hold organisational meetings, and do not conduct internal elections regularly. Ordinary members of the party do not get sufficient information on what happens inside the party. As a result the leaders assume greater power to make decisions in the name of the party.
 - **DYNASTIC SUCCESSION**-The second challenge of dynastic succession is related to the first one. Those who happen to be the leaders are in a position of unfair advantage to favour people close to them or even their family members. In many parties, the top positions are always controlled by members of one family. This is unfair to other members of that party.
 - **MONEY AND MUSCLE POWER**-The third challenge is about the growing role of money and muscle power in parties, especially during elections. Since parties are focussed only on winning elections, they tend to use short-cuts to win elections. They tend to nominate those candidates who have or can raise lots of money. In some cases, parties support criminals who can win elections.
 - **DECLINE OF MEANINGFUL CHOICES**-The fourth challenge is that very often parties do not seem to offer a meaningful choice to the voters. In order to offer meaningful choice, parties must be significantly different. In recent years there has been a decline in the ideological differences among parties in most parts of the world.
3. **Suggest any 5 measures to reform political parties.**

ANSWER

- A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of its members, to follow its own constitution, to have an independent authority, to act as a judge in case of party disputes, to hold open elections to the highest posts.
 - It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to women candidates. Similarly, there should be a quota for women in the decision making bodies of the party.
 - There should be state funding of elections. The government should give parties money to support their election expenses.
 - People can put pressure on political parties. This can be done through petitions, publicity and agitations.
4. **‘Modern democracies cannot exist without Political parties’.Examine the statement.**

ANSWER

In a democratic set-up, political parties are required because without political parties:

- Every candidate in the elections will be independent. So no one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes. The government may be formed, but its utility will remain ever uncertain.
- Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituency for what they do in the locality. But no one will be responsible for how the country will be run.

- There will be no agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government.
- No one will be responsible for bringing various representatives together so as to form a responsible government.
- There will be no mechanism to support the government, make policies or to justify or oppose them.

5. Which are the National parties in India? Write a short note on any 3 them.

ANSWER

1. Indian National Congress(INC)
2. Bharatiya Janata Party(BJP)
3. Communist Party Of India(CPI)
4. Communist Party Of India(Marxist)(CPI M)
5. Bahujan Samaj Party(BSP)
6. Nationalist Congress Party(NCP)
7. All India Trinamool Congress(AITC)
8. National People's Party(NPP)

Indian National Congress (INC): Popularly known as the Congress Party. It is one of the oldest parties of the world. Founded in 1885. Under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru, the party sought to build a modern secular democratic republic in India. After 1989, its support declined, but it continues to be present throughout the country, cutting across social divisions. A centrist party (neither rightist nor leftist) in its ideological orientation, the party espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities. Currently leads the ruling United Progressive Alliance coalition government at the Centre.

Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP): Founded in 1980 by reviving the erstwhile Bharatiya Jana Sangh. Wants to build a strong and modern India by drawing inspiration from India's ancient culture and values. Cultural nationalism (or 'Hindutva') is an important element in its conception of Indian nationhood and politics. Wants full territorial and political integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India, a uniform civil code for all people living in the country irrespective of religion, and ban on religious conversions. Currently leads the ruling NDA government at the centre.

Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP): Formed in 1984 under the leadership of Kanshi Ram. Seeks to represent and secure power for the bahujan samaj which includes the dalits, adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities. Stands for the cause of securing the interests and welfare of the dalits and oppressed people.

Communist Party of India - Marxist (CPI-M): Founded in 1964. Believes in Marxism-Leninism. Supports socialism, secularism and democracy and opposes imperialism and communalism. Accepts democratic elections as a useful and helpful means for securing the objective of socioeconomic justice in India.

Communist Party of India (CPI): Formed in 1925. Believes in Marxism-Leninism, secularism and democracy. Opposed to the forces of secessionism and communalism. Accepts parliamentary democracy as a means of promoting the interests of the working class, farmers and the poor.

All India Trinamool Congress is an Indian political party which is predominantly active in West Bengal.^[9] The party was established by Mamata Banerjee in 1998. The official election symbol of the TMC is two flowers with grass and the party is committed to secularism and federalism.

Nationalist Congress Party (NCP): Formed in 1999 following a split in the Congress party . Espouses democracy, Gandhian secularism, equity, social justice and federalism. Wants that high offices in government be confined to natural born citizens of the country.

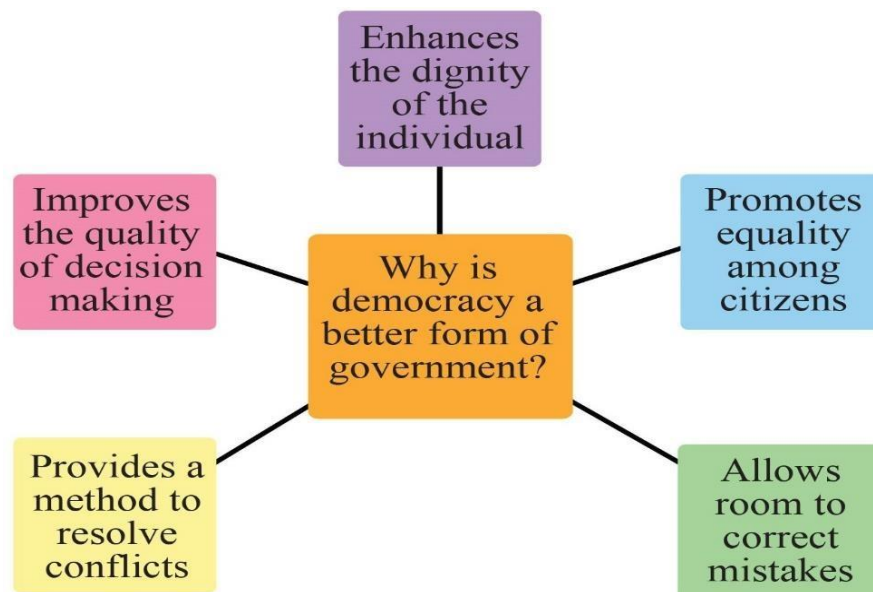
National People's Party is a national-level political party in India, though its influence is mostly concentrated in the state of Meghalaya. The party was founded by P A Sangma after his expulsion from the NCP in July 2012. It was accorded national party status on 7 June 2019. It is the first political party from Northeastern India to have attained this status.

(Any 3)

CHAPTER 7

OUTCOMES OF DEMOCRACY

OUTCOMES OF DEMOCRACY				
POLITICAL OUTCOME	ECONOMIC OUTCOME		SOCIAL OUTCOME	
Accountable, Responsive and Legitimate government	Economic growth and development	Reduction of inequality and poverty	Accommodati on of social diversity	Dignity and freedom of the citizens



KEYWORDS

A. Accountable, responsive and legitimate government:

Unlike other forms of governments, democratic governments are more accountable and responsive since they are elected by the people for a period of 4 or 5 years. In a democracy governments are through a regular, free and fair elections, Laws are made and executed with proper procedures and discussions. Hence it is transparent and legitimate.

2. ECONOMIC OUTCOME

A. Economic growth and development:

In practice many democracies did not fulfil this expectation. Dictatorships have slightly higher rate of economic growth than democracies in the last fifty years. But economic growth depends on various factors like the size of the population of the country, global situation, cooperation from other countries and priorities adopted by the country.

B. Reduction of inequality and poverty:

Democracies are based on political equality. All individuals have one vote with one value in electing representatives. Parallel to this political equality we find growing economic inequalities too.

3. SOCIAL OUTCOME

A. Accommodation of social diversity:

Democracy helps its citizens to lead a peaceful and harmonious life by accommodating various social divisions. Democracy evolves mechanisms to negotiate the differences between various communities and castes.

B. Dignity and freedom of the citizens:

Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual. The passion for respect and freedom are the basis of democracy.

Democracy- its examination never gets over. As democracy passes one test, it produces another test. People constantly demand more benefits in a democracy.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. A democratic government is elected by citizens and enjoys the confidence and trust of the citizens. This is known as

A. A legitimate government,

- B. A transparent government
- C. A secular government
- D. A stable government

2. Democracy is considered as a better form of government because.....

- A. It ensures economic development.
- B. It guarantees economic equality
- C. It provides a method to resolve conflict.**
- D. Option A and B

3. Rates of economic growth for different countries (1950-2000)

Read the given table carefully and select the correct statements from the given

Type of regimes and countries	Growth Rate
All democratic regimes	3.95
All dictatorial regimes	4.42
Poor countries under dictatorship	4.34
Poor countries under democracy	4.28

- A. Dictatorial regimes have a slightly better record of economic growth.
- B. Democratic regimes have better economic growth.
- C. Poor countries under democracy have more economic growth.
- D. It is better to prefer dictatorship as it has better economic development

4. Which of these factors do not play a role in the economic development of a country

- A. Size of the population
- B. The language of the country.
- C. Cooperation from other countries.
- D. Economic priorities adopted by the Government

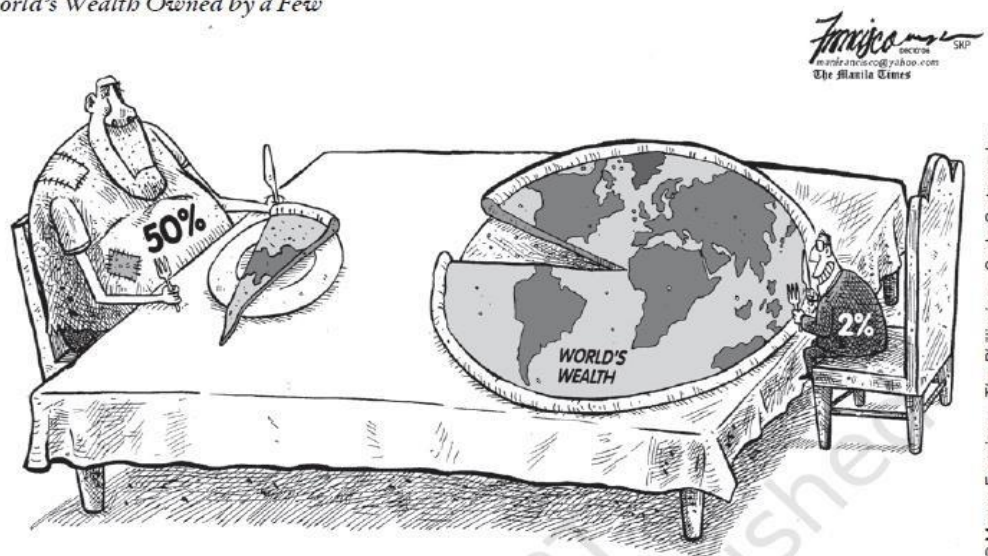
5. Economic growth depends on which of the following?

- A. Size of population of the country .
- B. Area of the country.

- C. Global scenario.
 - D. Co- operation among nations
6. Democracy is considered as a better form of government because
- A. ..It ensures economic development.
 - B. It guarantees economic equality
 - C. It provides a method to resolve conflict.
 - D. Option A and B
7. Identify the correct statement about democracy.
- A. It is free from corruption
 - B. Democracy is free from social conflict.
 - C. It is successful in eradicating poverty.
 - D. It respects the individual dignity of citizens

8. Study the given cartoon. Select the incorrect statements from the given options:

World's Wealth Owned by a Few



- A. Half of the people in the world are poor and they possess very less resources.
- B. People in several poor countries are now dependent on the rich countries even for food supplies.
- C. In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities
- D.. 2% of the poor people possess 50% resources of the world.

9. Equal treatment of women is a necessary ingredient of a democratic society.

This means that:

- A. Most societies across the world are now increasingly women dominated.
- B. Women are actually always treated with respect
- C. It is now easier for women to legally wage struggle for their rights
- D. Women are not ill-treated anywhere in the world

ASSERTION AND REASON TYPE QUESTIONS

10. In the questions given below, there are two statements marked as Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Read the statements and choose the correct code.

Assertion (A): Democracies are based on political equality.

Reason (R): All individuals have equal weight in electing representatives.

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is correct but R is wrong.
- D. A is wrong but R is correct

11. Assertion (A): Non-democratic regimes often turn a blind eye to or suppress internal social differences.

Reason (R): They accommodate various social divisions.

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is correct but R is wrong.
- D. A is wrong but R is correct

12. Assertion (A) Democracy transforms people from the status of a subject into that of a citizen.

Reason (R) Most individuals believe that their vote makes a difference to the way the governments run and to their own self-interest

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is correct but R is wrong.
- D. A is wrong but R is correct

13. Read the case/source given and answer the questions that follow by choosing the correct option.

If you wanted to measure democracies on the basis of this expected outcome, you would look for the following practices and institutions:

regular, free and fair elections; open public debate on major policies and legislations; and citizens' right to information about the government and its functioning. The actual performance of democracies shows a mixed record on this. Democracies have had greater success in setting up regular and free elections and in setting up conditions for open public debate. But most democracies fall short of elections that provide a fair chance to everyone and in subjecting every decision to public debate. Democratic governments do not have a very good record when it comes to sharing information with citizens

(i) To measure democracies on the basis of expected outcomes which of the following practices and institutions would one look for?

- A. Regular, free and fair elections
- B. Open public debate on major policies
- C. Citizens' right to information about the government.
- D. All of the above.

(ii) If a government is sharing information with citizens, then we get which type of government?

- A. An unstable government
- B. A democratic government
- C. A stable government
- D. A transparent government

(iii). Which among the following outcomes do democracies have greater success?

- A. Regular and free elections
- B. Elections that provide a fair chance to everyone
- C. Sharing information with citizens
- D. All of the above.

(iv). Which of the following statements is correct?

A. Democratic governments are very good in sharing information with citizens.

B. Most democracies succeeded in subjecting every decision to public debate.

C. The actual performance of democracies shows a mixed record in outcomes of democracy.

D. All the above

14. Read the given text and answer the given questions.

Let us think in terms of costs. Imagine a government that may take decisions very fast. But it may take decisions that are not accepted by the people and may therefore face problems. In contrast, the democratic government will take more time to follow procedures before arriving at a decision. But because it has followed procedures, its decisions may be both more acceptable to the people and more effective. So, a citizen who wants to know if a decision was taken through the correct procedures can find this out. She has the right and the means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as transparency. This factor is often missing from a non-democratic government. Therefore, when we are trying to find out the outcomes of democracy, it is right to expect democracy to produce a government that follows procedures and is accountable to the people.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Why the decision taken by a democratic government is more acceptable? | 1 |
| 2. Which factor is often missing from non-democratic government? | 1 |
| 3. To what extent democracy is transparent. Give reasons. | 2 |

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (Three Marks)

15. What is the basis of democracy and what are its advantages?

16. Most distinctive feature of democracy is that its examination never gets over.” Support the statement with appropriate arguments

17. Analyse any three values that make democracy better.

18. ‘Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom of the citizens.’ Justify the statement.

19. On the basis of which values will it be a fair expectation that democracy should produce a harmonious social life? Explain

20. Explain any 3 ways in which democracies have been able to reduce Inequality and poverty

21. Democracy accommodates social diversities.” Support the statement with examples.

22. “Democratic government is legitimate government?” Support the statement with arguments.

23. How do democratic governments ensure transparency? Explain any three points.

24. What are the differences between democracy and dictatorship in the decision-making process?

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (Five Marks)

25. Explain how democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens.

26. What are the factors which are responsible for the economic development of the country ? Does democracy provide guarantee of economic development?

27. “In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.” Explain the statement giving an example

28. How does democracy produce an accountable, responsive and legitimate government?

29. “Democratic system is better than any other form of government.” Support the statement with examples

2022 CBSE (QUESTIONS FROM BOARD EXAM)

30. Democracy is a better form of government than other alternative .Analyse the statement .(2022 CBSE)

31. Analyse the reasons for the overwhelming support for democracy all over the world.

ANSWER KEY

MCQ

- 1 A.
- 2 C.
- 3 A.
- 4 B.
- 5 D.
- 6 C.
- 7 D.
- 8 D.
- 9 C.

ASSERTION AND REASON TYPE QUESTIONS

- 10 A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A. Democracies are based on the principle of political equality. It provides one vote with equal value to all its adult citizen.
- 11 B. A is correct but R is wrong. A is correct because Non democratic regimes do not appreciate social differences rather they suppress these differences. R is wrong because they do not accommodate social differences.
- 12 A. Democracy transforms people from the status of a Subject into that of a citizen. Thus, most of the individuals believe in a democracy that their vote makes a difference to the way the governments run and their own self-interest. Hence, both A and R statements justify each other

SOURCE BASED MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- 13 (i). D. All of the above.
(ii) D. A transparent government
(iii) A. Regular and free elections.
(iv) C. The actual performance of democracies shows a mixed record in outcomes of democracy.
- 14 (i) Democratic governments follow procedures before arriving at a decision. 1
(ii) Transparency. 1
(iii) Democracy ensures that decision making will be based on norms and procedure. Every citizen has the right and means to examine the process of decision making. 2
(Any other two relevant points)

15. Democracy is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation. Deliberation and negotiation have an advantage as they

ensure that the decisions taken are acceptable to all the people. These deliberations and negotiation may make the decision late but they provide quality decisions

16. (i) As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more.
(ii) People always come up with more expectations from the democratic set up.
(iii) They also have complaints against democracy. The government always has to satisfy their public by fulfilling their demands or else they get removed.

17. (i) Provides equality among citizens.
(ii) Enhances the dignity of the individual.
(iii) Improves the quality of decision making.
(iv) Provides methods to resolve conflicts.
(v) Allows to correct mistakes.
(vi) Guarantees rights of citizens.
(Any three points)

18. (i) The passion for respect and freedom are basis of democracy.
(ii) Democracy has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity.
(iii) Long struggles by women have got them respect and equal treatment. In India, 1/3rd of seats have been reserved for women in local bodies.

- 19.
- 1) A democratic country looks into the needs and aspirations of every section of society.
 - 2) It is also able to handle social conflicts, divisions and differences.
 - 3) Accommodating the demands of the underprivileged, the backward sections of the society and the minority communities through democratic principles, helps in building a more inclusive and a harmonious society.
(Any other relevant points)

- 20
1. Democracy gives equal rights to the people; it does not discriminate on the basis of sex, religion, color, caste etc.
 2. Democracy provides equal opportunity for economic activities
 3. In order to reduce poverty and inequality democracies made efforts to promote a more transparent form of government and thus provide people with rights such as Right to Information etc.

- 21
- (i.) Democracies develop a procedure to reduce the possibility of social differences becoming explosive or violent.
 - (ii.) No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and can evolve a mechanism to negotiate these differences.
 - (iii). Ability to handle social differences divisions and conflicts is thus a definite plus point of democratic regimes iv Example: Belgium – has

- successfully negotiated differences among its ethnic population
22. (i) A democratic government is called legitimate government because it is people's own government.
(ii) It may be slow, less efficient and not very responsive and clean, but it is people's government.
(iii) People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them.

Democracy's ability to generate its own support makes it more legitimate. People of South Asia, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, India, Pakistan and Nepal have no doubt about the suitability of democracy for their own country.

23. (i) Democratic government ensures that the decision-making process is based on proper norms and procedures.
(ii) Citizens have the right to examine the process of decision making
(iii) A democratic government develops mechanisms for the citizens to hold the government accountable and mechanism for citizens to take part in decision making whenever they think fit.

24. Democracy:

- (i) Based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation
(ii) Decisions are acceptable to people and are more effective.
(iii) A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. There is transparency.

Autocracy:

- (i) Do not have to bother about majorities and/or public opinion, thus can be quick and efficient in decision-making.
(ii) May take decisions not accepted by the people.
(iii) Transparency is missing from a non-democratic form of government.
There is no accountability of the government to the people.

25. Only the Democratic government is a form of government which provides accommodation to social differences and conflicts by making everybody learn how to respect every individual's opinion as difference can never be suppressed completely.

- Democracy ensures inclusion of every group including minorities and its interests in the decision making.
- It reduces the probability of violence due to social differences and conflicts between different kinds of people.
- It provides right to equality, equality before the law, and equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on the grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual.
- It also ensures various other fundamental rights of the citizen.

(Any 5 points)

26. Economic development depends on several factors: country's population

size, global situation, The Rich countries get better cooperation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country, etc.
Most of the countries were ruled and exploited by big powers. We cannot say that democracy is a guarantee of economic development. But we can expect democracy not to lag behind dictatorships in this respect. (Any 5 points)

27. (i) The wealth and means are accumulated in hands of a few people and their share in the total income of the country has been increasing.

(ii) However, the people at the bottom of society find it difficult to meet even their basic needs of life such as food, clothing, house, education and health. Not only that, their incomes have been declining.

(iii) The deprived people are a large ratio of voters and no party will like to lose their votes.

(iv) Yet democratically elected governments do not appear to be attentive to the cause of the poor.

(v) Thus democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities. (Any 5 points)

28. Democracy produces an accountable government because it provides regular, free and fair elections regularly. Open discussions are held on all major issues and legislations.

Democracy gives its citizens the right to information about the government and its functioning.

Democracy provides a responsive government as it is formed by elected representatives of the people. These representatives discuss the problems of the society and make policies and programmes accordingly. The representatives also ensure that the programmes are implemented.

Democracies follow a constitution, so they are legitimate. The laws of the country are applicable to everyone, even to the government members. Free and fair elections are held in democracies and the people have the power to eliminate parties they are not happy with, in the next election. (Any 5 points)

29.

Democratic system is better than any other form of government because of following reasons.

(i) It promotes equality among citizens. E.g. Rule of law

(ii) It enhances the dignity of the individual. E.g. Fundamental rights.

(iv) It improves the quality of decision making. E.g. Discussion and debate in various platforms

(v) It provides a method to resolve conflicts.

If allows room to correct mistakes. (Explain any 5 points with examples)

- 30.
- A. Promote equality among citizens
 - B. Enhance dignity of the individual
 - C. Improve the quality of decision making
 - D. Provides a method to resolve conflicts

- E. Allows room to correct mistakes.
- F. Accountable, transparent and legitimate governance
(any five point to be explained)

- 31.
- A. Democratic government is peoples own government.
 - B. Countries want to elect their representatives by themselves
 - C. Democracy provide dignity and freedom to its citizens
 - D. Democracy accommodates social diversity
 - E. Decision making is based on norms and procedures and its transparency.
 - F. Democracy is based on the idea of discussion and negotiation
(any five point to be explained)

SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER
SOCIAL SCIENCE (CODE 087)
CLASS X – SESSION 2022-23

Time Allowed: 3 Hours

Maximum Marks: 80

General Instructions :

- i. *Question paper comprises five Sections – A, B, C, D and E. There are 37 questions in the question paper. All questions are compulsory.*
- ii. *Section A – From question 1 to 20 are MCQs of 1 mark each.*
- iii. *Section B – Question no. 21 to 24 are Very Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 2 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 40 words.*
- iv. *Section C contains Q.25 to Q.29 are Short Answer Type Questions, carrying 3 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 60 words*
- v. *Section D – Question no. 30 to 33 are long answer type questions, carrying 5 marks each. Answer to each question should not exceed 120 words.*
- vi. *Section-E - Questions no from 34 to 36 are case based questions with three sub questions and are of 4 marks each*
- vii. *Section F – Question no. 37 is map based, carrying 5 marks with two parts, 37a from History (2 marks) and 37b from Geography (3 marks).*
- viii. *There is no overall choice in the question paper. However, an internal choice has been provided in few questions. Only one of the choices in such questions have to be attempted.*
- ix. *In addition to this, separate instructions are given with each section and question, wherever necessary.*

SECTION A
MCQs (1X20=20)

- 1 What helped in the colonisation of Asian and African countries? Identify the correct statement from the following options. 1**
- A. Intergovernmental policies for the expansion of trade
 - B. Governmental invite to the mother countries for expansion
 - C. Technology, investments and improvement in transport
 - D. Capitalists of these regions wanted trade with colonial powers
- 2 Which of the following newspaper was started by Bal Gangadhar Tilak? 1**
- A. Hindu
 - B. Kesari
 - C. Sudharak
 - D. Pratap

- 3 Look at the picture given below. Identify the name of the painter of this painting from the following options. 1



- A. Abindra Nath Tagore
- B. Rabindra Nath Tagore
- C. Raja Ravi Verma
- D. Samant Das Gupta

Note : The following question is for Visually Impaired Candidates only in lieu of Q. No. 3

Who among the following was the author of the book ‘ Gita Govind’?

- A. Tulsidas
- B. Surdas
- C. Jayadev
- D. Raidas

- 4 Arrange the following in chronological order: 1

- I. Print culture created the conditions for the French Revolution
- II. Martin Luther’s writings led to beginning of the Protestant Reformation
- III. Menocchio reinterpreted the message of the Bible
- IV. Johann Gutenberg invented Printing press

OPTIONS:

- A. III, II, I & IV
- B. I, II, III & IV
- C. IV, III, II & I
- D. IV, II, III & I

- 5 Identify the crop with the help of the following information 1

- ❖ It is a crop which is used both as food and fodder.
- ❖ It is a kharif crop which requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C.
- ❖ It grows well in old alluvial soil.
- ❖ Use of modern inputs have contributed to the increasing production of this crop.

Options:

- A. Wheat
- B. Maize
- C. Rice
- D. Sugarcane

6 Which of the following description of forest is NOT correct? 1

- A. Reserved Forest -Reservation of more than half of forests
- B. Protected Forest- Reservation of 1/3 of the forests
- C. Unclassed Forest-Reservation of forest under govt. and private individuals
- D. Permanent Forest-Reserved and unclassified forest for the production of timber

7 Match the following : 1

RESOURCES	EXAMPLES
a. Renewable Resources:	I. Forests and wildlife
b. Non -Renewable Resources:	II. The oceanic resources
c. National Resources:	III. Roads, canals and railway
d. International Resources:	IV. Minerals and fossil fuels

OPTIONS

- A. a-I, b-IV, c-III, d-II
- B. a-II, b-I, c-IV, d-III
- C. a-IV, b-I, c-IV, d-II
- D. a-I, b-IV, c-II, d-III

8 Consider the following statements regarding power sharing arrangements in Belgium and identify the incorrect one from the following: 1

- A. Equal number of members from Dutch and French community in the central government
- B. Separate government for Brussels with equal representation of communities
- C. The state government to be subordinate to the central government
- D. Community government elected by people belonging to one language community

9 Which one of the following subjects comes under the legislation of Centre and State in India? 1

- A. Education
- B. Forests
- C. Banking
- D. Trade

10 Which of the following statement is true regarding Feminist Movements? 1

- A. A group which favours giving more power to working women at rural and urban level.
- B. A movement that believes in giving exclusive rights to female in urban areas.
- C. Radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well.
- D. It is the practice of placing a feminine and masculine point of view in decision making.

11 Which one among the following pairs is correctly matched?

1

LIST I	LIST II
A. Bharatiya Janata Party	National Democratic Alliance
B. Congress Party	Left front
C. Communist Party of India	Regional Party
D. Mizo National Front	United Progressive Alliance

12. There are two statements marked as Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Mark your answer as per the codes provided below: 1

Assertion (A): Democracy is an accountable, responsive and legitimate government

Reason (R): Democracies have regular, free and fair elections and decision-making is based on norms and procedures

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true.

13 Which one of the following religions was protected and fostered by Sri Lankans in their constitution? 1

- A. Christianity
- B. Hinduism
- C. Buddhism
- D. Islam

14 Read the given data and find out children of which state has attained maximum elementary school education? 1

States	Per Capita Income For 2018–19 (in Rs)	Infant Mortality Rate per 1,000 live births (2018)	Literacy Rate % 2017–18	Net Attendance Ratio (per 100 persons) secondary stage (age 14 and 15 years) 2017–18
HARYANA	2,36,147	30	82	61
KERALA	2,04,105	7	94	83
BIHAR	40,982	32	62	43

Sources: Economic Survey 2020–21, P.A 157, National Sample Survey Organisation (Report No. 585), National statistical office, Government of India.

- A. Haryana
- B. Bihar
- C. Haryana and Kerala both
- D. Kerala

15. Read the following data and select the appropriate option from the following.

1

Educational Achievement of Rural Population of Uttar Pradesh		
Category	Male	Female
Literacy rate for rural population	76%	54%
Literacy rate for rural children in age group 10-14 years	90%	87%
Percentage of rural children aged 10-14 attending school	85%	82%

How much percentage of girls are not attending school?

- A. 81%
- B. 61%
- C. 69%
- D. 18%

16. Find the odd one out from the following options:

1

- A. Tourist Guide, Barber, Tailor, and Potter
- B. Teacher, Doctor, Vegetable Vendor and Lawyer
- C. Postman, Cobbler, Soldier and Police Constable
- D. Indian Railways, Jet Airways, Doordarshan and Metro

17. Fill in the blank:

1

SECTOR	CRITERIA USED
Primary, Secondary & Tertiary	Nature of economic activity
Organized & Unorganized	?

OPTIONS:

- A. Nature of Employment activities
- B. Nature of Social activities
- C. Nature of Production activities
- D. Nature of Political activities

18. Read the information given below and select the correct option

1

Rohan has taken a loan of Rs.5 lakhs from the bank to purchase a house on 12% rate of interest. He has to submit papers of new house and salary record to the bank. What is this process called as?

- A. Interest Rate
- B. Collateral
- C. Principal Amount
- D. Instalments

19. Which of the following international agencies allow free trade and work on mutual trade between countries? 1
- A. WTO
 - B. IMF
 - C. UPU
 - D. FAO

20. Identify the correct statements about globalization. 1

- I. Removal of barriers by the government
- II. Foreign companies are allowed to set up factories
- III. Has enabled all companies to increase their investments
- IV. Has lessened foreign investment and foreign trade

OPTIONS:

- A. I & II
- B. II & III
- C. I & III
- D. II & IV

SECTION B

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (2X4=8)

21. Analyse any two factors that were responsible for the Great Depression in America during 1929. 2
22. Mention the provisions that constitute India into a secular country. 2
23. Suggest any two ways to conserve energy resources in India. 2

OR

Suggest any two ways to improve the usage of Solar energy.

24. In what ways Government can increase employment in the rural sector? 2

SECTION

C

SHORT ANSWER BASED QUESTIONS (3X5=15)

25. How was the social and political situation of India affected by the First World War? Explain. 3

OR

How did the Indian merchants and industrialists relate themselves to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

26. Examine the factors that influence the distribution pattern of the railway network in India. 3
27. In what ways Multi National Corporation (MNC) different from other companies? Explain with an example. 3
28. Differentiate between democratic and non-democratic government. 3
29. 'Tertiary sector is different from other sectors.' Justify the statement with suitable arguments. 3

SECTION D

LONG ANSWER BASED QUESTIONS (5X4=20)

- 30 Highlight the various measures and practices that French revolutionaries introduced to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. 5

OR

Highlight the role of Otto Von Bismarck in making of Germany. 5

31. Examine the reasons for the location of most of the jute mills in West Bengal. 5

OR

Examine the multi-pronged aspects of Information Technology and Electronics Industry. 5

32. Describe the role of political parties in India. 5

OR

Describe the necessity or utility of political parties in democratic countries. 5

33. Explain the role of Self-Help Groups (SHGs) in the rural society. 5

OR

Explain the significance of The Reserve Bank of India in the Indian economy. 5

SECTION-E

CASE BASED QUESTIONS (4x3=12)

- 34 **Read the source given below and answer the question that follows:** 4

Will Thorne is one of those who went in search of seasonal work, loading bricks and doing odd jobs. He describes how job-seekers walked to London in search of work:

‘I had always wanted to go to London, and my desire ... was stimulated by letters from an old workmate ... who was now working at the Old Kent Road Gas Works ... I finally decided to go ... in November, 1881. With two friends I started out to walk the journey, filled with the hope that we would be able to obtain employment, when we get there, with the kind assistance of my friend ... we had little money when we started, not enough to pay for our food and lodgings each night until we arrived in London. Some days we walked as much as twenty miles, and other days less. Our money was gone at the end of the third day ... For two nights we slept out – once under a haystack, and once in an old farm shed ... On arrival in London we tried to find ... my friend ... but ... were unsuccessful. Our money was gone, so there was nothing for us to do but to walk around until late at night, and then try to find some place to sleep. We found an old building and slept in it that night. The next day, Sunday, late in the afternoon, we got to the Old Kent Gas Works, and applied for work. To my great surprise, the man we had been looking for was working at the time. He spoke to the foreman and I was given a job.’

Quoted in Raphael Samuel, ‘Comers and Goers’, in H.J. Dyos and Michael Wolff, eds, The Victorian City: Images and Realities, 1973.

34.1 Analyse the major factor which led London become an attractive place for the job seekers. 1

34.2 Analyse the reason for the appointment of Will Thorne by the Old Kent Gas works. 1

34.3 Examine the preference of hand labour over machines by the industrialists of the Victorian Britain. 2

35. Read the given extract and answer following questions 4

Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement is a Non-Governmental Organisation (NGO) that mobilized tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water. Recently it has re-focused the aim to enable poor citizens, especially the oustees (displaced people) to get full rehabilitation facilities from the government.

People felt that their suffering would not be in vain... accepted the trauma of displacement believing in the promise of irrigated fields and plentiful harvests. So, often the survivors of Rihand told us that they accepted their sufferings as sacrifice for the sake of their nation. But now, after thirty bitter years of being adrift, their livelihood having even being more precarious, they keep asking: "Are we the only ones chosen to make sacrifices for the nation?"

Source: S. Sharma, quoted in In the Belly of the River. Tribal conflicts over development in Narmada valley. A. Baviskar. 1995.

- 35.1 With what objective 'Sardar Sarovar Dam' was built? 1
35.2 Analyse the reason of protest by the tribal people. 1
35.3 Highlight the issues on which 'Save Narmada Movement' worked on. 2

36. Read the given extract and answer following questions. 4

Power sharing arrangements can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power. In a democracy, the citizens must have freedom to choose among various contenders for power. In contemporary democracies, this takes the form of competition among different parties. Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand. In the long run, power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups. Sometimes this kind of sharing can be direct, when two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections. If their alliance is elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power. In a democracy, we find interest groups such as those of traders, businessmen, industrialists, farmers and industrial workers. They also will have share in governmental power, either through participation in governmental committees or bringing influence on the decision-making process.

- 36.1 'Power sharing is an essential component of democracy.' Give one example to prove the statement. 1
36.2 How is alliance building an example of power sharing? 1
36.3 How Political parties, pressure groups and movements help in controlling or influencing those who are in power? 2

SECTION-E

MAP SKILL BASED QUESTION (2+3=5)

- 37 37a. Two places A and B have been marked on the given outline map of India. 2

Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.

- A. Indian National Congress session at this place in 1920
- B. The place where Mahatma Gandhi broke Salt Law.

37b. On the same outline map of India locate and label any **THREE** of the following with suitable Symbols. 3

- a. Hirakud Dam
- b. Tarapur Atomic Power Station
- c. Noida Software Technology Park
- d. Kochi Port

Note: The following questions are for Visually Impaired Candidates only in lieu of Q. No.37. Attempt any FIVE questions. 5

37.1 Name the Place where the session of Indian National Congress was held in September 1920. 1

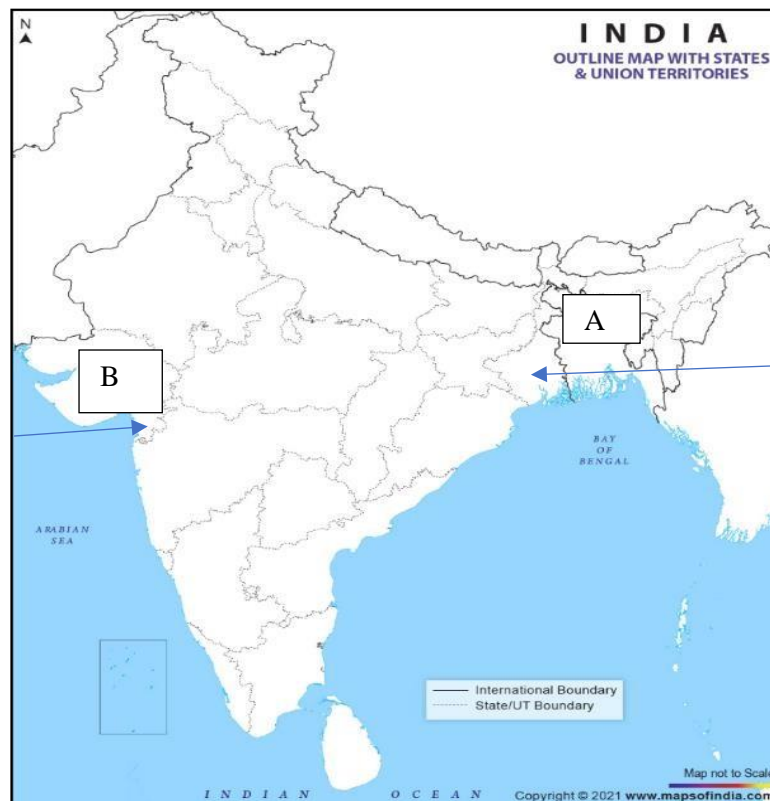
37.2 Name the place where Mahatma Gandhi broke Salt Law. 1

37.3 Name the State where Hirakud Dam is located. 1

37.4 Name the State where Tarapur nuclear plant is located. 1

37.5 Name the State where Noida Software Technology Park is located. 1

37.6 Name the State where Kochi 'Sea Port' is located. 1



**SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER
SOCIAL SCIENCE (CODE 087)
CLASS X – SESSION 2022-23
MARKING SCHEME**

Time Allowed: 3 Hours

Maximum Marks: 80

**SECTION A
MCQs (1X20=20)**

1 What helped in the colonisation of Asian and African countries? Identify the correct statement from the following options. 1

- A. Intergovernmental policies for the expansion of trade
- B. Governmental invite to the mother countries for expansion
- C. Technology, investments and improvement in transport
- D. Capitalists of these regions wanted trade with colonial powers

ANS- C- Technology, investments and improvement in transport Page 83

2 Which of the following newspaper was started by Bal Gangadhar Tilak? 1

- A. Hindu
- B. Kesari
- C. Sudharak
- D. Pratap

ANS- B Kesari Page 175

3 Look at the picture given below. Identify the name of the painter of this painting from the following options. 1

- A. Abindra Nath Tagore
- B. Rabindra Nath Tagore
- C. Raja Ravi Verma
- D. Samant Das Gupta



ANS. C. Raja Ravi Verma Page 171

Note : The following question is for Visually Impaired Candidates only in lieu of Q. No. 3

Who among the following was the author of the book ‘ Gita Govind’?

- A. Tulsidas
- B. Surdas
- C. Jayadev
- D. Raidas

ANS- Jayadev Page-167

4 Arrange the following in chronological order: 1

- I. Print culture created the conditions for the French Revolution
- II. Martin Luther’s writings led to beginning of the Protestant Reformation
- III. Menocchio reinterpreted the message of the Bible
- IV. Johann Gutenberg invented Printing press

OPTIONS:

- A. III, II, I & IV
- B. I, II, III & IV
- C. IV, III, II & I
- D. IV, II, III & I

ANS.: D - IV, II, III & I Page 107-113

5 Identify the crop with the help of the following information 1

- ❖ *It is a crop which is used both as food and fodder.*
- ❖ *It is a kharif crop which requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C.*
- ❖ *It grows well in old alluvial soil.*
- ❖ *Use of modern inputs have contributed to the increasing production of this crop.*

Options:

- A. Wheat
- B. Maize
- C. Rice
- D. Sugarcane

ANS. B. Maize Page 38

6 Which of the following description of forest is NOT correct? 1

- A. Reserved Forest -Reservation of more than half of forests
- B. Protected Forest- Reservation of 1/3 of the forests
- C. Unclassed Forest—Reservation of forest under govt. and private individuals
- D. Permanent Forest-Reserved and unclassified forest for the production of timber

**ANS- D -Permanent Forest-Reserved and unclassified forest for the production of timber
Page 20**

7 Match the following : 1

RESOURCES	EXAMPLES

a. Renewable Resources:	I. Forests and wildlife
b. Non-Renewable Resources:	II. The oceanic resources
c. National Resources:	III. Roads, canals and railway
d. International Resources:	IV. Minerals and fossil fuels

OPTIONS

- A. a-I, b-IV, c-III, d-II
- B. a-II, b-I, c-IV, d-III
- C. a-IV, b-I, c-IV, d-II
- D. a-I, b-IV, c-II, d-III

ANS. A. a-I, b-IV, c-III, d-II Page 2

8 Consider the following statements regarding power sharing arrangements in Belgium and identify the incorrect one from the following: 1

- A. Equal number of members from Dutch and French community in the central government
- B. Separate government for Brussels with equal representation of communities
- C. The State government to be subordinate to the Central government
- D. Community government elected by people belonging to one language community

ANS. C. The State government to be subordinate to the Central government Page 4

9 Which one of the following subjects comes under the legislation of Centre and State in India? 1

- A. Education
- B. Forests
- C. Banking
- D. Trade

ANS. A. Education - Page 16, 17

10 Which of the following statement is true regarding Feminist Movements? 1

- A. A group which favours giving more power to working women at rural and urban level.
- B. A movement that believes in giving exclusive rights to female in urban areas.
- C. Radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well.
- D. It is the practice of placing a feminine and masculine point of view in decision making.

ANS. C. Radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well. Page 41

11 Which one among the following pairs is correctly matched? 1

LIST I	LIST II
A. Bharatiya Janata Party	National Democratic Alliance
B. Congress Party	Left front
C. Communist Party of India	Regional Party

ANS. A. Bharatiya Janta Party – National Democratic Alliance Page 81

- 12. There are two statements marked as Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Mark your answer as per the codes provided below: 1**

Assertion (A): Democracy is an accountable, responsive and legitimate government

Reason (R): Democracies have regular, free and fair elections and decision-making is based on norms and procedures

- A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C. A is true but R is false.
- D. A is false but R is true.

ANS. A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A. Page 90

- 13 Which one of the following religions was protected and fostered by Sri Lankans in their constitution? 1**

- A. Christianity
- B. Hinduism
- C. Buddhism
- D. Islam

ANS. C. Buddhism Page 2

- 14 Read the given data and find out children of which state has attained maximum elementary school education? 1**

States	Per Capita Income For 2018–19 (in Rs)	Infant Mortality Rate per 1,000 live births (2018)	Literacy Rate % 2017–18	Net Attendance Ratio (per 100 persons) secondary stage (age 14 and 15 years) 2017–18
HARYANA	2,36,147	30	82	61
KERALA	2,04,105	7	94	83
BIHAR	40,982	32	62	43

Sources: Economic Survey 2020–21, P.A 157, National Sample Survey Organisation (Report No. 585), National statistical office, Government of India.

- A. Haryana
- B. Bihar
- C. Haryana and Kerala both
- D. Kerala

ANS. D. Kerala Page 7

15. Read the following data and select the appropriate option from the following.

1

Educational Achievement of Rural Population of Uttar Pradesh		
Category	Male	Female
Literacy rate for rural population	76%	54%
Literacy rate for rural children in age group 10-14 years	90%	87%
Percentage of rural children aged 10-14 attending school	85%	82%

How much percentage of girls are not attending school?

- A. 81%
- B. 61%
- C. 69%
- D. 18%

ANS. D. 18% - Page 12

16. Find the odd one out from the following options:

1

- A. Tourist guide, barber, tailor, and potter
- B. Teacher, doctor, vegetable vendor and lawyer
- C. Postman, cobbler, soldier and police constable
- D. Indian Railways, Jet Airways, Doordarshan and Metro

ANS. D Indian Railways, Jet Airways, Doordarshan and Metro Page 14-29

17. Fill in the blank:

1

SECTOR	CRITERIA USED
Primary, Secondary & Tertiary	Nature of economic activity
Organized & Unorganized	?

OPTIONS:

- A. Nature of employment activities
- B. Nature of Social activities
- C. Nature of Production activities
- D. Nature of Political activities

ANS. A. Nature of employment activities Page 32

18. Read the information given below and select the correct option

1

Rohan has taken a loan of Rs.5 lakhs from the bank to purchase a house on 12% rate of interest. He has to submit papers of new house and salary record to the bank. What is this process called as?

- A. Interest Rate
- B. Collateral
- C. Principal Amount
- D. Instalments

ANS. B. Collateral Page 44

19. Which of the following international agencies allow free trade and work on mutual trade between countries? 1

- A. WTO
- B. IMF
- C. UPU
- D. FAO

ANS. A. WTO Page 65

20. Identify the correct statements about globalization. 1

- I. Removal of barriers by the government
- II. Foreign companies are allowed to set up factories
- III. Has enabled all companies to increase their investments
- IV. Has lessened foreign investment and foreign trade

OPTIONS:

- A. I & II
- B. II & III
- C. I & III
- D. II & IV

ANS. A. I & II Page 64

SECTION B

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (2X4=8)

21 Analyse any two factors that were responsible for the Great Depression in America during 1929. 2

ANS.

- i. Agricultural overproduction remained a problem and it was made worse by falling agricultural prices.
- ii. As prices slumped and agricultural incomes declined, farmers tried to expand production and bring a larger volume of produce to the market but it pushed down prices.
- iii. In the mid-1920s, many countries financed their investments through loans from the US, it was extremely easy to raise loans in the US when the going was good.
- iv. But in the first half of 1928 countries that depended crucially on US loan faced an acute crisis.
- v. The withdrawal of US loans affected the rest of the world in different ways In Europe it led to the failure of small major banks and the collapse of currencies such as the British pound sterling.
- vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 94

22 Mention the provisions that constitute India into a secular country. 2

ANS.

- i. There is no official religion for the Indian state. Our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion.
- ii. The Constitution provides to all individuals and communities freedom to profess, practice and propagate any religion, or not to follow any.
- iii. The Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion.

- iv. Secularism is an idea constitutes one of the foundations of our country.
- v. At the same time the Constitution allows the state to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities.
- vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 49

23 Suggest any two ways to conserve energy resources in India.

2

ANS.

- i. Promotion of energy conservation and increased use of renewable energy sources
- ii. Have to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of our limited energy resources.
- iii. Use public transport systems instead of individual vehicles
- iv. Switch off electricity when not in use
- v. Using power-saving devices
- vi. Use non-conventional sources of energy.
- vii. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 63

OR

Suggest any two ways to improve the usage of Solar energy.

ANS.

- i. Reducing the cost of solar panels
- ii. Use of efficient solar panel models.
- iii. Rising awareness about the importance of renewable energy
- iv. Easy installation process
- v. Buy panels with High Concentrated Photovoltaic (CPV) Cells.
- vi. Avoid installing solar panels in shaded areas.
- vii. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 62

24. In what ways Government can increase employment in the rural sector?

2

ANS.

- i. by introducing mega projects-new dam is constructed and canals
- ii. by introducing tertiary facilities in an area
- iii. to identify, promote and locate industries and services in semi-rural areas
- iv. It is also possible to set up industries that process vegetables and agricultural produce like potato, sweet potato,
- v. by promoting tourism, or regional craft industry, or new services like IT.
- vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 27

SECTION C
SHORT ANSWER BASED QUESTIONS (3X5=15)

25. How was the social and political situation of India affected by the First World War? Explain. 3

ANS.

- i. The war created a new economic and political situation.
- ii. It led to a huge increase in defence expenditure which was financed by war loans and increasing taxes: customs duties were raised and income tax introduced.
- iii. Through the war years prices increased – doubling between 1913 and 1918 –leading to extreme hardship for the common people.
- iv. Villages were called upon to supply soldiers, and the forced recruitment in rural areas caused widespread anger.
- v. Crops failed in many parts of India, resulting in acute shortages of food.
- vi. This was accompanied by an influenza epidemic. Million people perished as a result of famines and the epidemic.
- vii. Any other relevant point

(ANY THREE POINTS) Page 54

OR

How did the Indian merchants and industrialists relate themselves to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

ANS.

- i. Indian merchants and industrialists were keen on expanding their business, and reacted against colonial policies that restricted business activities.
- ii. They wanted protection against imports of foreign goods, and a rupee-sterling foreign exchange ratio that would discourage imports.
- iii. To organise business interests, they formed the Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress in 1920 and the Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) in 1927.
- iv. Led by prominent industrialists like Purshottamdas Thakurdas and G. D. Birla, the industrialists attacked colonial control over the Indian economy, and supported the Civil Disobedience Movement
- v. They gave financial assistance and refused to buy or sell imported goods.
- vi. Most businessmen wanted to flourish trade without constraints.
- vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY THREE POINTS) Page 66

26. Examine the factors that influence the distribution pattern of the railway network in India. 3

ANS.

Physical and economic factors have influenced the distribution pattern of the Indian Railways network in the following ways:

- i. Northern Plain: Level land, high population density and rich agricultural resources have favoured development of railways in these plains. However, a large number of river requiring construction of bridges across their wide river beds posed some obstacles.
- ii. Peninsular region and the Himalayan region: it is a hilly terrain. The railway tracks are laid through low hills, gaps or tunnels. So, it is very difficult to lay the railway lines. The Himalayan

mountainous regions too are not favourable for the construction of railway line due to high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.

iii. Desert of Rajasthan: on the sandy plain of western Rajasthan too, it is very difficult to lay railway lines which has hindered the development of railways.

iv. Swamps of Gujarat, forested tracts of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Orissa and Jharkhand; these are also not suitable for the development of railways.

v. The contiguous stretch of Sahyadri could be crossed only through gaps or passes. Although the Konkan railway along the west coast has been developed but it has also faced a number of problems such as sinking of track in some stretches and landslides

vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY THREE POINTS) Page 82

27. In what ways Multi National Corporation (MNC) different from other companies? Explain with an example. **3**

ANS.

i. Domestic companies tend to restrict their operations to the country of origin, while multinational corporations operate in more than two countries. Ex- Infosys

ii. Companies (Infosys) expand globally for many reasons, mostly to obtain new markets, cheaper resources and reduction in operational costs, all of which significantly affect financial management. These benefits also increase the risks faced by multinational corporations.

iii. Multinational (Infosys) financial management differs from domestic financial management in six essential ways

iv. Unlike their domestic financial management counterparts, multinationals are subject to exchange rates that differ based on the prevailing inflation rate in the foreign countries where they operate.

v. Any other point

(ANY THREE POINTS) Page 57

28. Differentiate between democratic and non-democratic government. **3**

ANS.

i. Democratic govts. are transparent, legitimate and accountable whereas nondemocratic govt are selected and formed at their own discretion

ii. Democratic govt. provides dignity and freedom to all without any discrimination

iii. Conflicts are resolved through debate, discussions and negotiation rather than discretion

iv. Minority and majority cooperation are the common phenomenon in the democratic govt.

v. Enhances dignity of all without any discrimination

vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY THREE POINTS) Page 90-96

29. 'Tertiary sector is different from other sectors.' Justify the statement with suitable arguments. **3**

ANS.

i. Tertiary sector is basic service sector whereas primary and secondary are the sectors that produce goods

ii. Tertiary sector support and help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors

iii. Tertiary activities are an assistance for the production process.

- iv. Tertiary sector provides services like transport, banking, communication, etc
- v. It generates more employment than other sectors.
- vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY THREE POINTS) Page 20

SECTION D

LONG ANSWER BASED QUESTIONS (5X4=20)

- 30** Highlight the various measures and practices that French revolutionaries introduced to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. **5**

ANS.

- i.** The ideas of la patrie (the fatherland) and le citoyen (the citizen) emphasised the notion of a united community enjoying equal rights under a constitution.
 - ii.** A new French flag, the tricolour, was chosen to replace the former royal standard.
 - iii.** The Estates General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly.
 - iv.** New hymns were composed, oaths taken and martyrs commemorated
 - v.** A centralized administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizens within its territory.
 - vi.** Internal customs duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted.
 - vii.** Regional dialects were discouraged and French, as it was spoken and written in Paris, became the common language of the nation.
 - viii.** Any other relevant point
- (ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 5**

OR

Highlight the role of Otto Von Bismarck in making of Germany.

ANS.

- i.** Prussia took on the leadership of the movement for national unification.
- ii.** Its chief minister, Otto von Bismarck, was the architect of this process carried out with the help of the Prussian army and bureaucracy.
- iii.** Three wars over seven years – with Austria, Denmark and France – ended in Prussian victory and completed the process of unification.
- iv.** In January 1871, the Prussian king, William I, was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles.
- v.** On January 1871, an assembly comprising the princes of the German states, representatives of the army, important Prussian ministers including the chief minister Otto von Bismarck gathered in the Hall of Mirrors in the Palace of Versailles to proclaim the new German Empire headed by Kaiser William I of Prussia.
- vi.** Any other relevant point

(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 16

31. Examine the reasons for the location of most of the jute mills in West Bengal.

5

ANS.

- i. Proximity of the jute producing areas
- ii. Inexpensive water transport
- iii. Supported by a good network of railways, roadways and waterways to facilitate movement of raw material to the mills
- iv. Abundant water for processing raw jute
- v. Cheap labour from West Bengal and adjoining states of Bihar, Orissa and Uttar Pradesh.
- vi. Kolkata as a large urban centre provides banking, insurance and port facilities for export of jute goods.
- vii. The jute industry supports workers directly and small and marginal farmers who are engaged in cultivation of jute
- viii. Any other relevant point

(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 70

OR

Examine the multi-pronged aspects of Information Technology and Electronics Industry.

5

ANS.

- i. The electronics industry covers a wide range of products from transistor sets to television, telephones, cellular telecom, pagers, telephone exchange, radars, computers and many other equipment required by the telecommunication industry.
- ii. Bangalore has emerged as the electronic capital of India. Other important centres for electronic goods are Mumbai, Delhi, Hyderabad, Pune, Chennai, Kolkata, Lucknow and Coimbatore.
- iii. 18 software technology parks provide single window service and high data communication facility to software experts.
- iv. A major impact of this industry has been on employment generation.
- v. It is encouraging to know that 30 per cent of the people employed in this sector are women.
- vi. This industry has been a major foreign exchange earner in the last two or three years because of its fast growing Business Processes Outsourcing (BPO) sector.
- vii. The continuing growth in the hardware and software is the key to the success of IT industry in India.
- ix. Any other relevant point

(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 76

32. Describe the role of political parties in India.

5

ANS.

- i. Parties contest elections.
- ii. Parties put forward different policies and programmes and the voters choose from them.
- iii. Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country.
- iv. Parties form and run governments.
- v. Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power, by voicing different views and criticising government for its failures or wrong policies.
- vi. Parties shape public opinion.
- vii. Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by governments.

viii Any other relevant point
(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 74

OR

Describe the necessity or utility of political parties in democratic countries.

ANS.

- i. Elected representative will be accountable to their constituency for what they do in the locality. The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. large scale societies need representative democracy. **5**
- ii. As societies became large and complex, they also needed some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government.
- iii. They needed some way to bring various representatives together so that a responsible government could be formed.
- iv. They needed a mechanism to support or restrain the government, make policies, justify or oppose them.
- v. Political parties fulfil these needs that every representative government has. We can say that parties are a necessary condition for a democracy

vii Any other relevant point
(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 75

33. Explain the role of Self-Help Groups (SHGs) in the rural society. **5**

ANS.

- i. The idea is to organize rural poor, in particular women, into small Self Help Groups (SHGs) and pool (collect) their savings.
- ii. A typical SHG has 15-20 members, usually belonging to one neighbourhood, who meet and save regularly. Saving per member varies from Rs 25 to Rs 100 or more, depending on the ability of the people to save.
- iii. Members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs.
- iv. The group charges interest on these loans but this is still less than what the moneylender charges.
- v. After a year or two, if the group is regular in savings, it becomes eligible for availing loan from the bank.
- vi. Loan is sanctioned in the name of the group and is meant to create self-employment opportunities for the members.
- vii. Small loans are provided to the members for releasing mortgaged land, for meeting working capital needs
- viii. Most of the important decisions regarding the savings and loan activities are taken by the group members.
- ix. The group decides as regards the loans to be granted — the purpose, amount, interest to be charged, repayment schedule etc. Also, it is the group which is responsible for the repayment of the loan.
- x. Any case of non-repayment of loan by any one member is followed up seriously by other members in the group.
- xi. Any other relevant point

(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 51

OR

Explain the significance of The Reserve Bank of India in the Indian economy.

ANS.

5

- i. It supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.
- ii. The banks maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive.
- iii. The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain the cash balance.
- iv. The RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small scale industries, to small borrowers etc.
- v. Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rate, etc.
- vi. Any other relevant point

(ANY FIVE POINTS) Page 75

SECTION-E

CASE BASED QUESTIONS (4x3=12)

34 Read the source given below and answer the question that follows:

4

Will Thorne is one of those who went in search of seasonal work, loading bricks and doing odd jobs. He describes how job-seekers walked to London in search of work:

‘I had always wanted to go to London, and my desire ... was stimulated by letters from an old workmate ... who was now working at the Old Kent Road Gas Works ... I finally decided to go ... in November, 1881. With two friends I started out to walk the journey, filled with the hope that we would be able to obtain employment, when we get there, with the kind assistance of my friend ... we had little money when we started, not enough to pay for our food and lodgings each night until we arrived in London. Some days we walked as much as twenty miles, and other days less. Our money was gone at the end of the third day ... For two nights we slept out – once under a haystack, and once in an old farm shed ... On arrival in London we tried to find ... my friend ... but ... were unsuccessful. Our money was gone, so there was nothing for us to do but to walk around until late at night, and then try to find some place to sleep. We found an old building and slept in it that night. The next day, Sunday, late in the afternoon, we got to the Old Kent Gas Works, and applied for work. To my great surprise, the man we had been looking for was working at the time. He spoke to the foreman and I was given a job.’

Quoted in Raphael Samuel, ‘Comers and Goers’, in H.J. Dyos and Michael Wolff, eds, The Victorian City: Images and Realities, 1973.

34.1 Analyse the major factor which led London become an attractive place for the job seekers.

1

ANS-Due to the industrial revolution and availability of job opportunities in factories of London

34.2 Analyse the reason for the appointment of Will Thorne by the Old Kent Gas works.

1

ANS-Gas work was the seasonal industry and they were in need to low wage workers

34.3 Examine the preference of hand labour over machines by the industrialists of the Victorian Britain.

2

ANS.

- i. Machines needed huge capital investments
- ii. Machines were costly, ineffective, difficult to repair.
- iii. Labour was available at low wages.
- iv. In seasonal industries only seasonal labour was required.

- v. Any other relevant point
(ANY TWO POINTS) **Page 109**

35. Read the given extract and answer following questions

4

Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement is a Non-Governmental Organisation (NGO) that mobilised tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water. Recently it has re-focused the aim to enable poor citizens, especially the oustees (displaced people) to get full rehabilitation facilities from the government.

People felt that their suffering would not be in vain... accepted the trauma of displacement believing in the promise of irrigated fields and plentiful harvests. So, often the survivors of Rihand told us that they accepted their sufferings as sacrifice for the sake of their nation. But now, after thirty bitter years of being adrift, their livelihood having even being more precarious, they keep asking: "Are we the only ones chosen to make sacrifices for the nation?"

Source: S. Sharma, quoted in In the Belly of the River. Tribal conflicts over development in Narmada valley. A. Baviskar. 1995.

35.1 With what objective 'Sardar Sarovar Dam' was built?

1

ANS.

- i. To secure power
- ii. Irrigation
- iii. Drinking water for the drought-prone region.
- iv. Any other relevant point

(ANY ONE POINT)

35.2 Analyse the reason of protest by the tribal people.

1

ANS.

- i. Huge displacement of people
- ii. Demand for rehabilitation
- iii. Harm of harvest
- iv. Loss of livelihood
- v. Any other relevant point

(ANY ONE POINT)

35.3 Highlight the issues on which 'Save Narmada Movement' worked on.

2

ANS.

- i. Against huge displacement of people
- ii. Environmental issue
- iii. Demand for rehabilitation of tribal
- iv. To provide tribal the source of livelihood
- v. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 27

36. Read the given extract and answer following questions.

4

Power sharing arrangements can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power. In a democracy, the citizens must have freedom to choose among various contenders for power. In contemporary democracies, this takes the form of competition among different parties. Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand. In the long run, power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups. Sometimes this kind of sharing can be direct, when two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections. If their alliance is elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power. In a democracy, we find interest groups such as those of traders, businessmen, industrialists, farmers and industrial workers. They also will have share in governmental power, either through participation in governmental committees or bringing influence on the decision-making process.

36.1 'Power sharing is an essential component of democracy.' Give one example to prove the statement.

1

ANS.

- i. It helps in reducing the possibility of conflict between the social groups.
- ii. power sharing is a good way to ensure the stability of political order
- iii. Any other relevant point

(ANY ONE POINT)

36.2 How is alliance building an example of power sharing?

1

ANS.

- i. When two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections or to form a government is called as sharing of power.
- ii. Alliance could be between regional and national parties which is again an example of power sharing
- iii. Political ideas are shared
- iv. Any other relevant point

(ANY ONE POINT)

36.3 How Political parties, pressure groups and movements help in controlling or influencing those who are in power?

2

ANS.

- i. Freedom of choice entails competition among the different parties.
- ii. Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand, but is shared among different political parties representing different ideologies and social groups.
- iii. Any other relevant point

(ANY TWO POINTS) Page 9

SECTION-E

MAP SKILL BASED QUESTION (2+3=5)

37 37a. Two places A and B have been marked on the given outline map of India.

2

Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.

- A. Indian National Congress session at this place in 1920-CALCUTTA
- B. The place where Mahatma Gandhi broke Salt Law.-DANDI

37b. On the same outline map of India locate and label any **THREE** of the following with suitable Symbols. **3**
 Symbols.

- a. Hirakud Dam-ODISHA
- b. Tarapur Atomic Power Station - MAHARASHTRA
- c. Noida Software Technology Park - UTTAR PRADESH
- d. Kochi Port - KERALA

Note: The following questions are for Visually Impaired Candidates only in lieu of Q. No.37. 5
Attempt any FIVE questions.

37.1 Name the Place where the session of Indian National Congress was held in September 1920. 1

CALCUTTA

37.2 Name the place where Mahatma Gandhi broke Salt Law. 1

DANDI

37.3 Name the State where Hirakud Dam is located. 1

ODISHA

37.4 Name the State where Tarapur nuclear plant is located. 1

MAHARASHTRA

37.5 Name the State where Noida Software Technology Park is located. 1

UTTAR PRADESH

37.6 Name the State where Kochi 'Sea Port' is located. 1

KERALA

